

COLUMBIA LIBRARIES OFFSITE

HEALTH SCIENCES STANDARD



HX00044660

RK280 B79

Columbia University 1902  
in the City of New York

College of Physicians and Surgeons  
Library



Gift of

Dr. C. F. MacDonald



RK280

B79


Columbia University 1902  
in the City of New York

College of Physicians and Surgeons

Library







Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2010 with funding from  
Open Knowledge Commons



ANATOMY AND HISTOLOGY

OF THE

MOUTH AND TEETH

BY

I. NORMAN BROOMELL, D.D.S.

PROFESSOR OF DENTAL ANATOMY, DENTAL HISTOLOGY, AND PROSTHETIC TECHNICS IN THE  
PENNSYLVANIA COLLEGE OF DENTAL SURGERY, PHILADELPHIA

Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged, with  
337 Illustrations



PHILADELPHIA

P. BLAKISTON'S SON & CO.

1012 WALNUT STREET

1902

RK 280

B 79

1902

---

Copyright, 1902, by P. Blakiston's Son & Co.

---

TO

C. N. PEIRCE, D.D.S.

AS A SOUVENIR OF A LONG AND VALUED FRIENDSHIP AND A  
TESTIMONY OF ESTEEM FOR HIS PROFESSIONAL  
AND PRIVATE WORTH

**This Volume is Respectfully Dedicated**

BY THE AUTHOR



## PREFACE TO SECOND EDITION.

---

In submitting to the dental profession a revised edition of this work, the author has embraced the opportunity to make such corrections and additions as were deemed advisable to further increase the value of the book, and to make it worthy of at least a portion of the approval accorded the first edition. The general plan of the work has not been altered, and while some exceptions have been taken to including within its pages chapters devoted to the general anatomy of the mouth and its associated parts, it was decided, after due consideration, to allow this to remain.

In the description of the teeth, the terms "superior" and "inferior" have been changed to "upper" and "lower," and the term "palatal" as applied to one of the tooth surfaces has been discarded, and the word "lingual" substituted.

Considerable care has been bestowed upon part second, and as a result much of value, both as to descriptive matter and illustrations, not included in the first edition will be here found recorded. A chapter dealing with the Embryology of the Mouth has been added, as has also a short chapter on Anomalies of Tooth Form and Structure.

Fifty-three new illustrations have been added, all of which, with one or two exceptions, are the original work of the author.

Acknowledgment is due the "Dental Cosmos" and "Items of Interest" for the loan of cuts in their possession, and to Miss Emma A. Graham, who so faithfully assisted in the work of revision.

The author indulges the hope that his efforts to improve the book will be found satisfactory to its readers.

1420 CHESTNUT STREET, PHILADELPHIA,  
*August, 1902.*





## PREFACE TO THE FIRST EDITION.

---

In the preparation of this work it has been the aim of the author to systematically describe those parts of human anatomy which come directly under the care of the stomatologist. In the earlier chapters, which are devoted to a gross description of the mouth and those tissues which enter into its construction, there has been no attempt at originality other than in the arrangement, which includes a complete description of one part before another is taken up.

In the writing and classification of the succeeding chapters the writer has attempted what others, though wiser and better qualified, appeared unwilling to undertake, and it is from the works of such as these that the foundation for the present work has been derived.

Within the last few years the progress in nearly every branch of dental education has made a work of this character an imperative want. Dental therapeutics and dental chemistry have been well-nigh reconstructed, while the investigations of the microscopist and physiologist have brought forth many valuable revelations. Next in importance has been the advance in, or rather the introduction of, technic teaching. Considerable space has, therefore, been devoted to the surface anatomy of the individual teeth, with a hope that it may be of value in dental anatomy technic.

While in one or two instances the writer has departed from the field assigned as a text, the parts thus included are so closely associated with the mouth, both in a constructive and in a functional manner, that the work would be lacking in completeness if they were omitted.

The illustrations are, with but few exceptions, the original work of the author, being reproduced by photograph from the actual subject. In many instances dissections were required to

reveal the parts, this being particularly true of those illustrations included in the chapter on the Development of the Teeth, about one hundred dissections being required to accomplish the purpose. In preparing the illustrations descriptive of the various surfaces of the individual teeth, the progress of the work was materially interfered with by the difficulty experienced in securing normal teeth out of the mouth; may their number ever grow less.

The author desires to thus publicly acknowledge obligations to the works of Tomes, Black, Morris, Stöhr, Klein, and Stricker. He is also indebted to Prof. A. P. Brubaker and to Dr. C. P. Shoemaker for valuable assistance rendered, and to P. Blakiston's Son & Co. for their many courtesies during the preparation of the volume.

That there is a place for such a work as this purports to be the writer has but little doubt; that the following pages will fill that demand is his earnest desire, and it remains for the reader to ascertain how far these demands have been met in the direction of its aim and endeavor.

302 NORTH FORTIETH STREET, Oct. 20, 1898.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS.

## PART I.—ANATOMY.

	PAGE
CHAPTER I.	
General Description of the Mouth.—The Buccal Orifice ; The Lateral Walls of the Mouth ; The Hard Palate, or Dome of the Mouth ; The Soft Palate and Fauces ; The Floor of the Mouth ; The Tongue and its Attached Muscles, . . . . .	17-50
CHAPTER II.	
The Bones of the Mouth.—The Superior Maxillæ ; The Palate Bones ; The Inferior Maxilla, or Mandible, . . . . .	51-81
CHAPTER III.	
The Temporomandibular Articulation.—The Muscles of Mastication,	82-93
CHAPTER IV.	
General Description of the Teeth ; The Permanent Teeth ; Classification, Surfaces, etc.; The Roots of the Teeth ; The Dental Arch, . . . . .	94-107
CHAPTER V.	
Occlusion of the Teeth, . . . . .	108-114
CHAPTER VI.	
The Blood- and Nerve-supply to the Teeth, . . . . .	115-123
CHAPTER VII.	
Other Structures Within the Mouth.—The Gums ; The Mucous Membrane ; The Alveolodental Membrane ; Glands, Ducts, etc., . .	124-135
CHAPTER VIII.	
A Description of the Upper Teeth in Detail.—Calcification, Eruption, and Average Measurements ; Their Surfaces, Ridges, Fossæ, Grooves, etc., . . . . .	136-207
CHAPTER IX.	
A Description of the Lower Teeth in Detail.—Calcification, Eruption, and Average Measurements ; Their Surfaces, Ridges, Fossæ, Grooves, etc., . . . . .	208-237

CHAPTER X.		PAGE
The Pulp-cavities of the Teeth, . . . . .		238-267
CHAPTER XI.		
The Deciduous Teeth, Their Arrangement, Occlusion, etc.; Calcification, Eruption, Decalcification, Shedding Process, and Average Measurements; Their Surfaces, Grooves, Fossæ, Ridges, and Pulp-cavities, . . . . .		268-285
CHAPTER XII.		
Development of the Teeth.—The Dental Germs, Enamel Organ, and Dentin Organ; The Dental Follicle; Calcification, Eruption, etc., . . . . .		286-343
PART II.—HISTOLOGY.		
CHAPTER I.		
General Histology.—The Tissues of the Body; The Epithelial Tissues; Connective Tissues; Muscular Tissues, and Nervous Tissues, . . . . .		344-363
CHAPTER II.		
The Mucous Membrane of the Mouth.—Of the Lips; Of the Cheeks; Of the Gums; Of the Roof of the Mouth, Hard and Soft Palate; Of the Floor of the Mouth and the Tongue, . . . . .		364-375
CHAPTER III.		
Glands and Ducts of the Mouth.—Of the Lips; Of the Cheeks; Of the Hard and Soft Palate; Of the Tongue; The Salivary Glands, . . . . .		376-384
CHAPTER IV.		
Muscular Tissues of the Mouth.—Of the Lips; Of the Cheeks; Of the Soft Palate; Of the Tongue, . . . . .		385-388
CHAPTER V.		
Tissues of the Teeth.—Enamel; Dentin; Cementum; The Tooth-Pulp; The Alveolodental Membrane, . . . . .		389-454
CHAPTER VI.		
Embryology of the Mouth and Teeth, . . . . .		455-480
CHAPTER VII.		
Anomalies of the Teeth, . . . . .		481-491

# ANATOMY AND HISTOLOGY

OF THE

# MOUTH AND TEETH.

---

## PART I.—ANATOMY.

### CHAPTER I.

GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE MOUTH.—THE BUCCAL ORIFICE (THE LIPS).—THE LATERAL WALLS OF THE MOUTH (THE CHEEKS).—THE HARD PALATE OR DOME OF THE MOUTH.—THE SOFT PALATE AND FAUCES.—THE FLOOR OF THE MOUTH.—THE TONGUE AND ITS ATTACHED MUSCLES.

The mouth (Fig. 1) (*stoma*, pl. *stomata*) is the entrance or gateway to the alimentary canal, and is situated between the superior and inferior maxillary bones and their attached tissues. It contains the *active* organs of mastication, *the teeth*, the organs of taste, of which the tongue is chief, together with some of the parts which assist in articulate speech. Anatomists usually divide this cavity into two compartments, the teeth serving to separate one from the other, the inner space being called *the mouth*, while that between the teeth and lips or cheeks is known as the *vestibule of the mouth*. In this description all that space bounded anteriorly by the lips, posteriorly by the pillars of the fauces, and latterly by the cheeks, will be considered as a single cavity, and the organs and structures contained therein, together with all parts directly interested in its formation, will constitute a text for this work. The *entrance to the cavity of the mouth* is formed by a freely movable transverse orifice or slit, the *buccal*

*orifice*, while it communicates with the pharynx posteriorly through the fauces. Entering into the construction of the mouth and assisting in the performance of its functions are bones, ligaments, muscles, blood-vessels, nerves, glands, ducts, etc., each of which will be described in turn.

### THE BUCCAL ORIFICE,

or entrance to the cavity of the mouth, is a transverse opening somewhat variable in extent, the extremities of which are known as the *corners* or *angles of the mouth*. The orifice is bounded



FIG. 1.—A GENERAL VIEW OF THE MOUTH.

by two fleshy folds, the *upper* and *lower lips (labia)*, the former usually being in the form of a double curve, coming together at the median line and forming a small teat or tubercle, while the latter is made up of a single curve extending from angle to angle. While this general description applies to the labial forms most frequently met with, it must not be mistaken for a constant con-

dition. In some instances the lips are thin, with straight parallel margins, firmly set against the teeth, and seldom separated from each other when at rest. In another class they are thick, full, and prominent, with their margins strongly curved, resting lightly against the teeth, and more or less separated from each other during rest. Accompanying the extreme as well as the intervening conditions are various other peculiarities, such as the color, the rigidity or flexibility of the muscular structure, etc. The upper lip generally overhangs the lower, but in some instances the lower lip is the most prominent. Externally the lips are covered by the common integument, internally and over their contiguous surfaces by a continuation of the integument, the mucous membrane. Between the external and internal coverings and forming the substance of these fleshy folds are muscular fibers in which are imbedded numerous blood-vessels, nerves, and glands (*labial glands*). By the various muscles which enter into their construction the lips are attached to the surfaces of the maxillary bones.

The **integument**, or **external covering** of the lips, is similar to the skin covering other parts of the body. In the male it is subject to a peculiar change and modification of its outer layer, resulting in the production of a hairy growth.

The **mucous membrane**, or **internal covering** of the lips, the beginning of which is strongly manifest by its bright-red color, is without moisture on the contiguous surfaces, is extremely sensitive, and contains a number of vascular papillæ, many of which are accompanied by nerve terminals. Mucous membranes are described as lining certain cavities or tracts, as the digestive tract, the respiratory tract, and the genito-urinary tract, and it is upon the contiguous surfaces of the lips that the digestive tract begins. The line of junction between the integument and the mucous membrane, is quite variable in form, but usually corresponds with the general curvature of the lips. Internally at the median line each lip is provided with a pronounced fold of mucous membrane, which is attached to the basal portion of the gum, the *frenum of the lip* (*frænum labium superioris and inferioris*), which, in a measure, check the movements of the lips.

## Muscles of the Lips.

The muscular fibers within the substance of the lips are principally those of a single muscle, the *orbicularis oris*, but associated with it is a portion of the elevator and depressor muscles of the lips, the *levator labii superioris alæque nasi*, *levator labii superioris*, *depressor labii inferioris* or *quadratus menti*, and the *zygomaticus minor*.

**Orbicularis Oris.**—This is the sphincter muscle which surrounds and controls the buccal aperture. In form it is an oval sheet with the long axis placed transversely, the fibers being continued from one lip to the other by passing around the angles of the mouth. It is divided into an internal or labial portion, and an external or facial portion. The labial portion forms the red part of the lips, and has no bony attachment except through the medium of the adjacent muscles. The external or facial portion forms the deeper layer and blends with the surrounding muscles, works in conjunction with them, and is provided with the following small bony *attachments*: The nasolabial slips are attached to the septum of the nose, other fibers are attached to the incisive fossa of the superior maxilla over the position of the lateral incisor tooth, and to the incisive fossa of the inferior maxilla near the socket of the lateral incisor or cuspid tooth.

**Structure.**—The muscle consists of three sets of fibers, one of which runs transversely, one in a vertical, and one in an anteroposterior direction. The transverse set is continuous with the fibers of the buccinator or cheek muscle, and forms the greater part of the muscle. The red or labial portion of the muscle is also formed from the same fibers, while the vertical fibers form the superficial part of the facial portion and are continuous with the fibers of the levator and depressor muscles. Some of these latter fibers pass around the corners of the mouth, thus becoming transverse, those from above passing to the lower lip, while those from below pass to the upper lip. The anteroposterior fibers pass from before backward between the transverse fibers, and unite the mucous membrane to the skin. These are chiefly found in the labial portion of the muscle.

**Relations.**—The inner margin of the superficial surface is



closely connected with the integument, while superimposed between this and the outer portion is a layer of fatty tissue. Upon the deep surface lies the mucous membrane of the mouth, separated from the muscular tissue by blood-vessels, mucous glands, and small salivary glands.

*Action.*—To bring the lips together, to draw the upper lip downward, and the lower lip upward; to draw together the corners of the mouth; to throw both lips outward; to draw them back against the teeth, and to oppose the action of all other muscles that blend into it and inclining to draw it in various directions.

**Levator Labii Superioris Alæque Nasi.**—As its name implies, this muscle is an elevator of the upper lip and the wing of the nose. It is one of the superficial facial muscles, is thin and triangular, and is situated by the side of the nose, extending from the infra-orbital ridge to the upper lip.

*Origin.*—From the nasal process of the superior maxilla near its orbital margin.

*Insertion.*—From its origin it passes almost directly downward, dividing into two portions, the smaller of which is inserted into the nasal wing, while the larger portion is prolonged downward, blending into the orbicularis oris and levator labii superioris, and forming a part of the substance of the upper lip.

*Relations.*—Superficially, by the integument; deeply, by the levator anguli oris and compressor narium.

*Action.*—By its smaller and shorter portion to raise the wing of the nose and to dilate the nostril; by its larger and longer portion to elevate the inner half of the upper lip.

**Levator Labii Superioris.**—This muscle belongs to the superficial layer, and derives its name from its action.

*Origin.*—From the facial surface of the superior maxilla, at a point between the orbital cavity and the infra-orbital foramen. Also by the attachment of a few fibers to the malar bone.

*Insertion.*—Passing downward and inward, it is inserted into the orbicularis oris and the integument of the upper lip. Near its lower third it joins the levator labii superioris alæque nasi, and acts in conjunction with it. Occasionally it is reinforced by

fibers from the orbicularis palpebrarum, which it receives at its outer border.

*Relations.*—Superficially, by the orbicularis palpebrarum and the integument; deeply, by the levator anguli oris; the compressor nasi at its origin, and by the infra-orbital vessels and nerves.

*Action.*—To elevate the upper lip.

**Levator Labii Inferioris.**—This muscle, also known as **levator menti**, lies immediately beneath the mucous membrane of the lower lip, and can best be dissected by everting the lip and lifting off the membrane.

*Origin.*—From the incisor fossa of the lower jaw at its upper border.

*Insertion.*—Into the integument of the skin.

*Relations.*—With the labial integument, the lower border of the orbicularis oris muscle, and its superficial surface with the oral mucous membrane. Deeply it is in close contact with the periosteum and the depressor labii inferioris.

*Action.*—To raise and cause to protrude the integument of the chin.

**Depressor Labii Superioris.**—This small muscle with its fellow of the opposite side is sometimes found within the mucous membrane forming the frenum of the upper lip.

*Origin.*—It arises from the incisive fossa along its lower margin and some of its fibers are attached to that part of the alveolar process closely associated with the fossa.

*Insertion.*—From the point of origin the fibers pass upward and are attached to the lower border of the nostrils and partition of the nose. Some of the fibers of this muscle are also attached to the integument covering the wing of the nose. The balance pass downward and mingle with the fibers of the muscular structure of the upper lip.

*Relations.*—At its point of origin the fibers are closely associated with the mucous membrane forming the gums. Above this the muscular structure of the lip overlies these fibers. Deeply it rests upon the surface of the superior maxilla, and joins its fellow of the opposite side at the median line.

*Action.*—To depress the upper lip.

**Depressor Labii Inferioris, or Quadratus Menti.**—The name of this muscle is derived from its form and action. It belongs to the second layer of facial muscles, is quadrilateral in shape, and consists of parallel fibers which meet above in the median line.

*Origin.*—At the outer aspect of the lower border of the inferior maxilla, from a point near the symphysis to the space beneath the first bicuspid tooth.

*Insertion.*—Its fibers pass upward and inward, and after uniting with its fellow of the opposite side, blend into the body of the orbicularis oris of the lower lip.

*Relations.*—By its superficial surface with the integument and a portion of the depressor anguli oris; deeply, with the mental nerve and vessels, a portion of the orbicularis oris, the mucous membrane lining the lower lip, and the labial glands.

*Action.*—To draw down and somewhat evert the lower lip.

**Zygomaticus Minor.**—An extremely slender muscle belonging to the superficial set of facial muscles. It is closely associated with a larger muscle, the zygomaticus major, belonging to the angular series, to be described in connection with the muscles of the cheek.

*Origin.*—From the anterior inferior part of one of the facial bones,—the malar,—close to its junction with the superior maxilla.

*Insertion.*—It passes downward and forward, its fibers becoming lost in the special elevator muscle of the upper lip about midway between the median line and the angle of the mouth.

*Relations.*—Superficially, by the integument, by its deep surface with the levator anguli oris, facial portion of the orbicularis oris, and the infra-orbital branch of the facial nerve.

*Action.*—To elevate and somewhat evert the upper part of the lip.

### The Blood-supply to the Lips.

The blood-supply to the lips is principally through the *superior* and *inferior coronary* arteries, both of which are branches of the *facial* artery. In addition to these the *inferior labial* artery and the sub-mental, also branches of the *facial*, and the *mental branch* of the *inferior dental* artery supply a part of the lower lip.

The **superior coronary artery** courses along the inferior margin of the upper lip, between the mucous membrane and the fibers of the orbicularis oris muscle. At the median line it anastomoses with its fellow of the opposite side.

The **inferior coronary artery**, somewhat smaller than the superior, supplies the lower lip by coursing through its substance in a manner similar to the superior coronary and also anastomoses with its fellow of the opposite side at the median line.

**Course of the Blood From the Heart to the Lips.**—From the heart to the aorta, to the common carotid, to the external carotid, to the facial, to the superior and inferior coronary and the inferior labial arteries. After passing through the labial capillaries the blood is returned to the heart through the *superior* and *inferior coronary veins*, and the larger veins of which they are branches.

### Nerves of the Lips.

The general nerve-supply to the lips is principally by small branches of the *infra-orbital* nerve for the upper lip, and by branches of the *mental* nerve for the lower lip. The *buccal* and *superior maxillary* branches of the lower division of the facial nerve supply the orbicularis oris muscle; the upper division of the facial nerve sends branches which supply the levator labii superioris alæque nasi, as well as the levator labii superioris and the zygomaticus minor, while the *superior maxillary* branch of the lower division of the facial supplies the depressor labii inferioris.

## THE LATERAL WALLS OF THE MOUTH.

### The Cheeks (*buccæ*).

The cheeks are continuous with and similar in structure to the lips, being covered internally by mucous membrane and externally by the common integument. Immediately beneath the mucous membrane are a number of transverse muscular fibers, covered externally by a layer of subcutaneous fat, and lying between this and the integument other muscular tissue, the fibers of which radiate in various directions, according to the action of the muscle to which they belong. Besides muscular

and fatty tissue, there are imbedded within the substance of the cheek blood-vessels, nerves, and glands. The fatty tissue spoken of as intervening between the muscular fibers gives to the cheek the fullness and rotundity desired by so many but possessed by so few.

**The integument**, or external covering of the cheek, is similar in structure to the skin covering other parts of the body, and, like the lips in the male, is productive of a hairy growth.

**The mucous membrane**, or internal covering of the cheek, is similar to that of the lips, containing numerous glands (*buccal glands*) which are almost identical to, but smaller than, the labial glands. In addition to the buccal glands which are distributed over the entire membrane, there are about five of larger size, which open into the mouth in the region of the molar teeth, and are called *molar glands* (see Glands of the Mouth).

### The Muscles of the Cheeks.

The transverse muscular fibers referred to as being immediately beneath the mucous membrane are those of the *buccinator*, a muscle named from its action, that of being the chief muscle employed by the trumpeter. External to the buccinator is the *masseter*, one of the muscles of mastication, the elevator and depressor muscles of the angle of the mouth, the *levator anguli oris*, and the *depressor anguli oris*, and the dermal muscles, *zygomaticus major* and *zygomaticus minor*, and the *risorius*.

**Buccinator.**—This muscle forms the greater portion of the lateral wall of the mouth. It is deep-seated in the cheek, being one of the third stratum of facial muscles.

*Origin.*—The fibers are distinct in their origin from a part of the alveolar process of the superior maxillary bone, at a point immediately over the second and third molar teeth, from the anterior border of the pterygomaxillary ligament, a narrow band of tendinous fibers or raphe extending from the pterygoid plate of the sphenoid bone to the mylohyoid ridge of the inferior maxilla near the position of the third molar tooth. Some of its fibers also arise from the outer wall of the alveolar process of the inferior maxilla below the second and third molars.

*Insertion.*—The fibers pass forward and converge as they

reach the lateral margins of the orbicularis oris ; here the fibers of the upper portion pass downward and blend into the muscles of the lower lip, while the lower fibers pass upward and blend into those of the upper lip. Those fibers which arise from the inferior maxilla pass forward and also blend into the lower lip.

*Relations.*—Superficially, by the skin and subcutaneous fat, the duct of Steno, the masseter muscle, a portion of the angular group, and the facial artery and vein. Passing over it are branches of the facial and buccal nerves, also a layer of deep fascia continuous with that which covers the upper part of the pharynx. By its deep surface it is in relation with the mucous membrane and buccal glands.

*Action.*—To draw outward or backward the angles of the mouth, thus enlarging the buccal orifice and pressing the lips tightly against the teeth ; to force the food between the occlusal surfaces of the molar and bicuspid teeth during mastication ; to diminish the concavity of the cheek, compressing the air contained therein and forcing it forward. It becomes an auxiliary in deglutition by shortening the cavity of the pharynx from before backward, through its connection with the superior constrictor.

**Masseter.**—This muscle is placed immediately external to the buccinator, and is one of the principal muscles of mastication. It is short, thick, and somewhat quadrate in form, and is composed of two sets of fibers, superficial and deep. The fibers of the former are directed obliquely downward and backward ; those of the latter, which are much shorter, pass almost vertically downward.

*Origin.*—The superficial layer, from the malar process of the superior maxilla, and from the anterior portion of the zygomatic arch of the malar bone. The deep layer from the posterior third of the zygomatic arch, as well as from the greater part of its inner surface.

*Insertion.*—The superficial fibers are inserted into the ramus and angle of the inferior maxilla, and the deep fibers into the upper half of the outer surface of the ramus.

*Relations.*—By its external surface with the zygomaticus

major, risorius, and platysma myoides muscles, the parotid gland and its duct; by the transverse facial artery, the facial vein, and facial nerve, and by the integument. By its internal surface with the ramus of the inferior maxilla, a mass of fat which separates it from the buccinator, and with the temporal muscle. Its posterior margin is in relation with the parotid gland, and its anterior with the facial artery and vein.

*Action.*—The principal action of this muscle is to close the jaw and to draw it slightly forward. (For further description, see Muscles of Mastication, part I, chap. III.)

**The Angular Series.**—The remaining muscles of the cheek are those of the angular series, or those muscles which are inserted into the angle of the mouth, two coming obliquely from above,—the *levator anguli oris* and the *zygomaticus major*,—one running almost horizontally forward,—the *risorius*,—and one ascending from below,—the *depressor anguli oris*.

**Levator Anguli Oris.**—This muscle, which receives its name from its action, belongs to the second layer of facial muscles. It is formed in the shape of a triangular sheet.

*Origin.*—From the canine fossa of the superior maxilla, immediately below the infra-orbital foramen.

*Insertion.*—Passing downward and outward it is inserted into the angle of the mouth, its fibers blending with those of the orbicularis oris and the other angular muscles.

*Relations.*—Superficially, with the levator labii superioris, the zygomaticus minor, and the infra-orbital vessels and nerves; deeply, with the facial portion of the orbicularis oris and buccinator muscles, and the mucous membrane of the mouth.

*Action.*—Especially to elevate the angle of the mouth, and to assist in drawing these angles inward, decreasing the size of the buccal orifice.

**Zygomaticus Major.**—This muscle, the companion of which has been described in connection with the muscles of the lips, belongs to the first facial layer. It is composed of a long, fleshy band of muscular fibers, which run direct from their point of origin to their point of insertion.

*Origin.*—From the malar bone, in close proximity to the zygomatic suture.



*Insertion.*—From its origin it passes obliquely downward to the angle of the mouth, and blends into the fibers of the orbicularis oris and depressor anguli oris.

*Relations.*—Superficially, with the skin and subcutaneous fat; deeply, with the malar bone, the masseter and buccinator muscles, the facial and transverse facial arteries, the facial vein, and branches of the facial nerve.

*Action.*—To draw upward and outward the angles of the mouth, as in smiling or laughing. By contracting, it throws into prominence the cheek tissues in front of the malar bone, and forces the lower eyelid upward. When acting simultaneously with its fellow of the opposite side, the buccal aperture is widened, and the upper lip is elevated, exposing the superior teeth.

**Risorius.**—One of the superficial set of facial muscles, receiving its name from its supposed action in laughter (*ridere*, to laugh). It is flat and ribbon-shaped, and is frequently very small and poorly developed.

*Origin.*—From the deep fascia covering the masseter muscle and parotid gland, some of its fibers occasionally arising from the mastoid process of the temporal bone.

*Insertion.*—Passing transversely forward and inward to the angle of the mouth, its fibers blend with those of the orbicularis oris, and the depressor anguli oris.

*Relations.*—Superficially, with the integument and subcutaneous fat; deeply, with the masseter and buccinator muscles, the facial artery and vein, and branches of the facial nerve.

*Action.*—To draw the angles of the mouth directly outward, thereby increasing the width of the buccal orifice.

**Depressor Anguli Oris.**—Also one of the superficial layer of facial muscles, deriving its name in accordance with its action upon the angle of the mouth. It is a triangular-shaped muscle with its base below, becoming narrow as it ascends.

*Origin.*—From the lower border of the inferior maxilla, and from its external oblique line below the cuspid, bicuspid, and first molar teeth.

*Insertion.*—Passing upward and inward it is inserted into the integument at the angle of the mouth, its fibers blending into



those of the muscles previously described as coming together at this point.

*Relations.*—Externally, with the integument; deeply or internally, with the depressor labii inferioris, the buccinator, and the inferior coronary artery.

*Action.*—To draw down the angle of the mouth and to slightly extend it.

### Blood-supply to the Cheeks.

The blood-supply to the cheeks is principally through the *facial* artery and its direct branches, the superior and inferior *coronary*, the *transverse facial*, and branches from the internal maxillary.

**The Facial Artery and Branches.**—The facial artery, also called the *external maxillary*, enters the cheek after passing over the body of the inferior maxilla at the anterior edge of the masseter muscle. It courses obliquely forward and upward through the substance of the cheek, until it reaches the inner angle or canthus of the eye, where it joins the nasal branch of the ophthalmic artery, and is called the *angular artery*. Near the center of the cheek the *inferior labial artery* is given off, which passes forward and downward to the lower lip, but supplies a portion of the cheek in so doing. Midway between the center of the cheek and the angle of the mouth the *superior and inferior coronary arteries* are given off, supplying that part of the cheek immediately adjacent to the angle of the mouth, after which they pass on to supply the upper and lower lips. The *masseteric branch* is given off in the immediate center of the cheek, at a point immediately below the inferior labial, passes directly upward over the masseter muscle, and anastomoses with branches of the internal maxillary and transverse facial. There are also given off from the main trunk near the center of the cheek the *buccal* branches, which pass upward over the buccinator muscle, and also anastomose with branches of the internal maxillary and transverse facial arteries.

**The Transverse Facial Artery.**—This is the largest branch of the temporal artery. It is at first deeply-seated in the substance of the parotid gland, after leaving which it courses trans-

versely over and supplies the masseter muscle, sends off small branches which supply the integument of the cheek, and anastomoses with the buccal, infra-orbital, and the facial arteries. Besides the arteries already named, the deeper portions of the cheek receive blood from two branches of the internal maxillary artery, the *masseteric branch* and the *buccal branch*. The former supplies the masseter muscle and anastomoses with the masseteric branch of the facial, while the latter supplies the buccinator muscle and anastomoses with the buccal branches of the facial.

### Course of the Blood From the Heart to the Cheeks.—

From the heart to the aorta, to the common carotid, to the external carotid, to the facial and its direct branches, or from the external carotid to the temporal, to the transverse facial and branches.

From the cheeks the blood is returned to the heart principally through the *facial vein*, a division of the *anterior superficial vein*. It enters the cheek at a point midway between the lower eyelid and the wing of the nose, passes obliquely downward, being in close contact with the anterior edge of the masseter muscle over the body of the lower jaw, joining the internal jugular vein in the neck. The *transverse facial vein* which follows the course of the transverse facial artery, and the *superior* and *inferior coronary veins* also collect and convey a portion of the blood from the cheeks to the larger veins and thence to the heart.

### Nerves of the Cheeks.

The nerve-supply to the cheeks is principally from the *seventh* or *facial nerve* and its branches, the *buccal branch* supplying a greater part of their substance. There are also a few fibers of the *infra-orbital branch* of the seventh nerve distributed to the labiobuccal region. The *buccal branch* of the lower division of the facial, also the *buccal branch* of the inferior maxillary division of the fifth nerve, supplies the buccinator muscle. The *infra-orbital branch* of the upper division of the facial nerve supplies the zygomaticus major and the levator anguli oris; the *buccal branch* supplies the risorius, and the *supramaxillary*

*branch* of the lower division of the facial nerve supplies the depressor anguli oris.

### THE INTERIOR OF THE MOUTH.

For convenience of description the mouth may be divided into two parts—a *superior portion* and an *inferior portion*. In dissection this division may be accomplished by an incision beginning at the angles of the mouth and carried backward and slightly upward through the substance of the cheeks until the temporomaxillary articulation is reached. After disarticulating this joint another incision is made, beginning at the joint on either side, carried downward and forward, then obliquely across the throat, until the two come together at the median line. This latter incision must be deep enough to completely sever the tissues of the throat.

The superior portion of the mouth contains the *hard palate*, or *roof of the mouth*, the *soft palate*, and the sixteen *upper teeth*, firmly set in the bone and surrounded by a dense fibrous tissue—the *gums*. The inferior portion contains the tongue and its attached muscles, forming the *floor of the mouth*, the sixteen *lower teeth* and the gums surrounding them.

#### THE SUPERIOR PORTION OF THE MOUTH (FIG. 2).

The osseous framework, or base upon which this half of the mouth is constructed, is composed of a part of four bones—the two superior maxillary, or upper jaw bones, and the two palate bones (see *Bones of the Mouth*, p. 51).

#### The Hard Palate, or Roof of the Mouth (Fig. 2).

This is formed by the union of the palatal processes of the superior maxillary bones and the horizontal plates of the two palate bones at the median line. It is limited in front and laterally by the margins of the alveolar process, or that portion of the bone which gives support to the teeth, and ends posteriorly in an irregular border, to which is attached a muscular, membrane-like curtain—the soft palate. The hard palate is covered throughout by a thick and firm mucous membrane, seldom so

highly colored as the membrane lining the lips and cheeks. The mucous membrane is closely adherent to the bone through its covering, the periosteum. In the center of the hard palate is a ridge or fold of mucous membrane, which follows the median line from before backward; this is called the *palatal*



FIG. 2.—THE SUPERIOR PORTION OR ROOF OF THE MOUTH.

*raphe*. Anteriorly, the raphe ends in a small papilla, which marks the opening of a canal in the bone—the anterior palatal canal. Posteriorly, the raphe usually diminishes, but occasionally is well marked through the whole extent of the hard palate. Near the center of the hard palate it frequently separates into

two or more smaller ridges, which are proportionately diminished in size, and are continued backward side by side. On either side of this central ridge, anteriorly, the mucous membrane presents a number of fantastically arranged folds, the *palatal rugæ* (wrinkles). These folds are usually quite numerous and prominent, but are occasionally almost absent. The nature of these wrinkles is strongly indicative of the character or temperament of the individual; thus, in the four basal temperaments they may be divided as follows: in the bilious, heavy and strong, composed of angles rather than curves; in the nervous, few in number, close together, not prominent, and composed of long curves; in the sanguine, quite numerous, fairly prominent, well rounded and graceful in outline; in the lymphatic, few in number, flat, widely separated, and but little curved. Accompanying these varying conditions in the rugæ will be found a corresponding variation in the raphe. The anterior and lateral margins of the mucous membrane covering the hard palate form the palatal portion of the gums, known as the *gingiva* (the gum) or gingival border.

In figure 3 the hard palate is shown with its membranous covering removed. It will be observed that the bony plates are perforated by numerous small foramina, through which the body of the bone receives its nourishment, broken by depressions for the accommodation of the various mucous glands, and traversed by longitudinal grooves which give lodgment to blood-vessels and nerves.

The arch formed by the hard palate from side to side varies greatly in form, imparting much knowledge in regard to the temperament of the individual, and in a measure controlling the quality of the voice. Thus, in the sanguine temperament the roof of the mouth presents almost a perfect oval. In the bilious type it is comparatively high and flat, extending from the base of one alveolar process to another, from which point it descends abruptly to the necks of the teeth. In the nervous type the roof is high and semi-elliptical or parabolic in shape, and in the lymphatic it is low and segmental in form.

In the same illustration the union or suture between the two bones may be observed at the median line. Near the anterior

third of this central suture is the opening of the incisive or anterior palatal canal, the *anterior palatal foramen*, the location of which has been referred to in the description of the mucous membrane. Near the posterior border, and situated within the suture which unites the superior maxillary bones with the palate bones (the palatamaxillary suture), are two other foramina, the posterior palatal; and immediately behind these, and separated by a thin ridge of bone, are the accessory palatal foramina, these being in the tuberosity of the palate bones. (For further descrip-



FIG. 3.—THE HARD PALATE, OR ROOF OF THE MOUTH, WITH ITS MEMBRANOUS COVERING REMOVED.

tion of these foramina, see *Bones of the Mouth*, p. 51.) By the vessels and nerves which enter the hard palate through these various foramina, the mucous membrane and glands receive their blood- and nerve-supply.

**Blood-supply to the Hard Palate.**—This is principally derived from the *posterior* or *descending palatal* branch of the *internal maxillary* or *deep facial artery*, which passes downward in the posterior palatal canal and emerges through the posterior palatal foramen. Immediately on reaching the palate it divides into an anterior and a posterior branch, the former passing for-



ward in a groove provided for it to the anterior palatal foramen, where it anastomoses with the nasopalatal artery. The groove in which the artery lies in its passage forward is usually at the base of the alveolar process, and in some instances is converted into a canal for a part of its length. The posterior branches pass backward and downward to supply the soft palate. In connection with supplying the hard palate proper, this artery carries blood to the palatal alveolar walls, to the mucous glands, the mucous membrane, and the gums.

**Course of the Blood from the Heart to the Hard Palate.**—From the heart to the aorta, to the common carotid, to the external carotid, to the internal maxillary, to the posterior or descending palatal branch of the latter. From the hard palate the blood is returned to the heart by the *superior palatal* and *inferior* or *descending palatal veins*, the former following the course of the superior palatal artery, while the latter originates at a point near the junction of the hard and soft palates, passes downward, and joins the facial vein below the body of the inferior maxilla.

**Nerves of the Hard Palate.**—The nerves of the hard palate are the *anterior* or *large palatal* and branches from the nasopalatal, both of which are branches of the sphenopalatal (Meckel's) ganglion. The anterior palatal nerve arises from the inferior angle of the ganglion, passes downward, accompanied by the descending palatal artery, through the posterior palatal canal, from which it emerges at the posterior palatal foramen. From this point it passes forward in a groove of the hard palate, and joins the nasopalatal nerve as it emerges from the anterior palatal foramen. Accompanying this nerve in its course through the posterior palatal canal are other branches of the sphenopalatal ganglion, which pass to the soft palate, and will be described in that connection. The nerves of the hard palate are all sensory, and filaments are distributed to the mucous membrane and glands and to the palatal portion of the gums.

## THE SOFT PALATE (FIG. 2).

The soft palate is attached to the posterior border of the hard palate, from which it is continued as a backward prolongation. Hanging downward, with its free borders inclining backward, it may be considered as forming a part of the posterior boundary of the mouth. It partially separates the mouth from the nasal cavity and from the pharynx. It is attached laterally to the walls of the pharynx, while its lower border is free. The *substance* of the soft palate is composed of a number of thin, but dense, muscular fibers, blood-vessels, nerves, and mucous glands, the latter being similar to those of the hard palate. The anterior surface of this muscular curtain is concave, directed forward and downward, and is traversed by a median raphe. The posterior surface is convex, directed backward and upward, and is continuous with the nasal cavity. Suspended from the center of its free border is a small rounded or conic membranous appendix, the *uvula*, and passing outward from the base of this at each side are two curved folds of mucous membrane, which extend outward and downward, and are known as the *pillars of the fauces*. From the position which these folds occupy they are divided into the *anterior* and the *posterior* pillars of the fauces. The anterior pillar is formed from muscular fibers which extend from the soft palate to the side and base of the tongue (palatoglossus muscle), and is somewhat prominent as it passes downward, outward, and forward. The posterior pillar approaches more closely to its fellow of the opposite side than does the anterior. It is formed of muscular fibers which extend from the soft palate above to the pharynx below (palatopharyngeus muscle). It is somewhat concave in its downward and backward course, and while closely united to the anterior pillar above, is separated from it below, leaving a triangular interval or niche in which is lodged a small, almond-shaped body, the *tonsil*, the space being known as the *tonsillar recess*. The intervening space—bounded by the margins of the soft palate above, the root of the tongue below, and the pillars laterally—is called the *isthmus of the fauces*, and establishes the communication between the mouth and the pharynx. The free margins of the soft palate, assisted by the



pillars of the fauces, mark the *posterior boundary of the mouth*. The entire surface of the soft palate and its prolongations, the pillars of the fauces, is covered with mucous membrane, being continuous with that of the mouth on its anterior surface, and with that of the nasal cavity on its posterior surface.

### Muscles of the Soft Palate.

On each side the muscles of the soft palate are the *palatoglossus*, *palatopharyngeus*, *levator palati*, and *tensor palati*, together with the *azygos uvulæ*.

**Palatoglossus.**—A small fasciculus of fibers, somewhat cylindric in form, expanding at either end into a thin sheet. It is named from its attachment to the soft palate and to the tongue. It is the prominence of this muscle, together with its covering of mucous membrane, that forms the anterior pillar of the fauces.

*Origin.*—By a thin muscular sheet from the under surface of the aponeurosis of the soft palate near the median line, its fibers uniting with those of the opposite side. It passes downward in front of the tonsil and against the pharyngeal wall.

*Insertion.*—Into the side and base of the tongue.

*Relations.*—Superficially, it is covered by the mucous membrane of the soft palate and tongue; deeply, in contact with the aponeurosis of the soft palate, the superior constrictor muscle of the pharynx, and one of the muscles of the tongue—the hyoglossus.

*Action.*—The lateral walls of the soft palate are drawn down, and the sides of the tongue are drawn upward and slightly backward. Acting in conjunction with the palatopharyngeus, the opening of the fauces is constricted.

**Palatopharyngeus.**—This muscle—also named from its attachments—is broad above, where it forms the greater part of the lower half of the soft palate. Near the median line a few of its fibers blend with those of its fellow of the opposite side.

*Origin.*—By two heads from a point near the raphe or median line of the soft palate, passing downward and slightly backward, forming, with its covering of mucous membrane, the posterior pillar of the fauces.

*Insertion.*—Into the posterior border of the thyroid cartilage, and to the inner surface of the lower part of the pharynx.

*Relations.*—In the soft palate, superficially, with the mucous membrane, both anteriorly and posteriorly; above, with the levator palati; and beneath, by the mucous glands. In the posterior pillar it is surrounded with mucous membrane, and in the pharynx by the constrictor muscles of the pharynx and the mucous membrane.

*Action.*—To constrict the opening of the fauces, by bringing together the posterior pillars, thus depressing the soft palate and elevating the pharynx. It controls the position of the soft palate during respiration, and elevates the pharynx during deglutition.

**Levator Palati.**—This is a moderately thick muscle, and derives its name from its action upon the soft palate.

*Origin.*—By a short tendon from the under surface of the petrous portion of the temporal bone, and from the posterior and inferior aspect of the cartilage of the Eustachian tube.

*Insertion.*—After passing downward by the side of the posterior nares it is inserted into the median line of the soft palate, where its fibers unite with those of its fellow of the opposite side.

*Relations.*—Externally, with the tensor palati and superior constrictor muscles; internally and posteriorly, with the mucous membrane.

*Action.*—To raise the soft palate, bringing it against the posterior wall of the pharynx.

**Tensor Palati.**—This is a slender and flattened muscular sheet, and receives its name from its action upon the soft palate.

*Origin.*—From the scaphoid fossa at the base of the internal pterygoid plate and the spinous process of the sphenoid bone; also from the outer side of the anterior aspect of the Eustachian tube.

*Insertion.*—After descending between the internal pterygoid muscle and the internal pterygoid plate, and winding around the hamular process of the latter, it is inserted into the transverse ridge on the horizontal portion of the palate bone, and at the

median line of the soft palate, where it is continuous with the aponeurosis of the opposite side.

*Action.*—To tighten or spread the soft palate laterally, forming a septum between the posterior nares and the pharynx. It also opens the Eustachian tube during deglutition.

**The azygos uvulæ** (so named because it was at one time supposed to be a single muscle) is composed of a pair of small muscles which *originate* from the aponeurosis of the soft palate and the nasal spine of the palate bone. They pass downward and form or are *inserted* into the uvula.

*Relations.*—Anteriorly, with the levator palati, palatoglossi, and a part of the palatopharyngei; posteriorly, to the mucous membrane.

*Action.*—To shorten or draw up the uvula.

### Blood-supply to the Soft Palate.

The *posterior* or *descending palatal branch* of the *deep facial artery*, after emerging from the posterior palatal canal, sends its posterior division backward and downward to the soft palate, in the substance of which they anastomose with the ascending palatal artery. After passing over the superior border of the pharynx, the *ascending pharyngeal artery* sends off branches which are distributed to the soft palate. A few branches of the superior palatal branch of the *internal maxillary* and a few twigs from the *lingual artery* also convey blood to the parts.

**Course of the Blood from the Heart to the Soft Palate.**—From the heart to the aorta, to the common carotid, to the external carotid, to the facial or lingual, to the various branches named above, to the soft palate. The return of the blood to the heart is principally through the *superior* and *inferior* or *descending palatal veins*, both of which closely follow the course of the arteries of the same name.

**Nerves of the Soft Palate.**—The *small*, or *posterior, palatal*, the *external palatal* (both of which are branches of Meckel's ganglion), branches of the *glosso-pharyngeal* nerve, and the following nerves which supply the various muscles: filaments from the pharyngeal plexus to the palatoglossus and palatopharyngeus, branches of the Vidian to the levator palati and

azygos uvulæ, and from the mandibular division of the fifth nerve to the tensor palati.\*

THE INFERIOR PORTION OR FLOOR OF THE MOUTH (FIG. 4).

This half of the cavity of the mouth contains the *tongue* and its attached muscles, the sixteen *lower teeth* firmly implanted

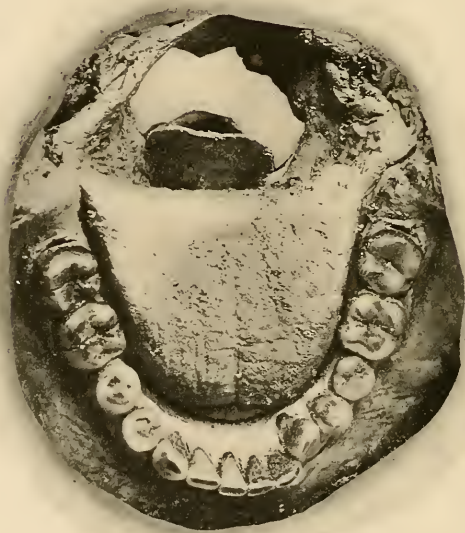


FIG. 4.—THE INFERIOR PORTION OR FLOOR OF THE MOUTH.

in the jaw, and the gums covering the alveolar walls. The base or osseous framework upon which this portion of the mouth is constructed is principally made up of a single bone, the inferior maxillary, mandible, or lower jaw bone (see Bones of the Mouth, p. 51). The hyoid bone, situated in the median line at the upper

---

\* A description of the upper teeth will be found in another chapter.

part of the neck, and at the base of the tongue, giving attachment to many of the muscles about the floor of the mouth, may also be considered in this connection. The floor of the mouth is bounded anteriorly by the lower lip, laterally by the cheeks, and below by the muscles attached to the external and internal oblique lines of the mandible.

#### THE TONGUE (FIG. 5).

The tongue is a freely movable, highly sensitive, muscular

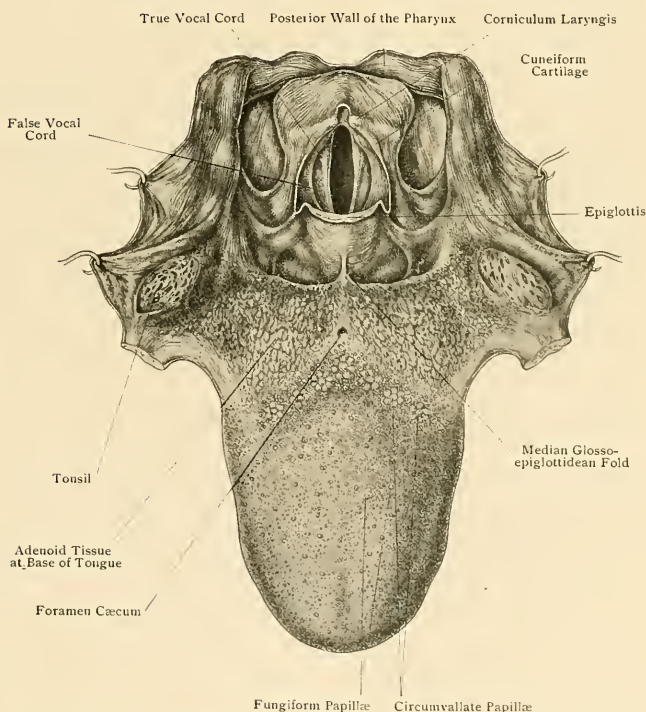


FIG. 5.—SUPERIOR APERTURE OF LARYNX.—(*Deaver.*)

organ. It assists in the function of speech, participating, also,

in the special sense of taste, and in mastication and deglutition. The organ is attached posteriorly to a U-shaped bone, the *hyoid bone*, which of itself is movable, and is placed in the neck between the angles of the lower jaw and the thyroid cartilage.

The tongue is suspended and kept in its position in the mouth by numerous muscles, some of which are attached to the base of the skull, and others to the lower jaw and hyoid bone.

The size of the tongue bears little or no relation to the size of the individual, but is proportioned to the capacity of the alveolar arch, which space it completely fills when at rest. The shape of the tongue is controlled by the shape of the alveolar arch; thus, when the arch is contracted, narrow, and pointed, the margins of the tongue, when at rest, will assume that form (*a*,



FIG. 6.

Fig. 6); but when the arch is broad and rounded anteriorly, the margins of the tongue will also be broad and rounded (*b*, Fig. 6).

The substance of the tongue is chiefly composed of muscular fibers, which are arranged in a complicated manner, crossing one another at various angles, thus making the movements of the organ exceedingly varied

and extensive. Fibrous, areolar, and fatty tissues enter into its structure, and it is freely supplied with blood-vessels and nerves. Its free surface is covered by sensitive mucous membrane, and over its entire surface are numerous mucous follicles and glands.

Before continuing the description of the tongue, it will be necessary to name its parts. The upper surface, or that facing the roof of the mouth, is the *dorsum*; those portions directed toward the cheeks are known as the *sides* of the tongue; while the hem which unites these two borders at the median line, and extending a short distance backward on either side, is the *tip*. That portion between the frenum and extending back to the pillars of the fauces is the *base*, while that part of the dorsum immediately posterior to the tip is the *post-tip*, that region which



lies between the post-tip and the base being the *prebase*. The dorsum, sides, and tip are free, while the base is attached by muscles to the lower jaw and hyoid bone.

From the base to the epiglottis is a fold which serves to limit the movement of the latter organ, and from the sides of the base the pillars of the fauces are given off. Under the anterior free extremity in the median line is a fibrous muscular lamina or ligament, the *frenum*, which connects this part of the organ with the lower jaw and marks the anterior border of the base of the tongue. The tongue is divided through its anterior two-thirds by a slight longitudinal furrow, the *median raphe*, which ends posteriorly near a small foramen, not constant in the adult tongue, but plainly observed in the fetus or infant, the *foramen cæcum*. This foramen represents the upper termination of the thyroglossus duct.

**Papillæ of the Tongue.**—Over the anterior two-thirds of the dorsum and the sides and tip of the tongue are a number of small, soft, conic eminences, which are known as the papillæ of the tongue. These are most numerous over the anterior part of the dorsum, and at the back they are covered and partly hidden by an epithelial coating. In general, the papillæ are quite similar to those of the integument, not being compound organs in their vascular and nervous supply. In consequence of their variation in form, the papillæ are variously named. The largest papillæ, being arranged like the letter V, are called the *circumvallate* or *calciiform*; those of medium size, the *fungiform*, are so named from their resemblance to a young mushroom; and the smallest and most numerous are known as the *conic* or *filiform* papillæ. Each papilla presents a broad, free end, and is attached by a constricted base, which rests in a small, cup-like concavity, about the margins of which is a well-formed circular rim. Beneath the thick epithelium of these parts are numerous secondary papillæ, and about the base of each papilla are the openings of one or more glands.

The *circumvallate* or *calciiform* papillæ (Fig. 5) form a V-shaped line at the posterior boundary of the dorsum. They are few in number (varying from six to twelve), but are largest in size, not infrequently measuring  $\frac{1}{4}$  of an inch in diameter. These

papillæ are generally regarded as being gustatory, or directly interested in the sense of taste. Each papilla is capped with a small secondary papilla.

The *fungiform* papillæ (Fig. 5), of medium size, varying from  $\frac{1}{10}$  to  $\frac{1}{50}$  of an inch in diameter, are scattered over the dorsum, sides, and tip of the tongue at irregular intervals, and are much more highly colored than the smaller papillæ which surround them. They vary greatly in number, and being principally gustatory, account in a great measure for the diversity in the acuteness of the sense of taste in different individuals. These papillæ, like the circumvallate, are capped with smaller secondary papillæ.

The *conic* or *filiform* papillæ (Fig. 5) are the smallest and most numerous, and are thickly scattered over the entire surface of the dorsum in front of the circumvallate as well as over the sides and tip of the tongue. They are placed closely together, and with such regularity that they fairly ridge the tongue with delicate lines, which run parallel with the circumvallate in that region, but as the tip is approached they become transversely inclined. These papillæ are generally regarded as being tactile or directly interested in the sense of touch, and are concerned in directing the movements of the food during mastication. They also possess secondary papillæ upon their surfaces.

Immediately posterior to the circumvallate papillæ are two shallow grooves which follow the V-shaped line of the papillæ and unite at the foramen cæcum. These grooves serve to indicate the line of junction between the anterior and posterior portions of the tongue. The latter not being within the cavity of the mouth will not be described.

### Muscles of the Tongue (Fig. 7).

The muscles of the tongue are both *extrinsic-outward* or external, and *intrinsic-inherent*, inward, or special.

The extrinsic muscles include those which have their origin from the base of the skull, the hyoid bone, or the mandible, and are the *hyoglossus*, *geniohyoglossus*, *styloglossus*, *palatoglossus*, and a few fibers of the superior constrictor of the pharynx. The intrinsic muscles which make up the bulk of the tongue are two in number, the *superior lingualis* and *inferior lingualis*.



**Hyoglossus.**—As its name implies, this muscle extends from the hyoid bone to the tongue. Its fibers are so arranged that they form a thin square sheet.

**Origin.**—It arises from the whole length of the upper border of the great cornu, from the body, and by a few fibers from the

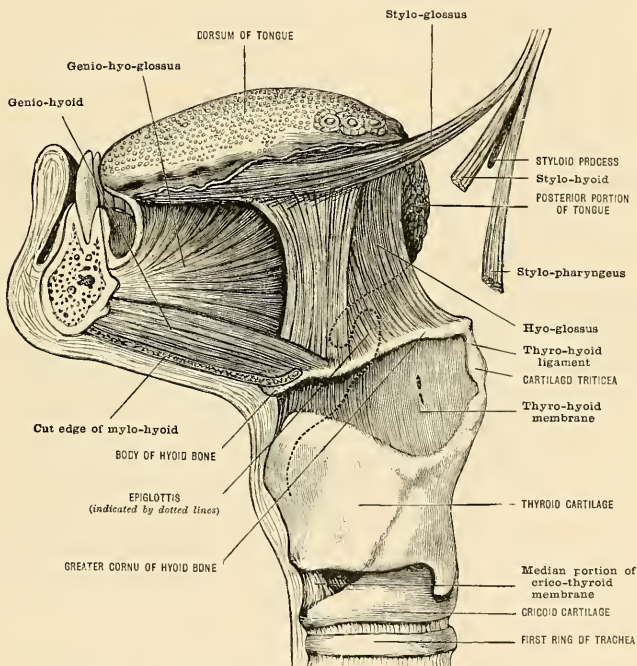


FIG. 7.—SIDE VIEW OF THE TONGUE, WITH ITS MUSCLES.—(Morris.)

lesser cornu of the hyoid bone. At their point of origin the fibers are in the form of a thin sheet, and ascend toward the tongue almost parallel to one another, but before reaching the tongue the anterior fibers pass slightly forward, and at the upper margin of the side of the tongue bend inward and join the fibers of the superior lingualis. In their distribution to this part of

the tongue they form a kind of submucous covering to the organ.

*Insertion.*—Into the posterior half of the side of the tongue, between the styloglossus and superior lingualis muscles.

*Relations.*—Externally, with the digastricus, styloglossus, stylohyoid, and mylohyoid muscles, the lingual and hypoglossal nerves, Wharton's duct, and the sublingual gland. Internally, with the lingualis, geniohyoglossus, and middle constrictor of the pharynx muscles, the lingual artery, and the glossopharyngeal nerve.

*Action.*—To extend the tongue and to draw it backward, also to draw downward the sides of the tongue, making its dorsum more convex transversely.

**Geniohyoglossus** (Fig. 7).—This muscle also receives its name from its three points of attachment, the chin internally, the hyoid bone, and the tongue. It is a triangular-shaped muscle, narrow and pointed at its attachment to the mandible, and broad and fan-shaped on approaching the tongue. Being near the median line, it is separated from its fellow of the opposite side by a thin layer of connective tissue, the *septum* of the tongue.

*Origin.*—It arises by a short tendon from the upper genial tubercle of the lower jaw, from which point its fleshy fibers diverge fan-like to its extensive insertion.

*Insertion.*—To the whole length of the tongue from base to apex immediately external to the median line, into the body of the hyoid bone, and by a few fibers into the side of the pharynx.

*Relations.*—By its inner surface, with the septum of the tongue and its fellow of the opposite side; by its outer surface, with the hyoglossus, mylohyoides, styloglossus, and lingualis muscles, sublingual gland, lingual artery, and hypoglossal nerve. Superiorly, with the mucous membrane of the floor of the mouth; inferiorly, with the geniohyoid muscle.

*Action.*—Its anterior fibers assist in drawing back the tip of the tongue, its posterior fibers throwing forward and protruding the tongue. This muscle also depresses the center of the dorsum longitudinally, making it concave transversely, and some of the lower fibers which are attached to the hyoid bone elevate the bone and assist in raising the tongue.

**Styloglossus.**—Also named from its attachment, is a long fan-shaped muscle, somewhat compressed laterally.

*Origin.*—From its point of origin at the tip of the styloid process of the temporal bone, and from a portion of the stylo-maxillary ligament, it passes with a long curve, forward, slightly downward, then upward and inward to its place of insertion at the side of the tongue.

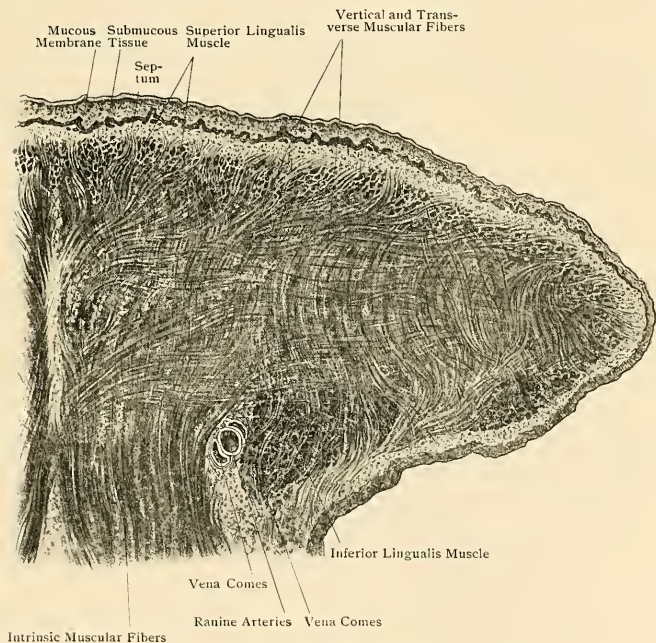


FIG. 8.—TRANSVERSE SECTION OF ONE-HALF OF TONGUE.—(Deaver.)

*Insertion.*—Upon reaching the side of the tongue it divides into two portions, the fibers of one portion passing transversely inward, while the others pass longitudinally along the side of the tongue.

*Relations.*—Externally, with the internal pterygoid muscle, parotid and sublingual glands, lineal nerve, and the mucous

membrane of the mouth; internally, with the superior constrictor and hyoglossus muscles, and with the tonsil.

*Action.*—To draw the tongue backward and to produce a transverse concavity to its upper surface by elevating its sides.

**Superior Lingualis.**—This is one of the intrinsic muscles, and is situated immediately beneath the mucous membrane, extending from the base to the tip of the organ.

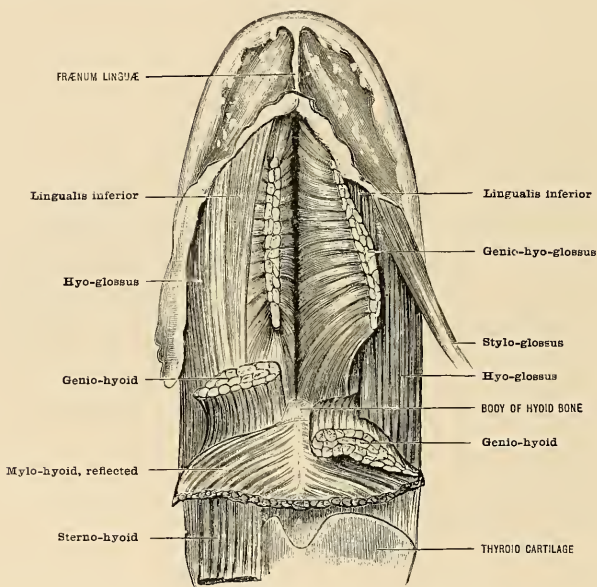


FIG. 9.—UNDER SURFACE OF THE TONGUE WITH MUSCLES.—(Morris.)

**Inferior Lingualis** (Fig. 9).—This muscle is placed near the under surface of the tongue, and is composed of two bands which extend from base to apex, some of its fibers being attached posteriorly to the hyoid bone, and in passing forward are placed between the hyoglossus and geniohyoglossus. Anteriorly, its fibers blend with those of the styloglossus.

Many of the fibers of this muscle run transversely and are

placed between the two former intrinsic muscles. These, together with some fatty tissue, compose the greater part of the substance of the tongue. The fibers are attached at the median line to the fibrocartilaginous septum of the tongue, and laterally to the mucous membrane. In connection with the transverse fibers there are a few placed vertically, which pass by long curves from the dorsum to the under surface of the tongue.

### Blood-vessels of the Tongue (Fig. 10).

This organ receives its blood principally through the *lingual*, *facial*, and *ascending pharyngeal* arteries. The *lingual artery*

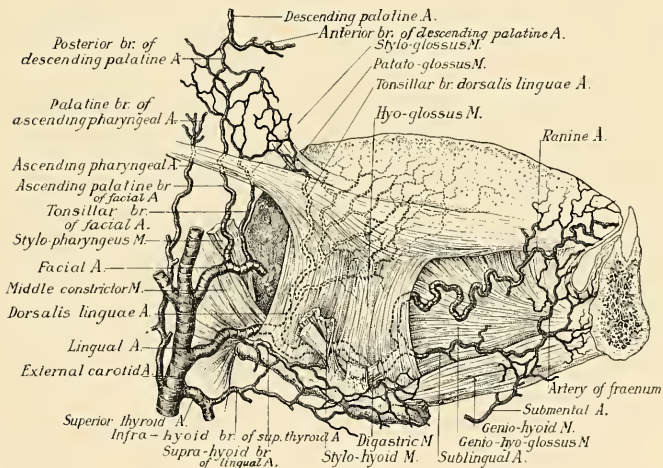


FIG. 10.—ARTERIES OF TONGUE AND TONSIL.—(Deaver.)

arises from the front of the external carotid near the facial, and often as a common trunk with it. From its point of origin to the tongue it is divided into three portions, the first or oblique, the second or horizontal, and the third or ascending, and it is this latter portion which directly supplies the tongue. Ascending tortuously beneath the hyoglossus muscle, it reaches the under surface of the tongue, and, lying between the lingualis and hyo-



glossus muscles, it is continued to the under surface of the tip of the tongue, at which point it is called the *ranine artery*. At a point about corresponding with the posterior margin of the hyoglossus muscle a branch is given off (the *dorsalis linguae*), which passes almost directly upward, and, after dividing into two or more small branches, supplies the back part of the dorsum of the tongue and the mucous membrane about the circumvallate papillæ. At the anterior border of the hyoglossus muscle another branch is given off (the *sublingual artery*) supplying the anterior muscular structure of the floor of the mouth. The facial artery by one of its muscular branches supplies the styloglossus muscle.

#### Course of the Blood From the Heart to the Tongue.—

From the heart to the aorta, to the common carotid, to the external carotid, to the lingual artery, and its smaller branches to the tongue. From the tongue the blood is returned to the heart principally through the *lingual vein*, which begins at the ranine vein beneath the tip of the tongue, passes backward under cover of the mucous membrane, following the course of the lingual artery until the hyoglossus muscle is reached, beyond which point the fibers of the muscle separate the artery from the vein. After receiving the sublingual and dorsalis linguae veins, the course of which corresponds to the arteries of the same name, the vein passes backward and downward and empties into the internal jugular.

#### Nerves of the Tongue.

The *mandibular division* of the *fifth* nerve by its lingual branch supplies the papillæ of the anterior portion and sides of the tongue, while the *lingual branch* of the *glossopharyngeal* supplies the circumvallate papillæ, the base, and posterior sides. A few branches of the superior laryngeal are distributed to the back part of the root of the organ. The motor nerve of the tongue is the *hypoglossal* or *ninth*, supplying both the extrinsic and intrinsic muscles.\*

---

\* A description of the lower teeth will be found in another chapter.

## CHAPTER II.

### THE BONES OF THE MOUTH: THE SUPERIOR MAXILLÆ, THE PALATE BONES, THE INFERIOR MAXILLA OR MANDIBLE.

#### SUPERIOR MAXILLARY BONES.

The *superior maxillary bones*, two in number, one on each side of the median line or center of the face, are irregular in shape, and may be classed as the largest bones of the face, with the probable exception of the mandible or inferior maxilla. From the central position which they occupy they contribute largely to the bony framework of this portion of the skull. They are not only instrumental in forming the major portion of the roof of the mouth or hard palate, but assist in the formation of the floor of the orbit, and the sides and base of the nasal chamber. They furnish a solid and firm foundation for the sixteen upper teeth, and by their variety in form contribute much to the character and quality of the voice. The outer or facial surface of these bones provides attachment for numerous muscles. Each superior maxillary bone presents for examination a *body*, *four surfaces*, and *four processes*. The body may be described as forming an irregular triangle, its general contour depending much upon the temperament of the subject and consequent character of the teeth. Within the body of the bone is an irregular cavity, the maxillary sinus or antrum of Highmore.

The four surfaces of the body of the bone are the superior or orbital, the lateral or facial, the proximal or nasal, and the posterior or zygomatic.

**The Superior or Orbital Surface**, which assists in forming the greater portion of the floor of the orbit, is slightly concave over its anterior two-thirds, and somewhat convex over the remaining or posterior third. The three borders of this surface form almost an equilateral triangle, and are named, as indicated by their location, the anterior, the posterior, and the mesial or proximal. The *anterior border* is convex from before backward

and slightly concave throughout its length. That portion which forms a part of the lower border of the completed orbit is smooth, while the remaining portion is roughened to form an articulation with the malar bone. The *posterior border* extends from the center of the malar process backward and inward to the orbital process of the palate bone, which articulates with the superior maxillary at this point. A portion of this border, together with the orbital process of the palate bone, is instrumental in forming the anterior boundary of the sphenomaxillary fissure.

The *mesial or proximal border* is marked by an irregular thin edge, which articulates with a portion of two bones, the lacrymal anteriorly, and the os planum of the ethmoid bone posteriorly. Only the posterior two-thirds of this border presents an articulating edge, the remaining or anterior third being smooth and forming the commencement of the lacrymal groove, which in the articulated skull becomes a canal, passing downward and backward to communicate with the inferior meatus of the nose. Beginning at the posterior border of this surface and running forward will be found a deep groove—the *infra-orbital groove*. When near the center of the surface, this groove dips down and is covered by a layer of bone, from which point it passes forward as a canal,—the *infra-orbital canal*,—making its exit at a point about  $\frac{1}{2}$  of an inch below the border of the orbit, near the center of the facial surface of the bone, the foramen thus formed being the *infra-orbital foramen*. Near the root of the nasal process, and immediately within the anterior border of this surface, is a small depression which marks the origin of the inferior oblique muscle of the eyeball.

**The Lateral or Facial Surface** (Fig. 11).—This surface is made up of the anterior part of the bone; it is irregularly concave, and presents a greater variety in form than any other part of the bone, with the single exception of the palatal process. It is bounded above by the infra-orbital ridge, and the roughened surface of the malar process which articulates with the malar bone; below, by the border of the alveolar process; anteriorly, by the frail concave border of the opening into the nasal cavity, the anterior nasal spine, and the perpendicular margins of the bone beneath. Posteriorly, this surface is separated from the



posterior or zygomatic surface by a strong projecting eminence, the malar process.

The *canine fossa* is a deep depression, situated almost in the center of this surface, the bone at this point being extremely thin and closely related to the floor of the antrum. The concave floor of this fossa is frequently traversed by one or two smaller convex ridges, corresponding to the roots of the bicuspid teeth.

The *canine eminence* is a prominent ridge running vertical to

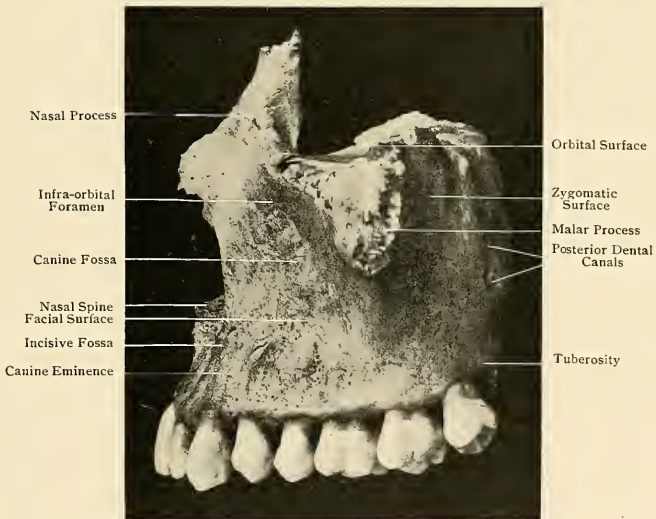


FIG. 11.—LEFT SUPERIOR MAXILLA, OUTER OR FACIAL SURFACE.

the body of the bone immediately anterior to the canine fossa, and corresponding in position to the root of the cuspid tooth, the size and type of the tooth having much to do with its extent and prominence. This ridge gives origin to one of the depressor muscles of the upper lip, and also to one of the depressor muscles of the wing of the nose. The *incisive* or *myrtiform fossa* is a depression found between the canine eminence and the inner margin of the bone. The depth of this fossa is in a meas-

ure controlled by the position and size of the teeth, and by the amount of prominence in the canine eminence.

*The infra-orbital foramen*, which transmits the infra-orbital nerves and blood-vessels, is immediately below the center of the infra-orbital ridge, and near the upper margin of the canine fossa. It is oval in form and faces almost directly toward the median line. Between this foramen and the infra-orbital ridge is the point of origin for the principal levator muscle of the upper lip, the levator labii superioris proprius. The whole extent of the facial surface may present a number of vertical ridges, or the same space may be regular and smooth, the condition being controlled by the size and shape of the tooth-roots and the thickness of the bone covering them. One of the levator muscles of the angle of the mouth, the levator anguli oris, is attached to this surface near the upper border of the canine fossa.

**The Proximal or Nasal Surface** (Fig. 12).—Above, this surface presents a large, irregular opening into the maxillary sinus, this opening being nearly closed in the articulated skull by neighboring bones. In front of the opening into the sinus, and standing perpendicular from the body of the bone, is the strong ascending plate of the nasal process, marked near its lower extremity by a rough, horizontal ridge, the *inferior turbinated crest*, which gives attachment to the inferior turbinated bone. The smooth, concave surface immediately above this ridge corresponds to the middle meatus of the nose, and forms the external wall of that passage. Below the opening into the sinus and the nasal process, and occupying the anterior two-thirds of the middle of this surface, is a large semicircular space, forming the outer wall of the inferior meatus of the nose. Below this space, and projecting inward from the body of the bone, is the *palatal process*, which articulates with the corresponding process of the opposite bone. At the anterior superior angle of the nasal surface, and passing downward just behind the nasal process, is the lacrymal groove. In the articulated skull this groove becomes a canal, the *lacrymal canal*, the ethmoid and the inferior turbinated bones assisting in its formation. The canal passes downward and slightly backward, and

opens into the inferior meatus of the nose. It is about  $\frac{1}{2}$  of an inch in length, and gives passage to the lacrymonasal duct.

*The lacrymal tubercle* is a small prominence of bone formed at the junction of the anterior border of this surface, with the external surface of the nasal spine. The extended portion of the lacrymal duct, the lacrymal sac, finds lodgment at this point.

*The posterior palatine or palatamaxillary canal* commences

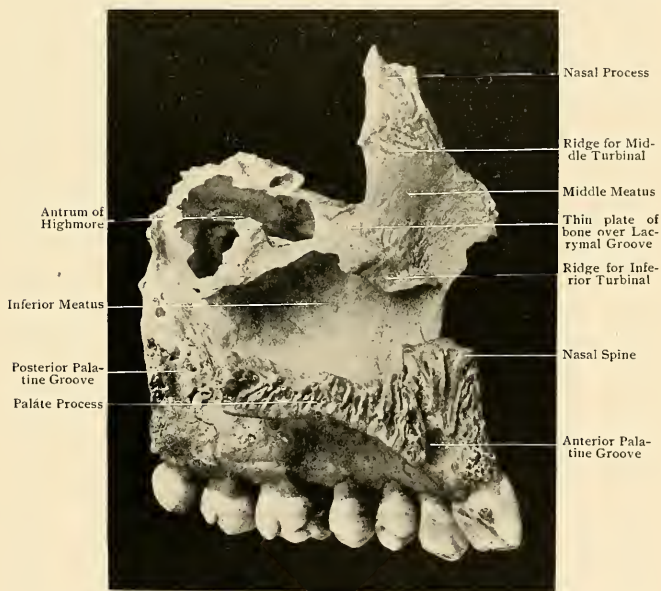


FIG. 12.—LEFT SUPERIOR MAXILLA, INTERNAL, PROXIMAL, OR NASAL SURFACE.

near the middle of the posterior border of this surface, appearing in the disarticulated bone as a groove, and, passing downward and forward, gives passage to the posterior palatine vessels and anterior palatine nerves. The canal is made complete by the articulation of the superior maxillary with the vertical plate of the palate bone. On the posterior portion of the nasal surface, extending from the irregular opening into the antrum downward

to a point opposite the palatal process, is a roughened surface about  $\frac{1}{2}$  of an inch in width, which marks the extent of articulation with the palate bone.

*The proximal or nasal surface* presents four borders—superior, inferior, anterior, and posterior. The superior border is irregular, and articulates with the lacrymal and ethmoid bones. The inferior border projects inward, and forms a strong horizontal plate—the palatal process. This process defines the border from before backward to the posterior third, at which point it is marked by the lower border of the roughened surface which articulates with the palate bone. The anterior border is sharp, frail, and irregular in outline, and forms the free margin of the opening into the nasal cavity. The posterior border is marked by the inner margin of the zygomatic surface, being smooth upon its upper half, and roughened upon its lower half, at which point it articulates with the palate bone.

**The Posterior or Zygomatic Surface** (Fig. 11).—This surface is partly convex and partly concave, and is bounded above by a well-defined margin, which serves as the dividing-line between this and the superior or orbital surface. This border is also marked by a roughened margin on the posterior portion of the malar process, the orbital portion of the palate bone articulating at this point. The major portion of this border is smooth and rounded, forming the lower border of the sphenomaxillary fissure, and marked by a notch, the commencement of the infra-orbital groove. The outer border of the surface is formed by the malar process, and by a line drawn from this point directly downward to the alveolar process. The inner border is smooth and somewhat irregular above, while below it is roughened for articulation with the palate bone.

*The tuberosity*, which also forms a portion of the inferior border of this surface, is a roughened and rounded eminence of bone, and is penetrated by a number of nutrient vessels, which enter the many small foramina at this point. Between the tuberosity and the body of the zygomatic surface are several large apertures leading into canals, which pass into, and give nourishment to, the substance of the bone. These canals transmit the posterior dental blood-vessels and nerves, one of which,

after passing over the outer wall of the maxillary sinus, unites with the anterior dental canal. The tuberosity is posterior to, and above, the third molar tooth, in some instances extending directly backward from this tooth for the distance of half an inch or more, but usually the tooth penetrates the base of the tuberosity, leaving but a thin layer of bone posterior to it.

*The inferior border* of the posterior or zygomatic surface is formed by that portion of the alveolar process which supports the second and third molar teeth.

The bone presents four processes for examination—the nasal, the malar, the palatal, and the alveolar.

**The nasal process** is a strong, irregular piece of bone, standing vertically above the body of the bone proper, and forming the lateral boundary of the nose. This process is greatly increased in strength by the infra-orbital ridge joining it at or near its base, and ascending its external anterior surface to some extent. That portion of the process posterior to its junction with the infra-orbital ridge assists in forming the inner wall of the orbit.

*The external or anterior surface* of the nasal process is marked by a number of shallow grooves, traces of the development of the bone. Scattered over this surface are a number of small foramina, the entrances to minute canals transmitting nutrient vessels to the body of the bone. This surface gives origin to one of the lip muscles, the levator labii superioris alæque nasi.

*The internal surface of the nasal process* is usually described as including all that portion between the superior border and the floor of the anterior nares. The surface is marked by two concave portions and two ridges. The two ridges divide the surface into three parts—the superior meatus, the middle meatus, and the inferior meatus of the nose. The *superior meatus* is the smallest of the three, and occupies the slightly concave space above the superior ridge. The *middle meatus*, partly concave, and partly convex, includes the space between the superior and the inferior ridges, and extends from the free margin of the bone in front to the lacrymal groove behind. The *inferior meatus*, which is much the largest, occupies all that concave surface between the inferior ridge above and the palatal process below, and extends from the anterior margin of the bone back-

ward to the point of articulation with the palate bone. The two ridges previously referred to are known as the *superior turbinated crest*, which articulates with the middle turbinated bone, and the *inferior turbinated crest*, which articulates with the inferior turbinated bone.

**The malar process** is a large, irregular portion of bone situated at the angle of separation between the facial and zygomatic surfaces, and presents a triangular, roughened surface for articulation with the malar bone. The superior boundary of this process is formed by the orbital surface and the outer end of the infra-orbital ridge; the inferior boundary may be marked by an irregular imaginary line running from the upper margin of the canine fossa to a point between the first and second molar teeth, while the posterior inferior boundary may be traced from the outer superior angle of the zygomatic surface downward and forward to the point above referred to. This process, as well as the nasal process, is subject to much variety in form and general outline. The malar process, assisting as it does in forming what is commonly called the cheek bone, is particularly variable in size, and in certain types and races it is so prominent as to become a controlling feature in the facial form. One of the muscles of mastication—the masseter—has a portion of its origin from the malar process.

**The palatal process** is more directly interested in the formation of the cavity of the mouth than any other portion of the superior maxillary bone. By articulating with its fellow of the opposite side, it forms about three-fourths of the hard palate or roof of the mouth, the remaining fourth being formed by a portion of the palate bones. It is thick and strong, and projects horizontally inward from the inner surface of the body of the bone. It presents two surfaces for examination,—a superior or nasal surface, and an inferior or oral surface. The *superior or nasal surface* is smooth and more or less concave, and forms the floor of the nares. The *inferior or oral surface* is also concave, but is much roughened by numerous small projections, between which are lodged the mucous glands. Upon the anterior portion of this surface are a number of small foramina, which mark the entrance to numerous small canals giving passage to nutrient



vessels to supply the body of the bone. Near the center of the posterior third are the anteroposterior grooves, which accommodate the posterior palatine nerves and blood-vessels. This process also presents for examination three borders and various other points of interest. The three borders are the anterior, posterior, and mesial. The *anterior* border is thick and somewhat irregular; the *posterior* border is thin and frail, and articulates with a portion of the palate bone. The *mesial* border presents a wide articulating surface in front, behind it is narrow, the whole extent of this border articulating with the corresponding process of the opposite bone.

*The Nasal Spine.*—At the anterior superior angle of the palatal process is a well-defined spine,—the nasal spine,—being formed by a prolongation of the process beyond the level of the facial surface of the bone. This process, when articulated with its fellow of the opposite side, forms the base of the nose.

*The Nasal Crest.*—Beginning at the base of the nasal spine, and extending backward along the median border of the bone, is a sharp, irregular ledge of bone, the nasal crest. This portion of the process articulates with the vomer.

*The incisor crest* is a continuation of the nasal crest anteriorly, projecting beyond the nasal spine in the form of a sharp, spear-like point.

*The incisive foramen*, or *foramen of Stenson*, is situated immediately back of the incisor crest, and leads downward and forward from the nasal chamber toward the mouth, entering that cavity just back of the central incisor tooth. This passage in the single bone is a simple groove, but in the articulated skull it becomes the anterior palatine canal, which, after passing downward, opens on the nasal surface of the palatal process by four foramina—the incisive foramina, and the foramina of Scarpa, or the naso-palatine foramina. These foramina transmit the naso-palatine nerves.

The palatal process of the superior maxilla is subject to a greater variety in form than any other portion of the bone, this variation in the articulated skull being the cause of the many different curves assumed by the roof or dome of the mouth.

**The Alveolar Process.**—This process forms the lower margin of the bone, and extends from the base of the tuberosity behind to the median line in front, at which point it articulates with the same process of the opposite bone. It has an outer and an inner margin corresponding to the buccal and palatal surfaces of the roots of the teeth, which are firmly imbedded in it. Its general form from before backward is that of a gradual curve, somewhat variable in different bones, the extent of this variation depending on the type or race to which the bone belongs. The body of the process is made up of an outer and an inner plate, which are connected by numerous septa of cancellated bone. The *outer plate* of the process is continuous with the facial and zygomatic surface of the body of the bone, and assists in forming these surfaces. It is quite thin and frail, and the position of the alveoli beneath are well shown by the numerous vertical ridges upon it. The inferior margin of the outer plate is reinforced by an additional thickness of bone, forming the border of the alveolar sockets. That portion of the plate supporting the molar teeth is heavier in general, and the position of the sockets are not so plainly outlined. The *inner plate* of the alveolar process is much heavier and stronger than the outer plate, and extends from the margins of the alveoli below to the palatal process above. The inferior margin of this plate is not reinforced except in the region of the molars. The construction of the inner plate is, to a great degree, controlled by the shape and position of the palatal process. In the lymphatic temperament this process, when articulated with its fellow, forms a flat or shallow dome to the oral cavity, and in so doing gradually curves into the alveolar process, giving it additional thickness. The depth of the process in this type is not great, and the roots of the teeth are short and heavy in proportion. In the bilious temperament the inner alveolar plate is deep and abrupt, extending from the inferior margin upward in almost a perpendicular direction to the palatal process, which joins it almost at right angles. The alveolar process gives origin to one of the cheek muscles,—the buccinator,—which is attached to the outer plate near its upper margin, and directly over the space occupied by the second bicuspid and first molar teeth.



*The Alveoli or Tooth Sockets.*—These cavities, which are variable in number, are formed by the outer and inner plate of the alveolar process, and by numerous connecting septa of bone placed between the two plates. The shape and depth of these cavities is regulated by the form and length of the roots of the teeth which they support. The first socket, or that next to the mesial surface of the bone, gives support to the central incisor tooth. It forms almost a perfect cone, and has an average depth of half an inch. Its lower border is circular, and the anterior or labial portion describes a larger circle than the posterior or palatal half. The mesial and distal walls are somewhat flattened. The second cavity, proceeding backward from the median line, supports the lateral incisor tooth. It is also conic, but much smaller than the preceding. It is seldom over  $\frac{3}{8}$  to  $\frac{5}{16}$  of an inch in depth. It is much flattened on its mesial and distal walls, giving the appearance of an oblong, rather than a round, cavity. This socket, as well as that for the central incisor, occupies an almost vertical position in the process. Very frequently the socket for the lateral incisor presents a slight distal curve at its upper extremity. The third socket, or that giving support to the cuspid tooth, is much larger and deeper than either of those previously described. It extends upward, inward, and backward to the average depth of  $\frac{5}{8}$  to  $\frac{3}{4}$  of an inch.

In transverse section, its labial wall presents a much larger circle than its palatal margin. The labial and distal walls are much flattened and somewhat convex. The general direction of this socket is slightly to the distal. The socket which supports the first bicuspid is usually divided from mesial to distal by a thin septum of bone, thus forming an outer or buccal socket, and an inner or palatal socket. This division seldom exists to the full depth of the cavity, but usually begins about midway of its length. The lower margin of this socket is oblong or egg-shaped, its outer or buccal portion forming a larger curve than its palatal. The lateral walls are slightly concave or flattened, until the point of separation is reached, when they become more circular, the alveoli above this point becoming cone-shaped. It is not uncommon for this socket to be a single cavity, and when thus formed it resembles a

flattened cone, with the buccal and palatal margins rounded. The next socket gives support to the second bicuspid tooth, in most instances being a single cavity, but in rare instances it is divided near its upper extremity. In general outline it resembles the socket for the first bicuspid.

The socket for the first molar is much larger than any of those previously described; its inferior margin presents a circular outline on its buccal and palatal portions, the former curve being larger than the latter. The mesial and distal walls are flattened and slightly concave. The upper three-fourths of this socket is divided into three separate compartments, being so arranged that two are upon the buccal and one upon the palatal side. The septa separating the two buccal cavities from the palatal cavity are heavy and strong, while that placed between the two buccal sockets is thin and frail. The two buccal cavities are usually flattened upon their mesial and distal sides. The palatal socket is larger and somewhat deeper than the buccal, the average depth of all being about  $\frac{1}{2}$  of an inch. The socket for the second molar is similar in most respects to that for the first molar, except that it is somewhat smaller. The same description might answer for the third molar socket, which in general is similar to the alveoli for the other molars. It is smaller than the second molar socket, and may be a single cavity, or it may be divided into three or more compartments.

**Articulations.**—The superior maxillary bone articulates with its fellow of the opposite side, with the frontal, lacrymal, ethmoid, palate, vomer, malar, and inferior turbinated bones. Occasionally it articulates with the sphenoid bone.

**Attachment of Muscles.**—The muscles attached to this bone are eleven in number, and are as follows :

Compressor nares,	Internal pterygoid,
Orbicularis oris,	Orbicularis palpebrarum,
Levator labii superioris alæque nasi,	Levator labii superioris proprius,
Levator anguli oris,	Inferior oblique,
Depressor alæ nasi,	Buccinator,
	Masseter.

**Blood-supply.**—The maxilla receives its vascular supply from numerous large arteries. They are derived from the alveolar, infra-orbital, nasopalatal, descending palatal, ethmoidal, nasal, frontal, and facial branches.

**Development.**—The superior maxilla arises from four points of ossification, which are deposited in membrane. These four centers make their appearance as early as the eighth fetal week, this early beginning making it somewhat difficult to accurately follow its growth. The four centers are named, as located, pre-

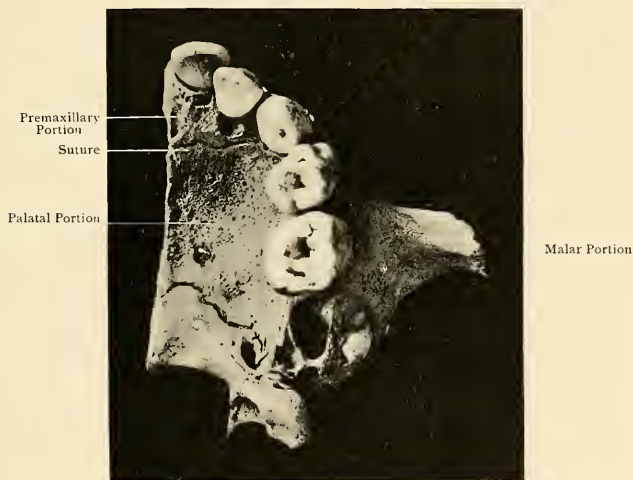


FIG. 13.—LEFT SUPERIOR MAXILLARY, ABOUT THE THIRD YEAR, ENLARGED.

maxillary, maxillary, malar, and prepalatal. The premaxillary nucleus gives rise to the incisive portion of the bone, or that part supporting the incisor teeth. During early life this division of the bone is separated from the body of the bone, and is known as the premaxillary portion (Fig. 13). Union between the premaxillary portion and the maxilla proper takes place about birth, and the suture thus formed is visible on the facial surface until the sixth or seventh year, and on the palatine surface until

the adult period. The palatal suture extends as far back as the posterior border of the anterior palatal canal. This nucleus also sends a narrow process upward which forms part of the outer boundary of the anterior narial aperture. On the palatal aspect it furnishes a speculum which surrounds the anterior and mesial walls of Stenson's canal. The posterior limit of the premaxillary portion is indicated by the suture on the palatal surface. The maxillary nucleus forms the greater portion of the body of the true maxilla and the nasal process. The malar center gives origin to the malar process, and all that portion



FIG. 14.—DEVELOPING MAXILLARY BONES ABOUT THE FIFTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

external to the infra-orbital groove. The prepalatine center gives rise to the nasal surface of the bone and that portion of the palatal process posterior to Stenson's canal.

*Development of the Alveolar Process.*—This process is represented at birth by the walls of a deep groove, in which are lodged the partly calcified, deciduous teeth and the germs of most of the permanent teeth (see Development of the Teeth).

The growth of the process continues with the growth of the teeth until, finally, at about the seventh month after birth, the dental organs are completely encased within its walls. With the

decalcification of the roots of the deciduous teeth comes the loss of the process surrounding them, and, as the permanent teeth advance to take their place in the arch, the process is again built up about their roots.

**The Maxillary Sinus, or Antrum of Highmore\*** (Fig. 12).—This is a large cavity situated within the body of the maxilla. Its general shape is that of a pyramid, with its base directed toward the median line, or nasal surface, its apex pointing toward and extending into the malar process, and, in some instances, penetrating the malar bone. The size of the cavity varies in different subjects and in the opposite bone of the same subject. The average capacity is about three fluidrams, but this may be increased to six or eight fluidrams. The size of the bone and the prominence of the malar process control, in a measure, the size of the cavity; but not infrequently the largest bone will present the smallest sinus. Sex also appears to exert a controlling influence over the capacity of the cavity, it being greater in the male than in the female. In youth the cavity is quite small, the walls being much thicker proportionately than in the adult. The walls of the sinus in the matured subject are quite thin and frail, and are four in number. The superior wall is formed by a thin plate of bone, the floor of the orbit. This surface is almost flat, and serves as a roof to the cavity. Near the anterior margin of this surface is a thick rib of bone which marks the course, and forms one of the walls of the infra-orbital canal.

The inner wall, or that looking toward the nasal surface, is formed by the thin bony layer separating this cavity from that of the nares. The outer or lateral surface, formed by the facial and zygomatic surfaces of the bone, is smooth, and convex from before backward. Near the center of this surface the cavity may penetrate the malar process, and in the disarticulated skull would present an opening at this point. The inferior wall is formed by the alveolar process, and is marked by a number of irregular eminences corresponding to the roots of the neighboring teeth. The teeth referred to are generally the first and

---

\* Described separately, in preference to including in general description of the bone.

second molars, and occasionally the second bicuspid. It is not unusual for the roots of one or more of these teeth to penetrate the floor of the sinus, in consequence of which the lining membrane of the cavity may suffer disease generated in the teeth.

The inferior wall is much the strongest of the four, and, besides the unevenness of the surface produced by the tooth-roots, it frequently supports a number of thin, bony partitions, which may completely or partly divide the floor of the cavity into numerous small compartments.

The posterior portion of the lateral wall is marked by the posterior dental canals, which give passage to the posterior nerves and blood-vessels. In like manner the anterior portion of the lateral wall is grooved for the reception of the anterior dental nerves and blood-vessels. Upon the inner wall, or that forming the base of the pyramid, is an opening which communicates with the middle meatus of the nose. In the articulated skull this opening is quite small, being from  $\frac{1}{8}$  to  $\frac{1}{4}$  of an inch in diameter. The correct idea of this opening can not be obtained by studying the individual bone, as the numerous perforations then to be observed are closed or partly closed by articulation with adjacent bones. The mucous membrane lining the nasal cavity enters the sinus through the small aperture above referred to, and forms a continuous lining over its entire surface. Cryer has thrown much light upon the relations of the maxillary sinus to the mouth and teeth, and he has demonstrated beyond a doubt that the relationship existing between the parts is susceptible to extensive variation. He has shown that in some instances the cavity upon one side will be large, with its floor broken by the tooth-roots, while that upon the opposite side will be extremely small and far removed from the root apices. In fact, these researches have so revolutionized the subject under consideration that the foregoing description is only reliable in so far as it treats of the conditions most frequently met with.



## THE PALATE BONE.

The *palate bones* (Fig. 15), two in number, are situated immediately posterior to the two maxillæ, and with them complete the hard palate. They also assist in forming the boundaries of the orbital and nasal cavities, the sphenomaxillary, the sphenopalatine, and the pterygoid fossa, the sphenomaxillary fissure, the posterior ethmoidal cells, and the maxillary sinus. When in position in the skull, these bones are wedged between the maxillæ and the sphenoid bone. They are rectangular in outline, and each bone presents for examination a horizontal and

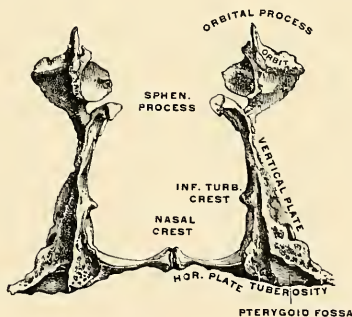


FIG. 15.—THE TWO PALATE BONES IN THEIR NATURAL POSITION, DORSAL VIEW.—(*Testut.*)

a vertical plate, a tuberosity, and two processes, the orbital and the sphenoid.

The **horizontal plate**, smaller than the vertical, assists in forming the hard palate, and corresponds to the palatal process of the maxilla. In entering into the construction of the hard palate the form of this plate varies to the same degree as the palatal plate of the maxilla. In general, it is described as quadrilateral in shape, having two surfaces and four borders. The superior surface, which is concave from side to side, forms the posterior floor of the nasal chamber. The inferior surface completes the hard palate posteriorly, and presents, near its posterior border, a transverse ridge for the attachment of one of the mus-

cles of the soft palate (the tensor palati); the anterior border is serrated for articulation with the palatal process of the maxilla. The posterior border is free, curved, and sharp, and marks the posterior boundary of the hard palate. At the median line this border terminates in a sharp point, which, when articulated with the corresponding bone of the opposite side, forms the posterior nasal spine; to this point the azygos uvulæ muscle is attached. The external border is situated just below the junction of the horizontal and vertical plates. In this portion is a groove which assists in forming a portion of the posterior palatal canal. The internal border is broad and serrated for articulation with its fellow of the opposite side. When the palate bones are in position in the skull, these borders form a ridge, continuing the crest formed by the palatal process of the maxilla, this crest receiving the inferior border of the vomer.

**The vertical plate** is thin and frail and extends from the floor of the nasal chamber below to the upper extremity of the sphenopalatine notch above. It has two surfaces and four borders.

*The external surface* is roughened for articulation with the maxilla, excepting a small triangular surface near the upper extremity, which forms a portion of the sphenomaxillary fossa, and a small portion near the middle of the surface close to the anterior border, which forms a portion of the wall of the maxillary sinus. Near the posterior boundary of this surface is a vertical groove, which forms, when articulated with the maxilla, the posterior palatal canal, transmitting the descending palatal nerves and vessels.

*The internal surface* is divided into three shallow depressions by two transverse ridges—the superior and inferior turbinated crests. The lower depression thus formed assists in the construction of a portion of the interior meatus of the nose. The crest immediately above this depression articulates with the inferior turbinated bone. The central depression, the largest of the three, forms a portion of the middle meatus of the nose, the crest above articulating with the middle turbinated bone. The superior depression—much smaller but deeper than either of those previously described—forms a large part of the superior



meatus. The anterior border of the vertical plate is thin and sharp, the inferior turbinated crest protruding near the center of the border, and forming the maxillary process. This process assists in closing the maxillary sinus by being received into the maxillary fissure of the maxilla. At the upper extremity of this border is the orbital process, which presents for examination five surfaces, three of which are articular. The anterior or maxillary surface is directed outward, upward, and downward. It is oblong in form and articulates with the posterior superior angle of the inner surface of the maxilla. The posterior or sphenoidal surface is directed backward, upward, and inward, and articulates with the vertical plate of the ethmoid bone. The superior or orbital surface is triangular in form, extending upward and outward, forming the posterior angle of the floor of the orbit. The external or zygomatic surface is smooth, oblong, and directed outward, backward, and downward, forming a portion of the sphenomaxillary fossa.

The posterior border of the vertical plate is irregular and serrated, and comes into relation with the internal pterygoid process, terminating below in a prominent tuberosity. This presents three grooves or flutes. The inner receives the internal pterygoid, the outer the external pterygoid process, while the middle groove completes the pterygoid fossa, and gives attachment to a portion of the internal pterygoid muscle. This process also gives rise to the superior constrictor of the pharynx. Passing through the tuberosity are a number of small canals, those on the nasal side being the accessory palatal canals. Near the junction of the tuberosity with the horizontal plate is the opening of the posterior palatal canal, and beyond this the small external palatal canals.

The sphenoidal process is at the superior end of the posterior border. It is variable in shape and curves upward, backward, and inward. It presents a superior, an external and an internal surface, and two borders—an anterior and a posterior.

The superior surface, the smallest of the three, is marked by a groove, which assists in forming the sphenopalatine canal. This surface articulates with the horizontal portion of the sphenoidal turbinated bone. The external surface assists in

forming the sphenomaxillary fossa by its anterior portion, while the posterior portion is rough for articulation with the pterygoid plate of the ethmoid bone. The internal surface is instrumental in forming a portion of the outer wall of the posterior nares, and for this purpose is smooth and concave. The anterior border forms the posterior margin of the sphenopalatine notch. The posterior border is serrated, and articulates with the inner surface of the pterygoid process.

The superior border of the vertical plate is divided by a deep notch or foramen, which divides the orbital from the sphenoidal process. This opening is the sphenopalatine notch or foramen, and transmits the sphenopalatine vessels and nerves from the sphenopalatine fossa to the nasal chamber.

The inferior border of the vertical plate joins the external border of the horizontal plate. Extending downward and backward from the inferior and posterior borders is the pyramidal process, the borders of which are serrated for articulation with both pterygoid plates of the sphenoid bone.

**Articulations.**—The palate bone articulates with the sphenoid, superior maxilla, sphenoidal turbinated, inferior turbinated, ethmoid, and with its fellow of the opposite side.

**Attachment of Muscles.**—The following muscles are attached to the palate bone :

Tensor palati,  
Azygos uvulæ,

Internal pterygoid,  
Superior constrictor of pharynx.

**Blood-supply.**—The arteries which supply this bone are derived from branches of the descending palatine, the sphenopalatine, and pterygopalatine.

**Development.**—The palate bone is developed from a single center deposited in membrane. This center makes its appearance about the eighth or ninth fetal week, near the line of junction between the horizontal and vertical plates. At birth these plates are about the same length, but soon after this period, when the nasal sinuses increase in height, the vertical plate begins to lengthen, and continues to do so until it becomes nearly double the length of the horizontal plate.

## INFERIOR MAXILLARY BONE.

*The Inferior Maxillary, Mandible, or Lower Jaw Bone* (Fig. 16).—This bone, having no osseous union with the skull proper, may be considered as one of its appendicular elements. It is the heaviest and strongest bone of the head, gives support to the sixteen lower teeth, and serves as a framework for the



FIG. 16.—THE MANDIBLE OR INFERIOR MAXILLA. RIGHT SIDE, EXTERNAL OR FACIAL SURFACE.

lower half or floor of the mouth. It is situated at the lower extremity of the face, and immediately below the superior maxillary and malar bones, while its posterior extremity rests against the glenoid fossa of the temporal bone, forming a movable articulation with this cavity. In general, the bone is symmetric in outline, and presents for examination a horizontal portion, or *body*, and two vertical portions, or *rami*, which in the

adult are almost perpendicular to, or at right angles with, the body of the bone.

**The body**, or horizontal portion, consists of two identical halves, which meet at the median line and form a slight vertical ridge, the *symphysis*. This line indicates the point of union between the two lateral halves, which at birth are usually separated, but soon after this period become firmly united. Each lateral half of the body presents two surfaces—an external and an internal; and two borders—a superior and an inferior.

**The external or facial surface** (Fig. 16) is smooth and convex, and furnishes a number of points for examination. Beginning at the median line, the symphysis ends inferiorly in a prominent triangular surface—the *mental protuberance*, or chin.

*The Incisive Fossa*.—Passing backward from the symphysis, and immediately above the triangular ridge which forms the mental process, is a decided but shallow depression—the incisive fossa. This fossa gives origin to one of the elevator muscles of the chin—the levator menti. Slightly posterior to and below this fossa, on a line corresponding to the position of the cuspid tooth, is an oblong depression for the origin of the depressor muscle of the lower lip—depressor labii inferioris.

*The External Oblique Line*.—Extending obliquely across the facial surface from the mental process to the base of the vertical portion of the bone, and continuous with its anterior margin, is a well-defined ridge—the external oblique line. Near the center of this ridge, or below the position occupied by the bicuspid and first molar teeth, is the point of attachment of the depressor muscle of the angle of the mouth—the depressor anguli oris. Somewhat anterior to and above this point is the origin of the depressor muscle of the lower lip—the depressor labii inferioris. Between the line of origin of the depressor anguli oris and the inferior border of the bone is a roughened surface for the attachment of the platysma myoides muscle. This roughened surface divides the body of the bone into an upper and a lower portion. That portion above is known as the alveolar or mucous portion, while that below is called the basilar or non-mucous portion. The attachment of the platysma myoides muscle at this point marks the lower boundary or floor of the mouth. The superior

or alveolar portion of the bone is within the cavity of the mouth, and is covered with mucous membrane and mucoperiosteum; while the inferior or basilar portion is outside and below the cavity, and is covered with periosteum similar to other bones.

*The Mental, or Anterior Dental Foramen.*—Midway between the superior and inferior border of the body, and usually below the second bicuspid tooth, is a large foramen,—the mental or anterior dental foramen,—giving passage to the mental branches of the inferior dental nerve and accompanying blood-vessels. The position of this foramen is not constant, but, as previously stated, it is usually below the second bicuspid, or between this point and the first bicuspid. The buccinator muscle, which forms a large portion of the lateral wall of the mouth, has its origin from the facial surface of the mandible, being attached to the alveolar portion immediately below the molar teeth.

**The Internal Surface of the Body of the Bone** (Fig. 17).—The median line is marked by a slight vertical depression, representing the line of union, and corresponding to the symphysis externally.

*The Mylohyoid, or Internal Oblique Ridge.*—The internal surface is divided into two portions by a well-defined ridge—the mylohyoid, or internal oblique ridge. It occupies a position closely corresponding to the external oblique ridge on the facial surface. Beginning near the base of the bone at the median line, it passes backward and upward, increasing in prominence until the base of the vertical portion of the bone is reached, into which it gradually disappears. This ridge gives origin to the mylohyoid muscle, which forms the central portion of the floor of the mouth. In correspondence to the facial surface of the bone, the attachment of the mylohyoideus muscle forms the dividing line between the mucous membrane and mucoperiosteum covering the upper portion of the body of the bone, and the periosteum covering the inferior portion.

*The Genial Tubercles.*—Near the lower third, at the median line, is a roughened eminence—the genial tubercles. Taken collectively, these are in two pairs—a superior and an inferior. The superior pair (usually the largest) give origin to the geniohyoglossus muscle, and the lower pair to the geniohyoid muscle.

*The Sublingual Fossa.*—By the side of the genial tubercles, and above the mylohyoid ridge, is a shallow, smooth depression—the sublingual fossa. One of the salivary glands—the sublingual—is partially supported in this fossa.

*The Digastric Fossa.*—Below the mylohyoid ridge, and near the median line, is a slight depression,—the digastric fossa,—which affords attachment for the digastric muscle.

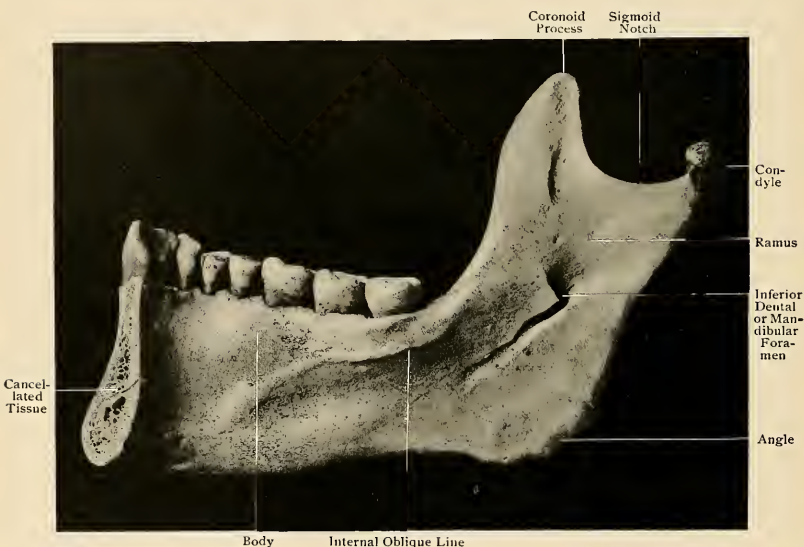


FIG. 17.—THE MANDIBLE OR INFERIOR MAXILLA. RIGHT SIDE, INTERNAL SURFACE.

*The Submaxillary Fossa.*—In the center of the internal surface, extending from before backward, between the mylohyoid ridge and the lower border of the bone, is an oblong depression—the submaxillary fossa. In this fossa rests another of the salivary glands—the maxillary.

**The Superior or Alveolar Border.**—This border extends from the junction of the body, with the vertical plate on one side, to the corresponding point on the other. The construction of this border is similar to the alveolar border of the superior



maxilla. At the anterior portion it is narrow, but gradually increases in width as it proceeds backward—in some instances following the line of the body of the bone; in others, inclining inward, or to the lingual. Each lateral half is marked by eight sockets, for the accommodation of the sixteen lower teeth. They are smaller in proportion than the alveolar sockets in the superior maxilla. The socket nearest the median line receives the central incisor tooth, and is the smallest of the number. It has an average depth of  $\frac{7}{16}$  of an inch, is conic from above downward, oblong in transverse section, with its lateral walls flattened. The second socket gives support to the lateral incisor tooth; it is a trifle larger than the central incisor socket, but in other respects is quite similar. The socket for the cuspid tooth is situated at the anterior angle of this border, and is much larger and deeper than either of the incisor sockets. It has an average depth of  $\frac{9}{16}$  of an inch; its lateral walls are compressed, and sometimes slightly concave. In transverse section the labial wall forms a larger curve than the internal or lingual wall. Passing backward, the next two sockets are for the support of the bicuspid; they are circular in outline, with an average depth of  $\frac{1}{2}$  of an inch. The cavity for the first bicuspid is usually a little larger than that for the second. In rare instances one or the other of these sockets will be divided for the accommodation of two roots. The sockets for the first and second molars present a circular outline upon their free margins, but below they divide into two flattened, cone-shaped cavities—one anterior and one posterior. The flattened sides of these cavities are concave in the center, and at their lower third curve backward. The average depth of these sockets is  $\frac{1}{2}$  of an inch. The socket for the third molar, like its superior fellow, is variable both in form and position, frequently being crowded inside or outside of the tooth-line. In some instances it is divided into two or more compartments. The average depth is not over  $\frac{3}{5}$  of an inch.

The alveolar process, which composes the superior border of the body of the mandible, differs from the same process in the superior maxilla in one very important particular: instead of the outer plate being thin and frail, it is equally as heavy as the

inner or lingual plate. When the tooth-line is inclined inward from the body of the bone, the posterior outer wall is much heavier than the interior.

*The Inferior Border of the Body of the Bone.*—This border extends from a slight depression, to be observed at the point of union between the body and ramus, to the corresponding point upon the opposite side. It is strong, rounded, and compact, and gives to the bone the greatest portion of its strength. Near its junction with the ramus is the facial notch, so named from the facial artery passing over this point.

**The Ramus, or Vertical Portion of the Bone.**—This vertical plate is quadrilateral in outline, and presents two surfaces—external and internal; four borders—superior, inferior, anterior, and posterior; and two processes—the condyloid and the coronoid.

*The external surface* is flat and smooth. Near the center it is slightly concave and roughened for the attachment of one of the muscles of mastication—the masseter.

*The internal surface* presents near the center an oblong opening—the *inferior dental* or *mandibular foramen*—leading into the inferior dental or mandibular canal. Surrounding this foramen, on its posterior internal margin, is the mandibular spine, to which is attached the sphenomandibular ligament. Running obliquely downward from the base of the foramen, and beneath the spine, is a decided groove,—the mylohyoid groove,—which accommodates the mylohyoid nerve, artery, and vein, which pass forward to supply the floor of the mouth. Below and behind this groove the surface is roughened for the attachment of another muscle of mastication—the internal pterygoid.

*The Inferior Dental or Mandibular Canal.*—Beginning at the foramen of the same name, this canal enters the body of the bone, passes downward and forward horizontally, until it finds an exit at the mental foramen. This canal lies immediately below the alveolar sockets, and from it are given off smaller canals which open into the tooth-sockets through minute foramina. Near the mental foramen the canal divides into a number of smaller ones, which pass forward through the substance of the bone to the sockets of the cuspid and incisor teeth.



*The Superior Border of the Ramus.*—This border is crescent-shaped, and is otherwise known as the sigmoid notch. Arising from its anterior portion is a flattened, cone-shaped process—the coronoid process. On its posterior portion is a rounded or oblong eminence—the condyloid process. The concave or crescent-shaped margin of this border is thin and smooth in front, becoming wider and heavier as it approaches the condyle.

*The Coronoid Process.*—The anterior margin of this process, being a continuation of the external oblique line, is heavier at the base than at the apex. The outer surface is smooth, and affords attachment to the masseter, and a few fibers of the temporal muscle. The internal surface is marked by a vertical ridge, which passes downward, increasing in size, and finally joining the internal oblique line at a point posterior to the third molar. The surface anterior to this ridge is grooved, and gives attachment to a part of the temporal muscle above, and the buccinator muscle below. The surface posterior to this ridge affords attachment for the greater part of the temporal muscle. The posterior border of this surface is thin, and forms the anterior margin of the sigmoid notch.

*The Condyloid Process.*—This may be described as the expanded extremity of the posterior border of the ramus, and is quite variable in form (see Occlusion of the Teeth). It is divided into a superior or articular portion, and an inferior portion, or neck.

The articular portion of the condyle is more or less oblong, and is convex above, fitting into the glenoid fossa of the temporal bone, and forming, with the interarticular cartilage which lies between the two surfaces, the temporomaxillary articulation.

*The neck* is that constricted portion immediately below the articular surface. It is flattened in front and presents a pit,—the pterygoid fossa,—to which a portion of the pterygoid muscle is attached. Immediately below the point of junction between the neck and the articular surface externally is the condyloid tubercle, to which is attached the external lateral ligament.

*The Inferior Border of the Ramus.*—This border is thick, rounded, and continuous with the lower border of the body of the bone. At the point of junction between this and the pos-

terior border is the angle of the jaw. The angle has a slight outward inclination, and is roughened for the attachment of a part of the superficial portion of the masseter muscle.

*The anterior border* has been described in connection with the coronoid process.

*The posterior border* is smooth and rounded on its upper half, the lower half being roughened for the attachment of the stylo-maxillary ligament.

**Attachment of Muscles.**—The following muscles are attached to the mandible:

Buccinator,	Superior constrictor of pharynx,
Depressor labii inferioris,	Masseter,
Depressor anguli inferioris,	Orbicularis oris,
Levator menti,	Internal and external pterygoid,
Geniohyoglossus,	Geniohyoid,
Platysma myoides,	Mylohyoid,
Digastric,	Temporal.

**Development.\***—On account of its early functional activity, the mandible is among the first bones to ossify. Development takes place from six centers for each lateral half, the nuclei being deposited as early as the sixth or eighth fetal week, and after their establishment the developmental process takes place very rapidly. The six centers of ossification are principally named according to their position. The early preparation for the development of the bone is found in the appearance of what is known as the mandibular plates, which are thrown out from the sides of the cranial base, and finally unite at the median line. Not long after this period a cartilaginous band—Meckel's cartilage—is developed in the substance of the mandibular plates, and it is about this cartilaginous framework that ossification first takes place. The various centers are distributed along the line of Meckel's cartilage, and are named as follows: Mental, dentinary, coronoid, condyloid, angular, and splenic. The *mental* center provides for the development of that portion of the bone between the median line and the mental foramen. The *dentinary* center forms the lower border and outer plate,

---

\* See "Development of the Teeth."

and provides for the establishment of the crypts inclosing the developing tooth-follicles.

The *coronoid* and *condyloid* centers are both instrumental in constructing these processes, and the *angular* center provides for the angle of the bone. The *splenic* center is somewhat later in making its appearance, and from it the inner plate of the



FIG. 18.—CHART SHOWING THE EVOLUTION AND DEGENERACY OF THE MANDIBLE.

mandible is formed, the line of union between it and the dentary center being indicated by the mylohyoid groove. While, as above stated, most of the centers of development are along or near the line of Meckel's cartilage, the condyloid and coronoid processes are developed from other cartilage. Soon after

birth the two lateral halves of the mandible begin to coalesce at the median line, this union taking place from below upward ; and by the eighth or tenth month union is complete and the individual bone is established. The inferior maxilla is subject to a continuous change in form, not only in regard to its general contour, but also accommodating itself to the movements and growth of the teeth, the former taking place at or about the angle, while the latter occurs in the alveolar portion of the bone.

Figure 18 represents the changes which take place in the angle of the mandible from youth to old age. It will be observed that the angle formed in the adult bone, with the teeth in position, is almost a right angle ; and that in youth, with the deciduous teeth in the alveoli, the angle is much more obtuse, which condition is again approached in old age.

### THE HYOID BONE.

This is a U-shaped bone placed in the upper part of the neck at the median line near the base of the tongue. It has no bony connection with other bones ; it is classed as a floating bone. It is made up of a body and four processes.

The *body*, or central portion, is quadrilateral in outline, somewhat oblong from side to side, with its anterior aspect convex, and presents a longitudinal ridge which divides it into a superior and an inferior portion. It is also usually divided at the median line by a slight vertical ridge. At the point of junction between the longitudinal and vertical ridges a slight tubercle is formed. The anterior surface is given up to the attachment of muscles. The posterior surface of the body of the bone is concave and smooth, and is directed backward and downward. The superior border gives attachment to the thyrohyoid membrane, while the inferior border, which is somewhat thicker, gives attachment to the sternohyoid and thyrohyoid muscles.

The processes known as the *greater* and *lesser cornua* are four in number, one of each kind on either side.

The *greater cornua* project backward and upward, and their lower borders and anterior surfaces are occupied with muscles.

The thyrohyoid ligament is attached to the posterior terminal corner.

The *lesser cornua* are short conical pieces of bone, and project upward and backward from the extremities of the body of the bone. They give attachment to the stylohyoid ligaments.

**Development.**—Ossification takes place from five centers, one for the body of the bone and one for each cornua.

**Attachment of Muscles.**—

Geniohyoglossus,	Sternohyoid,
Geniohyoid,	Lingualis,
Thyrohyoid,	Omohyoid,
Mylohyoid,	Digastric,
Hyoglossus,	Middle constrictor.

The thyrohyoid ligament, as well as the stylohyoid, and the thyrohyoid membrane are also attached to this bone.

### CHAPTER III

#### THE TEMPOROMANDIBULAR ARTICULATION.—THE MUSCLES OF MASTICATION.

##### TEMPOROMANDIBULAR ARTICULATION.

Although external to the cavity of the mouth, this articulation is so closely associated with the masticatory function that it seems important that a brief description of its construction




FIG. 19.—TEMPOROMANDIBULAR ARTICULATION.

and action should be given. It receives its name from the two bones which enter into its formation—the temporal and the mandible, or inferior maxillary.

This joint is the seat of motion in the mandible, and entering into its construction are bones, ligaments, cartilage, and synovial membrane, these being the tissues essential to all diarthrodial

or movable articulations. The various movable joints of the body are classified according to the nature of the movement, and correspond to the mechanical actions known as hinge joint, ball-and-socket joint, gliding joint, pulley joint, etc. The temporomandibular joint is of the diarthrodial class, and the movements which it possesses are a combination of the gliding movement (arthrodia) and of the hinge movement (ginglymus). The osseous parts entering into the formation of the joint are the anterior portion of the glenoid fossa of the temporal bone and the condyloid process of the mandible (Fig. 19).

**The glenoid fossa** may be described as an oblong cavity, with its base directed upward, being bounded anteriorly by a heavy bony ridge (the anterior root of the zygoma), posteriorly by an irregular, flattened portion of the bone (the tympanic plate of the petrous portion), internally by a union of the anterior and posterior boundaries, and externally by the middle root of the zygoma. The floor of the fossa is traversed by a well-marked fissure—the glenoid fissure (fissure of Glaserius)—which divides the fossa into two portions, an anterior and a posterior.  The anterior half is deeper and more concave than the posterior, and is the articulating portion, being occupied by the condyle, while the posterior half gives lodgment to the parotid gland.

**The condyloid process** of the mandible having been described with that bone, in this connection reference will be made to the variety of forms which it presents, and the influence which it exerts over the nature of the tooth occlusion. This process, when narrow and oblong (Fig. 19), closely resembles the ginglymus, or hinge joint, and will be accompanied by teeth presenting deep, penetrating cusps, forming a positive and well-locked occlusion (Fig. 20, *B*), with little or no lateral motion. If the condyle presents the appearance shown in figure 21, which resembles the enarthrodia, or ball-and-socket joint (although it can not be considered as such), the teeth associated with such a formation will be provided with short, rounding cusps, and the occlusion will be loose and wandering (Fig. 20, *A*). This difference in the form of the condyle will be accompanied by a corresponding variation in the concavity of the glenoid fossa. Not only does the osseous structure in the joint partake of individual



characteristics, but likewise the muscles and ligaments ; their functions being to operate the articulation, they are developed in accordance with the action required of them, which action is,



FIG. 20.



FIG. 21.

in a measure, dependent upon the conditions existing in the mouth.

Both the condyle and the glenoid fossa are covered with ar-

ticular cartilage. In the latter this membrane extends over its anterior border, to facilitate the play of the joint. The condyle is held in position in the fossa by three ligaments—the capsular, the sphenomaxillary, and stylomaxillary. The *capsular ligament* is divided into four portions—anterior and posterior, external and internal. The anterior portion consists of a few fibers

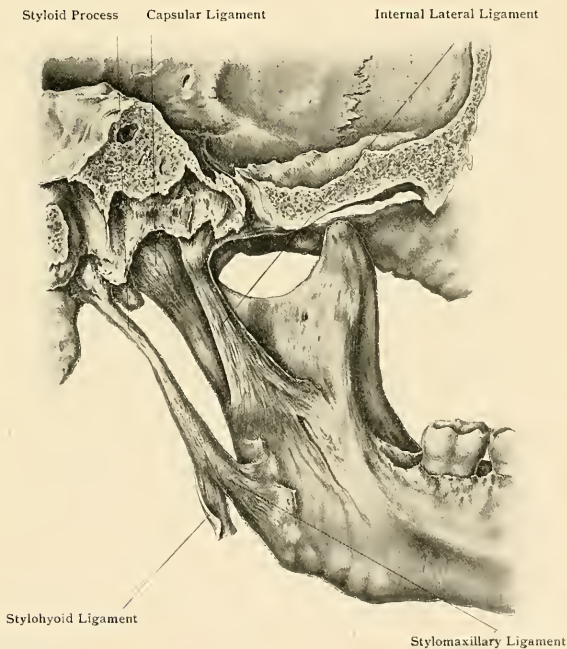


FIG. 22.—TEMPOROMAXILLARY ARTICULATION—INTERNAL VIEW.—(Deaver.)

connected with the anterior margin of the fibrocartilage, attached below to the anterior margin of the condyle and above to the front of the glenoid ridge. The posterior portion is attached above just in front of the glenoid fissure, and is inserted into the posterior margin of the ramus of the maxilla just below the neck of the condyle. The external portion,

otherwise known as the external ligament, is the strongest portion of the capsular ligament. It has a broad attachment above to the zygoma, from which point it passes downward and backward, and is inserted into the outer side of the neck of the condyle. The internal portion, or short internal lateral ligament, is composed of well-defined fibers, having a broad attachment

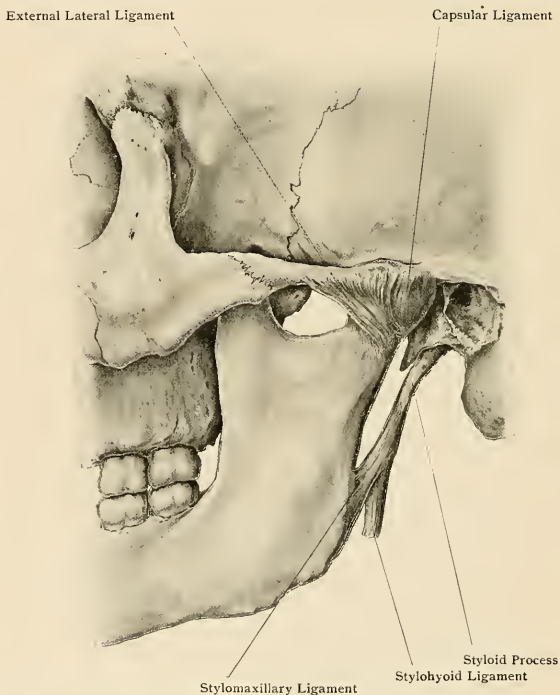


FIG. 23.—TEMPOROMAXILLARY ARTICULATION—EXTERNAL VIEW.—(Deaver.)

above to the inner edge of the glenoid fossa and to the alar spine of the sphenoid bone; below it is inserted into the inner side of the neck of the condyle.

The *sphenomaxillary*, or long internal lateral *ligament*, is a thin, loose band, situated some distance from the joint proper,

and, as its name implies, has its attachment above to the alar spine of the sphenoid bone, and also to that portion of the temporal bone contiguous to it. It passes downward and forward, and is inserted into the mandibular spine of the maxilla.

The *stylomaxillary ligament* extends, from the styloid process of the temporal bone, downward and forward, to be inserted into the posterior border of the ramus of the inferior maxilla, at a point between the masseter and internal pterygoid muscles.

The *interarticular fibrocartilage* is an oval sheet placed between the two articulating surfaces. It is thinnest at the center



FIG. 24.—SHOWING VARIATION IN THE SHAPE OF THE CONDYLES.

and becomes thicker as the margins of the fossa are approached, at which point it is connected with the fibers of the capsular ligament. Being placed immediately between the two articular surfaces it divides the joint into two separate synovial cavities. Each of these synovial cavities is occupied by a synovial membrane, that occupying the upper compartment being the largest, and passes from the margins of the glenoid fossa above to the upper surface of the interarticular cartilage below. The membrane which occupies the lower cavity is smaller, and passes from the under surface of the interarticular cartilage above to the margins of the condyle below. The *blood-supply* to this

articulation is derived from the temporal, middle meningeal, and ascending pharyngeal arteries.

The *nerves* are derived from the masseteric and auriculo-temporal.

**The movements** of this articulation present as great a range

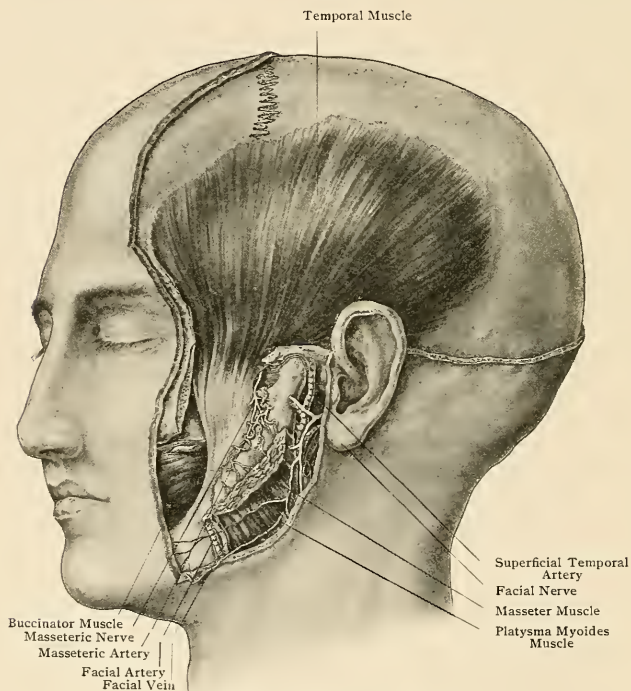


FIG. 25.—TEMPORAL MUSCLE.—(*Deaver.*)

as any other joint in the human body. While the chief movement is of the ginglymoid or hinge character, brought into play in simple depression and elevation of the mandible, it also has the power of extension and retraction, may be rotated from side to side, together with all the motions intermediate between

these. When the mandible is depressed, the condyle moves on the fibrocartilage, and at the same time glides forward and slightly downward until it rests on the anterior border of the glenoid fossa;—this movement does not extend sufficiently to allow the condyle to rest upon the extreme summit of the border, except in cases of excessive movement, as in yawning, when the condyle may glide over the summit and the joint become disarticulated. When the mandible is elevated, the condyle slides backward and upward, and at the same time the fibrocartilage, which has extended with it, also retracts until the condyle is settled in the fossa. The movement of extension and retraction is by a horizontal gliding action, by which the mandible is thrust forward and drawn back again. In this movement, as well as in the one previously described, both condyles are similarly and simultaneously engaged. The lateral or triturating movement is made in an oblique direction. This consists in a rotation of the condyles within the fossæ, the cartilage gliding obliquely forward and outward on one side, and backward and inward on the other, this action taking place alternately. This movement is more or less developed in accordance with the nature of the occlusion, being favored by those teeth possessing but little cusp formation, with a consequent loose and wandering occlusion; while in that type of tooth associated with a long overbite and deep penetrating cusps, forming a firm and well-locked occlusion, this movement will be but little developed. If this movement be employed to throw the symphysis to one side and back again, and not from side to side, the condyle of that side rotates in the glenoid fossa, while the condyle of the opposite side is drawn forward and inward.

### **The Muscles of Mastication.**

Occupying the back part of the side of the face, and forming an independent group, are four muscles, usually classed as the muscles of mastication. While this is true to a great degree, they are not the only muscles brought into action during this process. They are the masseter, temporal, internal pterygoid, and external pterygoid. The masseter, temporal, and internal pterygoid lift or close the lower jaw, the principal function of



the external pterygoid being to extend the lower jaw so that the lower teeth pass beyond the upper. The muscles which open the jaws, such as happens when the head is thrown backward, are the muscles of the neck.

The **masseter muscle** is made up of a strong quadrate sheet, consisting of two distinct layers extending from the zygomatic arch to the mandible. The layers of which the muscle

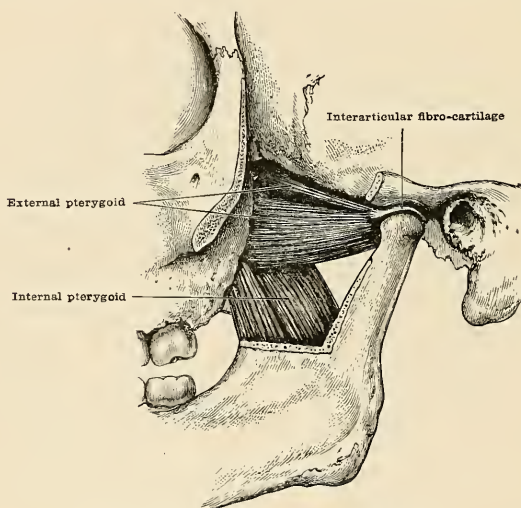


FIG. 26.—THE PTERYGOID MUSCLES.—(Morris.)

is composed differ somewhat in size as well as in the directions which they take.

*Origin.*—The superficial layer, much the stronger and larger of the two, arises from the lower border of the malar bone, and from the anterior two-thirds of the zygomatic arch. The deep layer arises from the posterior third of the lower border and from nearly all the internal surface of the zygomatic arch.

*Insertion.*—After passing downward and backward it is inserted into the outer surface of the ramus of the mandible. The deep layer, passing downward and slightly forward, mingles



with some of the fibers of the superficial portion, and is finally inserted into the upper half of the ramus of the mandible.

*Action.*—To draw slightly forward, and by its superficial layer to close the jaw. “In closing the jaw it acts with less mechanical disadvantage than is usual with muscles. When the pressure to be overcome is exerted upon the back teeth, the arm of the lever upon which the power acts is almost as long as that which intervenes between these teeth and the fulcrum. This fulcrum is not at the temporomaxillary joint, but at a point below the neck of the mandible, corresponding very nearly to the lower attachment of the internal lateral ligament. Moreover, the resultant force of the muscle acting, as it does, upward and forward, is perpendicular to the lever, which may roughly be described as a bar extending downward and forward from the neck of the mandible to the point of the chin.” (Morris.)

*Relations.*—It is covered superficially by the skin and fascia of the platysma myoides, by the risorius and the masseter fascia, by the parotid gland and ducts, facial veins, and portions of the facial nerve. Deeply, the muscle lies in contact with the ramus of the jaw and the buccinator muscle, being separated from the latter by a layer of fat. A small portion of the temporal muscle also comes in relation to the deeper lying portion.

**The temporal muscle** is covered by a strong membrane, the *temporal fascia*, which arises from the temporal ridge, and is inserted into both the inner and outer portions of the upper border of the zygomatic arch. Near this point it divides into two distinct layers, one passing to the inner, the other to the outer margins of the zygoma. Below the fascia is continuous with the masseteric fascia. Passing downward from this to the inferior borders of the ramus of the jaw, it envelopes the masseter muscle. The muscle itself is radiating and fan-shaped in form, located in the temporal fossa, from which point it descends to the coronoid process of the mandible.

*Origin.*—From nearly the entire surface of the temporal fossa, from the temporal ridge, from the entire surface of the temporal fascia, down to its lower attachment to the zygomatic process.

*Insertion.*—Into the coronoid process of the mandible.

*Action.*—To close the lower jaw, some of its fibers drawing the jaw backward after the other muscles have protruded it.

*Relations.*—Its superficial portion is covered by the temporal fascia which separates it from some of the auricular muscles; branches of the facial nerve, the auriculotemporal nerve, and a portion of the epicranial aponeurosis. The temporal fossa and the external pterygoid muscles are in relation with it deeply.

**The internal pterygoid muscle** is a thick, quadrilateral, sheet-like muscle, and receives its name from its origin and relative position.

*Origin.*—From the inner surface of the external pterygoid plate; the tuberosity of the palate bone and a small portion of the maxilla.

*Insertion.*—Into the internal surface of the ramus of the mandible at its lower and posterior borders and extending as high as the mandibular foramen and mylohyoid.

*Action.*—To close the jaw and at the same time draw it backward and throw it toward the opposite side. "The same remarks which were made with respect to the very small loss of mechanical advantage in the masseter muscle apply to this muscle. When closed it will draw the jaw forward; and also it will help the external pterygoid in drawing the ramus of its own side toward the middle line." (Morris.)

*Relations.*—Superficially the internal maxillary vessels, the external pterygoid muscle, the internal lateral ligament, the inferior dental and lingual nerves. Deeply, the submaxillary glands; the tensor palati and superior constrictor of the pharynx, as well as the stylohyoid and posterior border of the digastric muscles.

**The external pterygoid muscle** is composed of two triangular sheets, one passing in a horizontal and the other in a vertical direction. It receives its name from its attachment to the pterygoid process of the sphenoid bone as well as its relation to its companion muscle, the internal pterygoid.

*Origin.*—It is composed of two distinct heads, an upper and a lower. The upper head arises from the greater wing of the sphenoid bone, from the internal pterygoid ridge, and external

to the foramen ovale and foramen spinosum. The lower head arises from the outer surface of the external pterygoid plate.

*Insertion.*—The upper head is inserted into the inter-articular fibrocartilage, into the capsule of the joint as well as the neck of the condyle. The lower head is inserted into the neck of the condyle.

*Action.*—To draw the condyle and inter-articular fibrocartilage forward and inward. “The combination of these two movements produces the oblique movement of the lower molar teeth of one side, forwards and inwards with respect to the upper molars which are their opponents. It should be observed also that this inward movement of one side is the agent by which the ramus of the opposite side is moved outwards. To assist in opening the mouth by depression of the lower jaw. As the transverse axis of this movement passes through the mandible at two points situated below the necks of the rami, it follows that a forward movement of the condyles and necks will assist in the backward movement of the angles and body which accompanies the depression of the mandible.” (Morris.)

*Relations.*—Superficially, some of the fibers of the internal pterygoid, the temporal, and part of the masseter muscle. Deeply, the internal pterygoid muscle, the middle meningeal and inferior dental vessels, internal maxillary vessels, and masseteric and posterior deep temporal nerves passing behind or through the attachment to the upper head; the inferior dental and lingual gustatory nerves beneath the lower head.

## CHAPTER IV.

A GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE TEETH.—THE PERMANENT TEETH :  
CLASSIFICATION, SURFACES, ETC.—THE ROOTS OF THE TEETH.  
—THE DENTAL ARCH.

### A GENERAL DESCRIPTION OF THE TEETH.

**A Tooth** (Fig. 27).—One of the thirty-two specialized organs for the seizure and mastication of food, placed at the entrance to the alimentary canal (the mouth). The typical form of a tooth is a modified cone or combination of cones, and is composed of two fundamental parts—the *crown* and the *root* or *roots*. The crown is that part which projects beyond the gum and is visible in the mouth ; while the root is that part which is implanted in the bone and covered by the gum. Intervening between these two extremities, and usually occupying a portion of each, is a third division—the *neck*.

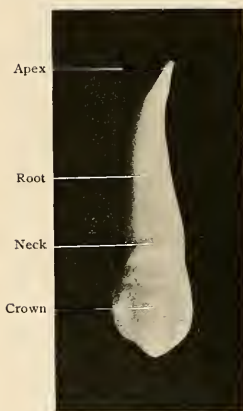


FIG. 27.

Completely covering the crown of a tooth is a hard, vitreous-like substance, *enamel* ;\* the root is covered by a hard, bone-like substance, *cementum* ;\* while the interior or body of the organ is composed of a hard substance closely resembling bone, the *dentin*.\* The neck of a tooth, which serves to unite the crown to the root, and which is usually formed at the expense of each, is covered partly by enamel and partly by cementum. This brief description in the singular number can best be continued in the plural. *Teeth* are

\* See Tissues of the Teeth, part II.

classified according to their form, which is always in accordance with their function, into *simple* and *complex*. In the simple class (Fig. 27) the single modified cone is the predominating form, the free extremity of the crown serving as the base of the cone, while the apex is formed by the free end of the root. Included in this same classification are those teeth which are made up of a double cone, or a simple cone and an inverted cone attached to each other at a common base. The purposes for which such teeth are adapted are those of grasping, incising, and tearing, and they are usually so arranged that the free extremities of their crowns interlock or overhang each other.

In the complex class (Fig. 28) the external form of the tooth is produced by a combination of cones, some of which are simple, others inverted, but all uniting at a common base—the neck of the tooth. In this class the simple cones form the roots of the teeth, while the crowns are made up of a number of smaller cones, much modified. These teeth are adapted to crushing and grinding, and are less inclined to interlock during active service.

The teeth are divided into two grand divisions—those of infancy and childhood, called *deciduous* or *temporary teeth*, and those of the adult period, known as *permanent teeth*. The latter class being most important, will first receive consideration.



FIG. 28.

**The Permanent Teeth** (Fig. 29).—The permanent teeth, thirty-two in number, are divided into those of the superior portion of the mouth, *upper*, and those of the inferior portion, *lower*. In number they are equally divided, each jaw giving support to sixteen. They are firmly imbedded in the alveolar sockets of three of the bones of the mouth, the upper sixteen being attached to the two superior maxillary or upper jaw-bones, and the lower sixteen to the mandible, inferior maxillary, or lower jaw-bone. As above referred to, the attachment of the teeth to the bones is by implantation in sockets, the alveoli (see description, "Bones of the Mouth"). In this attachment there

is a special development of bone, closely modeled to the roots of the teeth, and which is subservient to the ever-varying changes which take place during the development of the organs. The joint thus formed between the roots of the teeth and the alveoli is of the immovable or synarthrodial class, and is styled *gomphosis*. Intervening between the roots of the teeth and the walls of the alveoli is a delicate membrane—the *alveolodental membrane*.

Before continuing the description of the teeth, a further classification, which refers alike to the upper and lower organs,

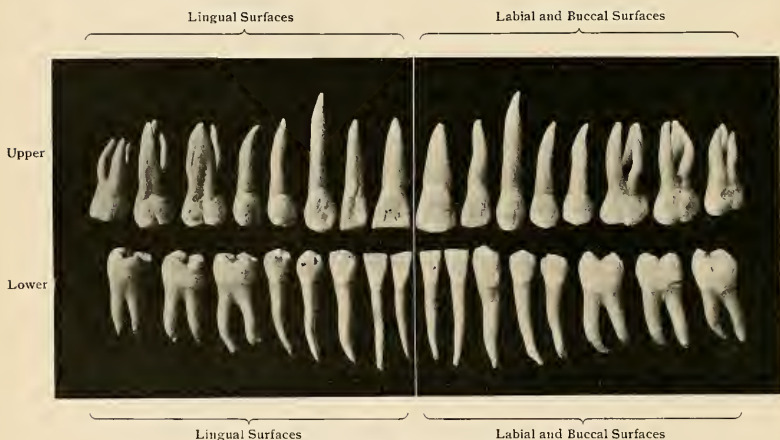


FIG. 29.—THE PERMANENT TEETH.

must be presented. This classification is derived from the function and form of the teeth. Figure 29 shows the thirty-two teeth removed from the jaws and placed side by side in two straight lines. In the center is a perpendicular line, which corresponds to the median line or center of the mouth, the teeth at either extremity being those which occupy the back part of the mouth. Without confining the description to either the upper or lower teeth, it will be observed that the first two teeth upon either side of the median line are similarly formed, and all four are called *incisors* (*incidere*, to cut); the two largest



incisors, being nearest the median line or center, are called *central incisors*; while the two smallest, being placed at the side of the centrals, are known as *lateral incisors* (*lateralis*, the side). The third tooth from the median line upon either side is the *cuspid* (*cuspis*, a point), so named from possessing a single cusp or point. Passing to the right or left on the chart, or backward in the mouth, the fourth and fifth teeth from the median line are the *bicuspid*s (*bi*, two; *cuspis*, a point), having two points or cusps. The bicuspid nearest the median line is the *first bicuspid*; that most distant from the median line is the *second bicuspid*. The sixth, seventh, and eighth teeth from the median line upon either side are those of another class, the *molars* (*mola*, a mill-stone), being named according to their function, that of crushing or grinding the food. Proceeding from before backward, the molars are denominated *first molar*, *second molar*, and *third molar*. To sum up, the names and number of the permanent teeth may be given by the **dental formula**, as follows:

Incisors, . . . . .	$\frac{2}{2}$	Bicuspid, . . . . .	$\frac{2}{2}$
Cuspids, . . . . .	$\frac{1}{1}$	Molars, . . . . .	$\frac{3}{3}$

**The Surfaces of the Teeth.**—The crown of each tooth presents five surfaces, which are variously named, in accordance with the duty which they are called upon to perform or suggestive of their location. The outer surface of the incisors and cuspids, or that contiguous to the lips (*labia*), is called the *labial surface*; the corresponding surface of the bicuspid and molars, or that contiguous to the cheeks (*buccæ*), is the *buccal surface*. That surface of both upper and lower teeth which faces the palate or tongue is characterized as the *lingual surface*.

The proximate surfaces of the teeth are named with regard to their relation to the median line, those surfaces nearest to this point being called *mesial*, those most distant, *distal*. In addition to these four surfaces, which represent what might be termed the sides of the teeth, a fifth surface is present, that which occludes with the teeth of the opposite jaw, and called the *occlusal surface*.

In the incisors and cuspids this surface is formed by the converging of the labial and lingual surfaces, forming an edge to the



free extremity of the crown, named, from its action in mastication, the *incisive* or *cutting-edge*. In the bicuspid and molars the various sides of the crowns remain nearly parallel to each other throughout their extent, thus providing a surface nearly equal to, or greater than, any of the others, and one well adapted to the purposes for which it is intended—that of grinding or crushing the food.

**The Roots of the Teeth.**—The upper incisors and cuspids are each provided with one root; the upper first bicuspid may have one or two roots, most frequently the latter; while in the second bicuspid a single root is usually present. The upper first and second molars are each supported in the jaw by three roots, and while in the upper third molar three roots are most common, the number is quite variable, ranging from a single cone-shaped root to three, four, five, or even six smaller branches given off from a common base.

In the lower incisors, cuspids, and bicuspid, a single root is most frequently met with, although the latter class, in rare instances, may be provided with two. The lower first and second molars are each provided with two roots, but in the third molar, like its superior fellow, the number may be diminished or increased. In the upper molars, two of the three roots are placed above the buccal half of the crown, and are called *buccal roots*; the remaining root is placed above the lingual half of the crown, and is designated as the *lingual root*. In the lower molars, one of the two roots is placed below the anterior or mesial half of the crown, and is named the *mesial root*, and the other below the posterior or distal half, and is known as the *distal root*. In those teeth with a complicated root formation, it would seem to be a question whether they are possessed of a single root, with two or more branches, or separate and distinct roots throughout. To determine this, some account must be taken of the point at which the bifurcation or trifurcation takes place. If this separation be in close proximity to the crown, the tooth should be considered as having more than one root (Fig. 30, A); but, on the other hand, if the point of separation be some distance from the crown, with a solid mass of root substance intervening, the tooth may be said to possess a single root, with two or more

branches (Fig. 30, B). In the latter instance, that part of the tooth between the point of separation and the crown is called the root or root base; while the prolongations beyond the point of separation are known as the branches of the root.

The roots of the teeth are not only variable in number, but are also subject to much variety in form. In the *anterior teeth* (the incisors and cuspids) the roots are inclined to the form of the simple cone, which form, however, is frequently more or less broken by a slight curvature near their extremities, or by a slight compression of their lateral walls. In the *posterior teeth* (the bicuspid and molars) the roots, root bases, or root branches are all inclined to the conical form, but do not approach so nearly the perfect cone as those of the anterior teeth. These roots are also more or less crooked and flattened laterally. The free extremity of the roots of the teeth, forming as they do the apex of these cone-like prolongations of the crowns, are known as the apices or *apical extremities*.

The extent of the enamel covering to the crowns of the teeth is marked by a well-defined line, which completely encircles the neck of the tooth, the *cervical line*.

**The Dental Arch** (Fig. 31).—The teeth are arranged in the jaws in the form of two parabolic curves, the superior arch describing the segment of a larger circle than the inferior, as a result of which the upper teeth slightly overhang the lower. Figure 31 represents the sixteen upper teeth in position in the bone, presenting their occlusal surfaces, a part of their lingual surfaces also being visible. Viewed in this direction, the gradual change in the crowns of the teeth from the simple incisors to the complex molars may be observed. An examination of the central incisors will show how perfectly they are adapted to the



B A  
FIG. 30.

process of cutting or incising the food, the cutting-edge being sharp and the lingual surface comparatively smooth and unbroken. In the lateral incisors the cutting feature predominates, but the lingual surface is broken near the neck of the tooth by a slight depression, surmounted by a more or less pronounced fold of enamel, in many instances resembling a small cusp. The crown of the cuspid tooth furnishes the intermediate form between the simple and the complex. This tooth, instead of being provided with a straight cutting-edge, is surmounted

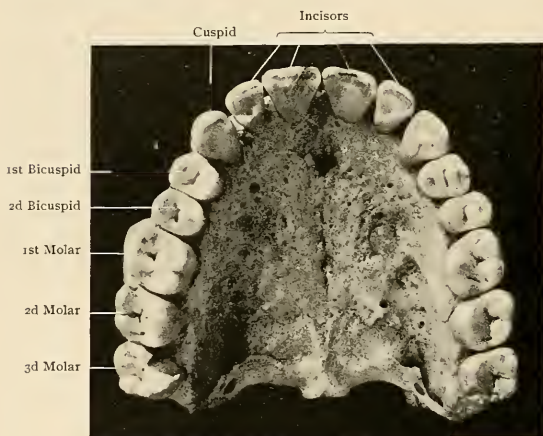


FIG. 31.—THE DENTAL ARCH.

at the center of its occlusal surface with a well-defined point or cusp, descending from the summit of which are two cutting-edges, one passing to the mesial and one to the distal. The lingual surface of this tooth presents a marked contrast to the corresponding surface of the incisors, being broad and full, and frequently provided with a prominent ridge of enamel in the region of the neck, showing a rapid approach to the complex form. In the bicuspids the buccal half of the crown is quite similar to the crown of the cuspid, but in the lingual half a complete revolution has taken place. The enamel fold—but slightly

apparent in the incisors, and somewhat increased in the cuspids—has now become a fully developed cusp, resulting in the production of an occlusal surface adapted to crushing or grinding, instead of incising or tearing. In the molars, the increase in the size of the tooth-crown is accompanied with an occlusal surface much more complex than any of the teeth previously described, and one well adapted to its function—that of crushing and grinding the food.

*Arrangements of the Teeth in the Dental Arch* (Fig. 31).—Beginning with the upper teeth, the central incisors are found occupying the center of the arch, and are, therefore, slightly in advance of the laterals. These teeth are so implanted in the alveoli that their crowns are not perpendicular, the cutting edge being slightly more prominent than the neck of the tooth. The roots are also somewhat inclined from the median line, and as a result the crowns have a slight mesial inclination, the mesial surfaces approximating each other at or near the cutting-edge, with a slight space intervening at the necks. In certain typical forms,—the bilious, for example,—when the front of the arch is flat, the labial surfaces of these teeth form nearly a direct line from side to side; while in those types in which the arch is well rounded anteriorly, notably in the sanguine temperament, the labial surfaces of these two teeth form a small segment of the arch, so that the mesial extremity of the cutting-edge of each tooth-crown is somewhat in advance of the distal. The lateral incisors are similarly implanted in the alveoli, causing their cutting-edges to project. The roots of the lateral incisors usually have a stronger distal inclination than those of the centrals, and the crowns show a more marked mesial inclination. The mesial surfaces approximate the distal surfaces of the central incisors at or near the cutting-edge. When the front of the arch is flattened, these teeth are but little less prominent than the central incisors, but when the arch is well rounded they continue the segment begun by the centrals, and are necessarily less prominent. While the occlusal surfaces of the teeth are usually considered as forming a perfect plane (see Occlusion of the Teeth), the lateral incisors are generally a trifle shorter than the centrals. The cuspids may be considered as occupying the corners or turning-points

of the arch. They are more prominently placed than the adjoining teeth, this feature being increased by the bulging or general convexity of their labial surfaces. The extremity of the occlusal surface of the cuspids—*i. e.*, the point of the cusp—is a trifle below the cutting edge of the laterals and about on a line with that of the centrals. While the apical extremities of the roots of the cuspid teeth are directed away from the median line, the crowns assume almost a perpendicular, this condition resulting from a bend in the tooth at the neck. Although the perpendicular position is most commonly assumed by the crown, it is not unusual to find either a mesial or distal inclination present. Reference has been made to the cuspid teeth occupying a position which might be termed the turning-points or corners of the arch, and in most instances it may be thus considered ; but in certain typical forms—the sanguine, for example—the tooth-line is unbroken and passes over the cutting-edges of the incisors, the summit of the cusps of the cuspids, and is continued backward over the buccal cusps of the posterior teeth. The bicuspid are placed nearly perpendicular in the arch, but occasionally deviate from this by a slight mesial or buccal inclination. The length usually corresponds to that of the central incisors, and their buccal surfaces are slightly less prominent than the corresponding surfaces of the cuspid teeth. The increase in the buccolingual diameter of the crowns of the bicuspid over that of the incisors and cuspids results in breaking the lingual line of the occlusal surfaces. In the bilious and kindred types, the tooth-line is carried directly backward from the cuspid to the first molar, making the buccal face of the bicuspid equally prominent, but when the arch is well rounded the second bicuspid is slightly more prominent than the first. The first and second molars usually assume a perpendicular position, but are occasionally inclined to the distal and buccal. The relative prominence of the buccal as well as the lingual surfaces of these teeth is also controlled by the form of the arch. The occlusal surfaces are about on a level with those of the bicuspid and central incisors, but generally the lack of development in the distal half of the crown of the second molar results in the production of a slight upward curve to the tooth-

line level at this point (see Occlusion of the Teeth). On account of the limited accommodations afforded it, the position of the upper third molar is quite variable. It may be either to the buccal or to the lingual of the tooth-line, and is usually strongly inclined to the distal. In those cases in which there is a decided dip to the arch (see Occlusion of the Teeth), this tooth is relatively shorter than those anterior to it, but when the tooth-line level is a perfect plane, the length of this tooth corresponds to the other molars and bicuspid.

The lower incisors are placed more nearly in a perpendicular



FIG. 32.—THE TOOTH-LINE IN THE LOWER JAW.

position than the upper, and a reverse condition exists, in the lateral incisors being a trifle larger than the centrals. The lower cuspids are probably more constant in their position than any class of teeth in the mouth, in nearly all instances assuming a direct perpendicular. Like the upper cuspids, they may be said to establish the corners or turning-points of the inferior arch, and are somewhat more prominent in the tooth-line than neighboring teeth. All of the six anterior lower teeth may be slightly inclined to the mesial. The lower bicuspid and molars, instead of having the buccal inclination possessed by the corresponding upper teeth, are inclined to the lingual. The first



molar seldom deviates either to the mesial or the distal, the second molar is generally inclined to the mesial, while the third molar is strongly inclined to the mesial. In the inferior arch the curve formed by the incisors and cuspids is the segment of a smaller circle than the corresponding curve in the superior arch. This curve may be continued over the buccal cusps of the bicuspsids and molars, or it may be broken at the cuspid tooth and continued backward in a direct line (Fig. 32). The teeth in the inferior arch are placed directly over the body of the bone as far back as the second bicuspsids, while the molars

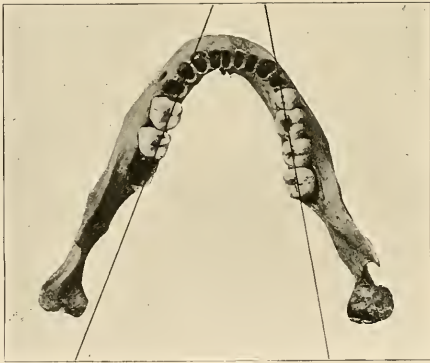


FIG. 33.—THE TOOTH-LINE IN THE LOWER JAW.

frequently overhang the body of the bone by an extension of the alveoli inward (Fig. 33).

The curve described by the dental arch is quite variable, and this variation is generally referred to in connection with the temperament. Thus, in the sanguine temperament (Fig. 34), the arch is well rounded anteriorly, the circle being continued backward to the region of the molars, where the line is broken by slightly inclining to the lingual. In this arch the distance in a straight line from the center of the second molar, on one side, to the center of the corresponding tooth on the other, is about equal to the distance from either of these points to the median line between the central incisors, forming a right-angle triangle.



In the bilious temperament (Fig. 35) the arch presents a broad front from cuspid to cuspid, with but little curve; at these points it turns abruptly backward, being continued almost in a direct

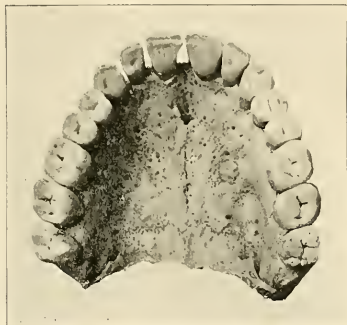


FIG. 34.—SANGUINE.

line to its extremity. In this arch the side of the triangle (represented by the line from molar to molar) is much reduced in length. In the nervous temperament (Fig. 36) the arch is Gothic in form,



FIG. 35.—BILIOUS.

the segment formed by the anterior teeth being that of a much smaller circle than either of the types previously referred to. The distance from molar to molar is much less than the distance

from molar to median line. In the lymphatic temperament (Fig. 37) the arch is well rounded and broad, the segment being

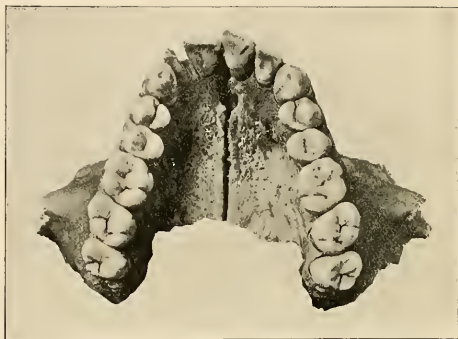


FIG. 36.—NERVOUS.

that of a much larger circle than any of the above, the side of the triangle formed by the line from molar to molar being of the greatest length.



FIG. 37.—LYMPHATIC.

**Interproximate Spaces.**—In the mesiodistal direction the crowns of the teeth, as a class, are broader at their occlusal surfaces or cutting-edges than at their necks (Fig. 38). This

bell-shaped form of the tooth-crowns causes their proximate surfaces to touch at a point representing their greatest mesio-distal diameter, which is usually near the cutting-edge or occlusal surface. Between this point of contact and the cervical line there exists a V-shaped space, called the interproximate space. These spaces are largest in that class of teeth found in the nervous and bilious types, where the necks of the teeth are much constricted, and the bell-shaped crown strongly outlined. In



FIG. 38.—SECTION OF THE SUPERIOR MAXILLA SHOWING INTERPROXIMATE SPACES.

teeth of this class the point of contact is slight, and the interproximate spaces are only partially occupied by the gum tissue, leaving a free passage between the point of contact and the gingival margins. In the sanguine and lymphatic temperaments the proximate surfaces of the teeth are nearer parallel with one another, thus making the point of contact cover a greater extent of surface, and reducing the size of the interproximate spaces.

CHAPTER V.  
OCCLUSION OF THE TEETH.



FIG. 39.—THE TEETH IN OCCLUSION.

As stated elsewhere, the teeth are arranged in the mouth in the form of two parabolic curves, one of which occupies the upper half and the other the lower half of the cavity. To properly perform their function it is necessary for the upper and lower teeth to come in contact, which they are enabled to do by the movement of the lower jaw, and it is the relation existing between the two when thus brought together that constitutes the *occlusion of the teeth*. During mastication the teeth do not only occlude, and remain stationary at a given point until the lower jaw is again depressed, but, through the combined movements of the mandible, the lower teeth are made to move from side to side, thus grinding or crushing any substance placed between the occlusal surfaces of the bicuspid and molars. This

gliding antagonism of the teeth is commonly termed the *articulation*, and it is important that a distinction be made between the terms "occlusion" and "articulation," the former referring to the relations existing between the upper and lower teeth when brought together normally and held firmly in that position, while the latter relates to the various movements of the teeth after being brought together in occlusion. In the majority of instances the segment described by the superior arch is somewhat larger than that formed by the inferior, and the upper teeth project over and are partly outside of those in the inferior arch. Figure 39 presents a labial and buccal view of the teeth in position in the alveoli, and also in occlusion. It will be observed that the upper teeth are not directly antagonistic to those of the same name in the inferior arch. There are two reasons for the presence of this condition: First, the mesiodistal diameter of the upper central incisors is much greater than that of the corresponding lower teeth; second, the larger circle present in the superior arch. This arrangement provides that each tooth, instead of being antagonized by a single tooth of the opposite jaw, is met in occlusion by a portion of two teeth. The upper central incisor is met in occlusion by the entire cutting-edge of the lower central incisor and the mesial third of the cutting-edge of the lower lateral incisor. The upper lateral incisor is met in occlusion by the distal two-thirds of the cutting-edge of the lower lateral incisor and by the mesial cutting-edge of the lower cuspid. The upper cuspid is met in occlusion by the distal cutting-edge of the lower cuspid and by the mesial two-thirds of the buccal cusp of the lower first bicuspid. The upper first bicuspid is met in occlusion by the remaining or distal third of the lower first bicuspid and by the mesial two-thirds of the buccal cusp of the lower second bicuspid. The upper second bicuspid is met in occlusion by the remaining or distal third of the buccal cusp of the lower second bicuspid, and by the mesial incline of the mesiobuccal cusp of the lower first molar. The upper first molar is met in occlusion by the distal incline of the mesiobuccal cusp of the lower first molar, by the entire distal cusp of the same tooth, and by the mesial incline of the mesiobuccal cusp of the lower

second molar. The upper second molar is met in occlusion by the distal incline of the mesiobuccal cusp of the lower second molar, by the entire distobuccal cusp of the same tooth, and by the mesial incline of the mesiobuccal cusp of the lower third molar. The upper third molar is met in occlusion by the distal incline of the mesiobuccal cusp of the lower third molar and by the entire distobuccal cusp of the same tooth, thus being the only tooth in the superior arch with but a single opponent. Likewise each lower tooth is met in occlusion by two in the superior arch, with the single exception of the central incisor, which occludes with the upper central



FIG. 40.—THE MANDIBLE AT THE ADULT PERIOD, SHOWING THE EQUILATERAL TRIANGLE DESCRIBED BY THE DENTAL ARCH.

alone. There are many variations from this so-called typical occlusion, as above described, and any slight difference one way or another should not be considered abnormal. In certain types the segmental form of the superior arch is but little greater than that of the inferior, and the cutting-edges of the upper incisors occlude almost directly upon the cutting-edges of the lower incisors. As a result, all of the upper teeth are forced to the distal, and the relationship between the upper and lower organs is much altered. When the upper teeth overhang the lower, the lingual cusps of the upper bicusps and molars penetrate the fossæ or sulci of the corresponding lower teeth, when in occlu-

sion, and the buccal cusps of the lower bicuspid and molars rest in the fossæ of their upper opponents.

To assist in the study of the occlusion of the teeth, some reference must be made to the tooth-line level, or plane of occlusion. For this purpose the lines forming the facial angle are of value. These lines are as follows: A fixed line representing the base of the angle may be drawn from the center of the glenoid fossa, passing forward through the anterior nasal spine or base of the nose (A, Fig. 41), the angle being completed by a perpendicular line resting upon the labial surface of the upper incisors, passing upward and touching the most

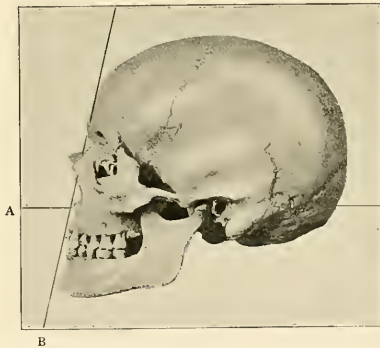


FIG. 41.—LINES SHOWING FACIAL ANGLE, CAUCASIAN OR WHITE RACE.

prominent part of the forehead (B, Fig. 41). The tooth-line level is approximately horizontal to this basal line, but instead of a perfect plane we usually find the superior arch dipping downward, while the inferior arch will be provided with a corresponding depression. This dip to the arch is greatest in the region of the bicuspid, and the extent to which it may exist varies with the type of tooth and the consequent nature of the occlusion.

Thus far no reference has been made to what is commonly termed the *overbite*, and the *cusp forms* in the teeth. As these two factors exert a dominating influence over the character of the occlusion, the effects which they produce will be briefly described. The overbite is so named from the upper



incisors and cuspids projecting beyond, or overhanging and partly covering, the labial surfaces of the corresponding lower teeth. This may be a pronounced feature in the tooth-occlusion, or it may exist to a very slight degree. Although the overbite is usually referred to as existing in the incisive region alone, it is not confined to these teeth, but is also present in the bicuspid and molars by the buccal cusps of the upper teeth overhanging those of the lower. The extent of the overbite is gradually diminished from before backward, the central incisors presenting the greatest amount of overhanging surface,

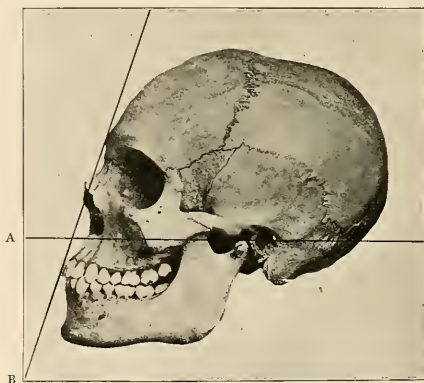


FIG. 42.—LINES SHOWING FACIAL ANGLE, NEGRO OR MIXED RACES.

which condition is slightly decreased in the laterals, and a corresponding reduction is continued until the third molars are reached, at which point the overbite is scarcely observed. Where the overbite is extensive, as shown in figure 39, the upper incisors overhanging and hiding from view about one-third of the labial surfaces of the lower incisors, the cusps of the bicuspid and molars will be correspondingly long and penetrating, the buccal cusps of the upper teeth extending well down over the buccal cusps of the corresponding lower teeth. In an occlusion of this class, which is usually found in the nervous and bilious types, the dip to the arch will be a prominent

feature, the occlusion will be firm and well locked, and the lateral articular movements will be slight during mastication. In the lymphatic and sanguine temperaments the occlusion is loose and



FIG. 43.—LYMPHATIC.

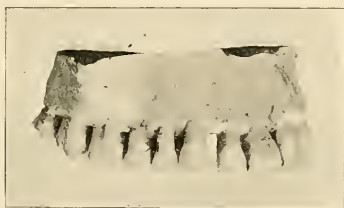


FIG. 44.—SANGUINE.



FIG. 45.—BILIOUS.

wandering, greater freedom of movement being permitted by the short overbite and the corresponding lack of cusp-formation. Figure 43 represents such an occlusion; the superior arch is

but little greater in its segmental outline than the inferior. The cutting-edges of the upper incisors are somewhat more prominent than those of the lower, but the former do not overlap the labial surfaces of the latter. In an occlusion of this character the dip to the arch is not so pronounced, and the articular movements are much more extensive.

## CHAPTER VI.

### THE BLOOD- AND NERVE-SUPPLY TO THE TEETH.

#### THE BLOOD-SUPPLY TO THE TEETH.

Briefly stated, the course of the blood from the heart to the teeth is as follows : From the heart to the aorta, to the common carotid artery, to the external carotid artery, to the internal maxillary artery, from the various branches of which the teeth are supplied.

**The Internal Maxillary Artery** (Fig. 47).—This artery, otherwise known as the deep facial, is the larger of the two terminal branches of the external carotid. In addition to supplying the teeth, it is distributed to the roof and floor of the mouth, to the maxillary sinus, and to other parts of the face and head. It has its origin from the external carotid artery opposite the condyle of the mandible within the substance of the parotid gland, passes forward between the condyle of the jaw and the sphenomaxillary ligament, from which point it passes obliquely upward and forward between the external and internal pterygoid muscles until it reaches the sphenomaxillary fossa, where its terminal branches are given off. It is divided into three portions—the first or maxillary, the second or pterygoid, and the third or sphenomaxillary. The teeth are supplied from branches of the first and third divisions, the upper teeth receiving their blood-supply from the alveolar or superior maxillary and the infra-orbital branches of the third division, while the lower teeth are supplied by the inferior dental branch of the first division.

**The alveolar or superior maxillary branch** arises, in common with the infra-orbital branch, from the internal maxillary as it passes into the sphenomaxillary fossa. It passes downward, in a tortuous manner, in a groove provided for it in the back of the maxilla. In its downward course it gives off the following *branches* : The *antral*, to supply the antrum ; the *dental* (known as the posterior dental arteries), which pass into

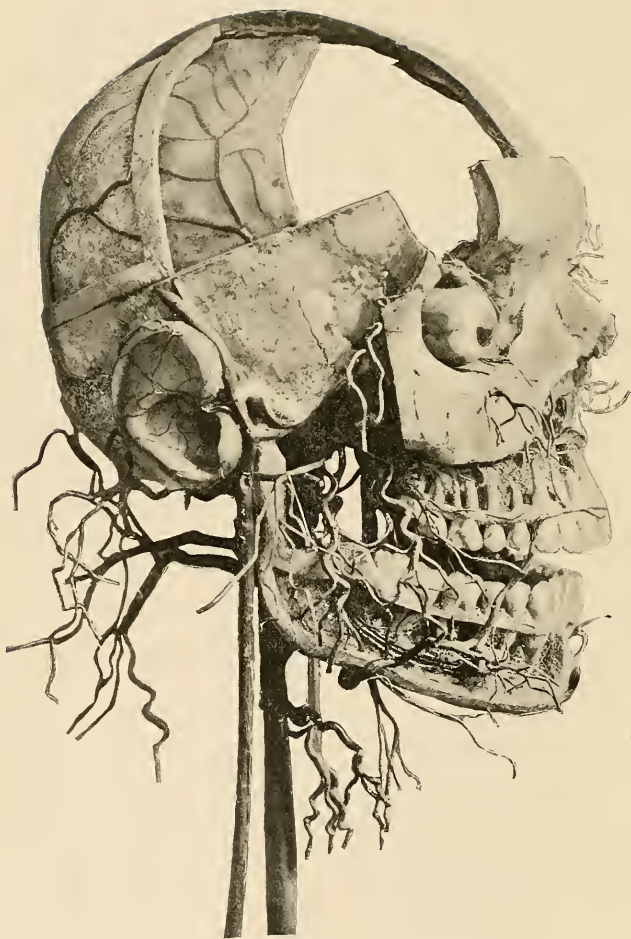


FIG. 46.—DISSECTION SHOWING BLOOD-SUPPLY TO THE TEETH.

the substance of the bone through the posterior dental canals to supply the molar and bicuspid teeth; the *alveolar* or gingival, to supply the gums; and the *buccal*, to the lateral walls of the mouth. The anterior upper teeth are supplied through the *infra-orbital branch* of the internal maxillary. This branch arises from the internal maxillary artery, generally, in common with the posterior dental. It passes forward in company with the maxil-

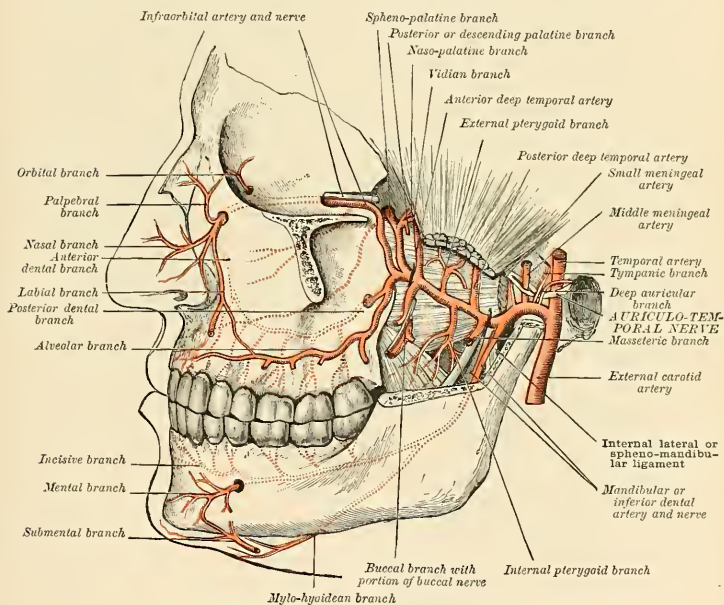


FIG. 47.—SCHEME OF INTERNAL MAXILLARY ARTERY.

lary division of the fifth nerve—first along the groove and then in the canal on the orbital plate of the maxilla, and finally makes its exit upon the face through the infra-orbital foramen. Besides giving off branches to the orbital and nasal cavities, it supplies the incisor and cuspid teeth through its anterior dental branch, which passes downward through a groove in the anterior wall of the maxilla.

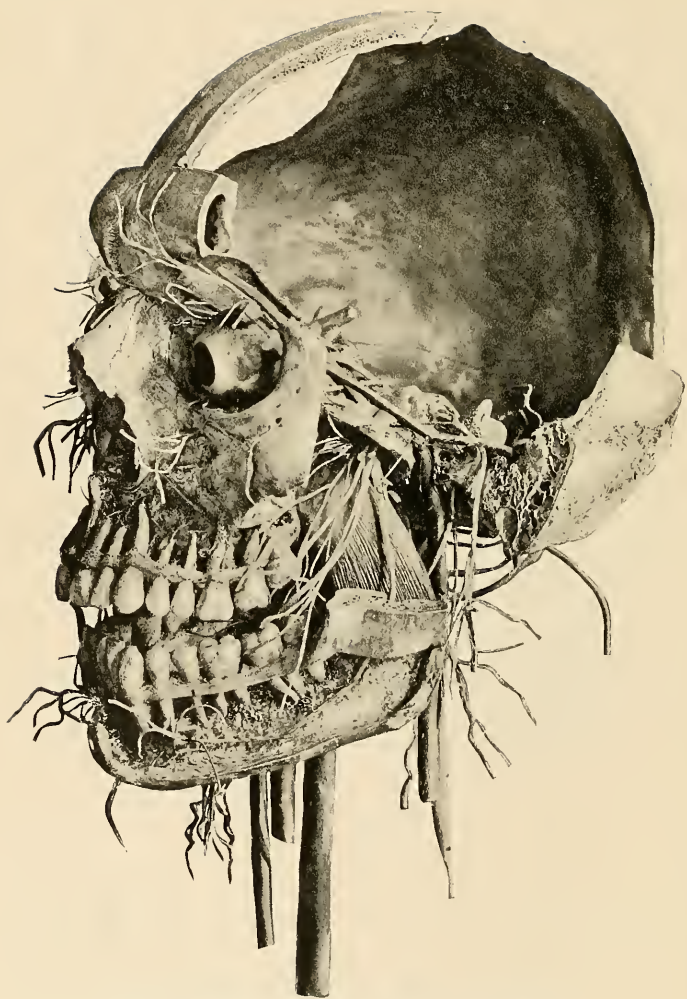


FIG. 48.—DISSECTION SHOWING NERVE-SUPPLY TO THE TEETH.



**The Inferior Dental Artery** (Fig. 47).—The lower teeth receive their blood-supply through the inferior dental or mandibular artery. This artery arises from the under part of the internal maxillary as it passes downward and forward between the sphenomaxillary ligament and the neck of the jaw and enters the inferior dental canal through the inferior dental foramen. It passes forward in the canal accompanied by the inferior dental nerve, and in so doing sends off twigs to supply the molar and bicuspid teeth. When the mental foramen is reached, it divides into two *branches*, the *incisive* branch and the *mental* branch.

*The incisive branch* continues its course within the cancellated structure of the bone, sending off minute branches which supply the anterior teeth, the terminal branches anastomosing with the artery of the opposite side.

*The mental branch* passes out through the mental foramen accompanied by the mental branches of the inferior dental nerve, and supplies the tissues of the chin and lower lip.

**The Veins.**—The blood, in returning from the teeth to the heart, is first taken up by the posterior dental and inferior dental veins, which in their course follow closely that of their corresponding arteries. These veins, in conjunction with others which accompany branches of the internal maxillary artery, form the pterygoid plexus. At the posterior confluence of this plexus the returning blood empties into the internal maxillary vein. Accompanied by the internal maxillary artery it passes backward and outward, enters the parotid gland, and finally empties into the temporomaxillary vein midway between the zygoma and the angle of the jaw. After leaving the substance of the parotid gland, the temporomaxillary vein passes downward until near the angle of the jaw, where it divides into two branches, one of which passes downward and slightly forward, uniting with the facial to form the common facial vein, and the other, after passing downward and backward, empties into the external jugular vein. The external jugular vein returns the principal portion of the blood from the teeth, and from its point of beginning it passes almost perpendicularly downward and empties into the subclavian vein, which, by joining with the in-

ternal jugular vein, forms the innominate vein, which, in turn, empties into the superior vena cava, thus communicating with the heart.

### THE NERVE-SUPPLY TO THE TEETH.

The nerves supplying the teeth are derived from branches of the fifth cranial nerve, otherwise known as the trifacial or trigeminal nerve. The fifth nerve is the largest of the cranial nerves, and consists of two parts, a large root (sensory) and a small root (motor). The larger portion passes into a ganglion (the Gasserian ganglion), frequently compared to the ganglion on the posterior root of the spinal nerve. It arises, or makes its appearance, at the surface of the brain, on the anterior part of the side of the pons Varolii. The sensory root, which, through its branches, supplies the teeth, is composed of from 80 to 100 filaments, each inclosed in a neurilemma, the entire bundle being bound together in a single nerve.

The fifth nerve is divided into three divisions: First, or *ophthalmic*; second, or *superior maxillary*; and third, or *inferior maxillary* (mandibular). The branches which supply the teeth are included in the second and third divisions, the upper teeth being supplied by branches from the superior maxillary nerve, and the lower teeth by branches from the inferior maxillary nerve.

**The Second Division, or Superior Maxillary Nerve** (Fig. 49).—This nerve, composed entirely of sensory fibers, is intermediate in size between the inferior maxillary and the ophthalmic divisions. It passes forward from the Gasserian ganglion and leaves the cranium through the foramen rotundum. It traverses the upper part of the sphenomaxillary fossa, and passes into the orbit through the sphenomaxillary fissure; then passes forward along the infra-orbital groove, and enters the infra-orbital canal, where it receives the name of the infra-orbital nerve. Passing through this canal, it emerges upon the face through the infra-orbital foramen. The superior maxillary nerve, beside supplying the teeth, sends off branches to the dura mater, to the orbit, and terminal branches in three groups—labial, nasal, and palpebral. The branches given off to the

teeth are the *posterior superior dental*, the *middle superior dental*, and the *anterior superior dental*.

The *posterior superior dental* arises from the second division of the fifth nerve, by one or two roots, just before it passes into the infra-orbital canal. It is divided into a superior and an inferior set; the former passes forward and terminates in the canine fossa, while the latter, usually the larger, enters the posterior dental canals, and, following the line of the alveolar process through minute canals in the bone, sends off twigs to the molar teeth, ending in a plexiform manner by communicating with the

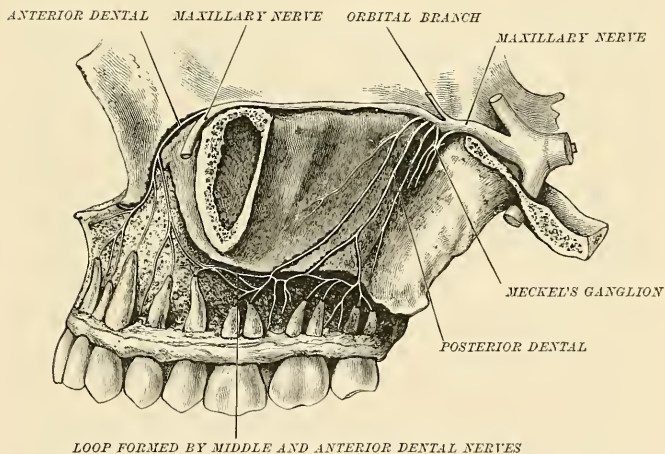


FIG. 49.—THE MAXILLARY NERVE, SEEN FROM WITHOUT.—(Morris, after Beaunis.)

middle superior dental nerve. This nerve is also distributed to the gums and adjacent buccal mucous membrane.

*Middle Superior Dental Nerve.*—The infra-orbital nerve, soon after entering its canal, gives off this branch, which passes outward, downward, and forward over the outer wall of the maxillary sinus, and, after forming plexuses with the posterior dental branches, gives off filaments to supply the bicuspid teeth.

The *anterior superior dental nerve*, which is the largest of the dental set, is given off from the infra-orbital nerve, enters a

canal close to the infra-orbital foramen, passes over the anterior wall of the maxillary sinus, and, after communicating with the middle and posterior dental nerves, divides into ascending and descending branches, the latter being distributed to the incisor and cuspid teeth.

**The Third Division, or Inferior Maxillary Nerve (Fig. 50).**—This is the largest of the three divisions of the fifth nerve,

Temporal Bone

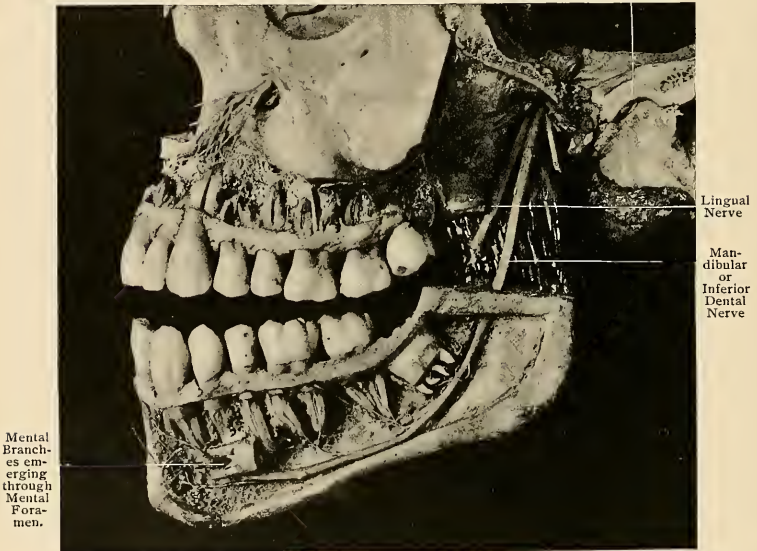


FIG. 50.—DISSECTION SHOWING MANDIBULAR (THIRD) DIVISION OF FIFTH NERVE.

and is both motor and sensory in its function. Besides being distributed to the lower teeth, it sends filaments to the lower portion of the face, the muscles of mastication, the tongue, and mandible. It arises from the Gasserian ganglion, passes downward, and emerges from the skull through the foramen ovale, after which it divides into a small anterior (motor) branch and a large posterior (sensory) branch.

*The Inferior Dental Nerve.*—This is the largest branch of the

inferior maxillary nerve. From its point of origin it passes downward internally to the external pterygoid muscle, and, upon reaching a point between the ramus of the mandible and the sphenomandibular ligament, it enters the inferior dental canal through the posterior or inferior dental foramen. Before entering the foramen, two branches are given off, a lingual and a mylohyoid branch. The nerve is accompanied through the inferior dental canal by the inferior dental artery, and, when the mental foramen is reached, it terminates by dividing into an *incisive* and a *mental* branch. Between the posterior dental foramen and the mental foramen the nerve gives off a series of twigs to the bicuspid and molar teeth, and these, by communicating with one another within the substance of the bone, form a fine plexus.

The incisive branch follows the incisive arteries through the substance of that part of the bone between the mental foramen and the symphysis, and supplies the incisor and bicuspid teeth, while the mental branch passes forward to supply the chin and lower lip.

## CHAPTER VII.

OTHER STRUCTURES WITHIN THE MOUTH.—THE GUMS.—THE MUCOUS MEMBRANE.—THE ALVEOLODENTAL MEMBRANE.—GLANDS, DUCTS, ETC.

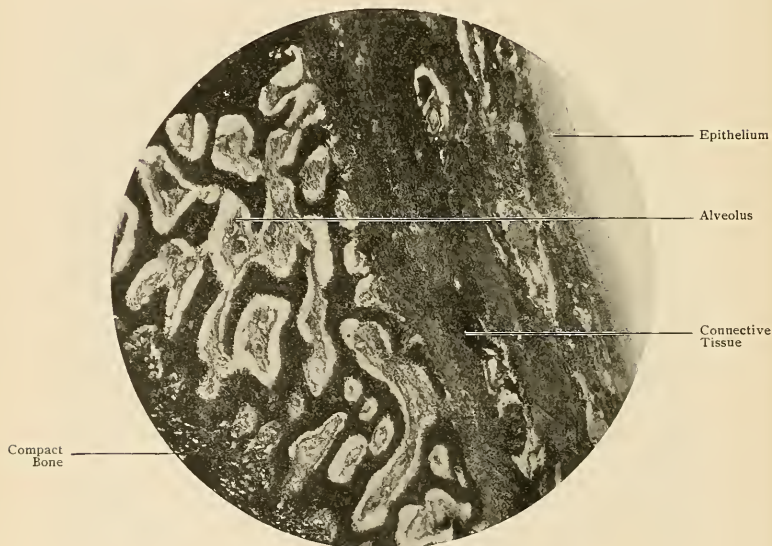


FIG. 51.—SECTION THROUGH GUM AND ALVEOLUS.

**The Gums (*Gingivæ*).**—The gums are formed by a layer of tough fibrous vascular tissue, covering the alveoli, closely attached to their periosteum, and provided with a free margin (gingival margin), which is closely molded to the necks of the teeth. They are covered on both aspects by the general mucous membrane of the mouth, that overlying the labial and buccal surfaces being reflected from the lips and cheeks, the palatal surface being continuous with that of the hard palate, and the lingual surface reflected from the under surface of the tongue and floor of the



mouth. In the immediate region of the necks of the teeth the gums are especially thin and hard, being closely adherent to the periosteum and alveolodental membrane in this region. In passing toward the base of the alveolar walls the tissue becomes less firmly attached to the underlying structure, and, when finally passing into the mucous membrane of the cheeks and lips, is quite loose and flabby. This condition also prevails on the lingual aspect, but the palatal surface remains firm throughout, the entire mucous membrane overlying the roof of the mouth being similar in structure and attachment to that portion immediately surrounding the necks of the teeth. In various situations about the labial, buccal, and lingual surfaces of the gums small slender folds of mucous membrane are found extending to the surrounding tissues. These folds, which act as a bridle or curb to the adjacent movable parts, are known as the *frena* of the mouth. The principal frena are found at the median line, and are three in number—the frenum labium superioris, frenum labium inferioris, and the frenum linguæ. The two former extend from the inner surface of the lips to the gums, to which their extent of attachment is somewhat variable. The frenum labium superioris is usually much larger than the frenum labium inferioris, and its attachment to the gum frequently extends almost to the gingival border. The frenum linguæ extends from the under surface of the tip of the tongue to the lingual surface of the inferior gums. This is a much stronger fold than those connected with the lips. Similar bridles are found in the buccal region, usually near the bicuspid teeth, but they are much smaller than those at the median line. The *gingival margins*, or that portion of the gums embracing the necks of the teeth, present much variety in outline. Instead of encircling the neck of the tooth in a direct line, the margins are made up of a series of semicircles. Using the incisive region for reference, the labial and palatal margins are concave rootward, while the interproximate spaces are partly or completely filled by gum tissue, having the outline reversed or convex in the direction of the crowns of the teeth. The gingival margin is also termed the “free margin of the gum,” this name better describing its extent. As previously stated, the gums are



attached to the periosteum and peridental membrane, but in most instances, and particularly before the adult period, the margins of the gums extend beyond the alveolodental membrane, the limit of which is formed by the cervical line. That portion of the gum margin beyond the cervical line is in close contact with the neck of the tooth, but is not adherent to it, the connecting medium, the alveolodental membrane, not being present to form the attachment. The curvature of the gingival margins, and the nature of the tissues which enter into their construction, are usually considered as strongly indicative of the temperament of the individual. Thus, in the bilious temperament the margins are inclined to angularity and the tissues rather thick and firm. In the sanguine type the outline formed is almost a perfect semicircle, and the tissues are of moderate thickness and firmness. In the nervous type the curvature is strongly parabolic, and the tissues firm and delicate. In the lymphatic the tissues are loose and thick, and the curvature is long and poorly defined. In some instances the interproximate spaces are completely filled by the gingivæ; in others the space is only partly occupied by these tissues. The former condition is present when the proximate surfaces of the teeth are nearly or quite parallel with each other, thus reducing the capacity of the space. The latter condition is present when the crowns of the teeth are bell-shaped and the interproximate spaces extensive. The labial and buccal surfaces of the gums are more or less broken by numerous prominences and depressions, all of which accord with the variations upon the surface of the bone beneath.

**Mucous Membrane of the Mouth.**—The term “membrane” in a general sense is one applied to thin layers of tissue, somewhat elastic and of a whitish or reddish color. Such tissues are found lining either closed cavities or canals which open externally, absorbing or secreting fluids, and enveloping various organs. The simple membranes are of three varieties, being either mucous, serous, or fibrous. The mucous membranes are so called from the clear viscid fluid (mucus) which they secrete. They line the various cavities or tracts of the body which communicate with the exterior. The three grand divisions of mucous membrane are those lining the digestive, respiratory,

and genito-urinary passages. Lining the entire cavity of the mouth we find the beginning of the digestive tract, being continuous with the skin on the exterior and performing many similar functions within. It is soft, smooth, and velvety, of a bright red color, and quite vascular ; it is covered on the exterior by a layer of epithelial cells overlying the vascular parts. Immediately beneath this is a network of fibrous connective tissue forming the proper mucous membrane, and still deeper is a third layer, somewhat loose in texture, but composed of fibrous connective tissue, the submucous membrane. The oral mucous membrane, at its point of beginning on the contiguous surfaces of the lips, is endowed with keen sensibility ; it is dry, bright red in color, and plentifully supplied with vascular papillæ, in many of which are sensory nerve terminals. Distributed along the line of junction between the integument and the mucous membrane are numerous sebaceous follicles, which, however, are devoid of hair-bulbs. The characteristic dryness of this surface gradually becomes changed to a mucus-secreting one, as that part of the membrane lining the interior of the lips is approached. Distributed over the surface of the labial mucous membrane are a number of minute openings, the mouths of the labial glands, which lie immediately beneath the membrane. The buccal mucous membrane, or that lining the cheeks, is similar to that covering the internal surface of the lips. It is penetrated at various points by the mouths of the buccal glands, which, in general, are smaller and less numerous than the labial glands. In the region of the second molar teeth the membrane is broken by four or five openings of larger size, which communicate with the molar glands. The mucous membrane covering the hard palate is thick and firm, less brilliant in color than that covering the cheeks and lips, and firmly bound down to the periosteum. Running from before backward at the median line, the membrane is formed into a slight fold, the median *raphe*, while near the anterior portion of the palate are a number of fantastically arranged folds, the *rugæ* (see General Description of the Mouth). The thin but rather dense fibrous aponeurosis forming the soft palate is covered anteriorly by the oral mucous membrane.

Suspended from the center of the free margin of the soft palate is the uvula, which is likewise covered by mucous membrane, and from the base of this, on either side, are two folds of the membrane, which extend outward and downward, forming the anterior and posterior pillars of the fauces. The mucous membrane covering the tongue has already been described in connection with that organ (see p. 41). From the mouth the digestive mucous membrane passes through the fauces, pharynx, and esophagus to the stomach, and is so continued throughout the whole digestive tract. Other prolongations also pass into the ducts of the salivary glands.\*

### **The Alveolodental or Root Membrane.**

This membrane invests the roots of the teeth, and at the same time lines the wall of the alveoli. Being reflected from the periosteum covering the outer alveolar walls, it enters the alveolar sockets as a single membrane, affording nourishment to the bone on one side and to the cementum of the tooth on the other. It is a connective tissue of moderate density, and is rich in its nerve- and blood-supply. The general direction of its fibers is transverse, being attached at one extremity to the alveolar wall and at the other to the cementum of the root. The connective-tissue fibers are not merely attached to the surface of the calcified structure, but the strength of this attachment is greatly increased by the passage of the fibers into the substance of the bone at one extremity and into the lamellæ of the cementum at the other. In general, the membrane is more closely adherent to the cementum than to the bone, usually clinging to the former when removed from its socket. The nature of the articulation between the tooth-root and the alveolar socket, to the production of which this membrane so largely contributes, is one peculiar to itself. While there is no marked mobility, there is, nevertheless, sufficient elasticity in the intervening membrane to provide against the severe concussions and lateral strains incident to mastication, the former being provided for by the general elasticity, while the latter is cared for by specially

---

\* For a minute description of the mucous membrane of the mouth see Part ii.

distributed fibers, which serve to return the tooth to its normal position when slightly rotated or laterally displaced. This elasticity is greatest in youth and up to the meridian of life, after which time it gradually becomes less pronounced. The membrane is thickest about the apical ends of the roots and in the cervical region, and the distribution of the fibers at these points is somewhat different from those about the body of the root. In the former location they are spread out fan-like from the apical root surface to meet the surrounding alveolar wall, while in the latter they pass longitudinally over the alveolar margins to unite with the periosteum of the parts. In conjunction with the functions already mentioned, the peridental membrane is the medium by which all forces applied to the tooth-surface are taken up and conveyed to the brain. A tooth in a normal condition may be said to possess no sense of touch, unless it be so severely applied as to make its influence felt by the pulp, in which case the sensation becomes one of pain. The nerves of the membrane act in precisely the same man-

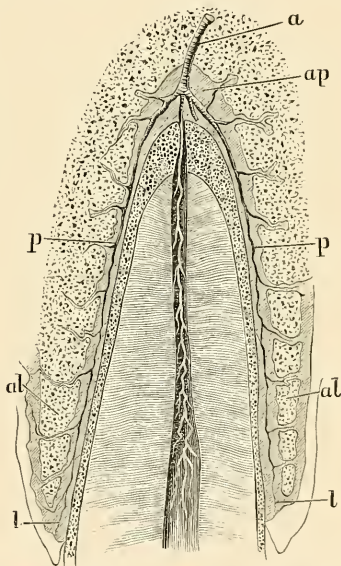


FIG. 52.—ROOT AND MEMBRANE OF TOOTH.

*p, p*, Peridental membrane; *ap*, apical space; *a*, artery; *al, al*, alveolar process; *l, l*, dental ligament.

ner as do other sensory-nerve terminals, being influenced by the slightest touch applied to the surface of the tooth-crown.\* In certain conditions of defective hearing the alveolodental membrane may be made to assist this function by the use

\* This membrane is more fully described in Part ii.

of an instrument made for the purpose known as a dentiphone.

**Blood-supply to the Alveolodental Membrane.**—A very clear idea of the blood-supply to this membrane may be obtained from figure 52.

Entering the alveolar socket as a single arterial branch, the thickest portion of the membrane is gained where a number of smaller twigs are given off, one or more of which enter the pulp-canal of the tooth-root through the apical foramina supplying the pulp, which in turn supplies the tooth-structure within, while the others ramify through the substance of the alveolodental membrane, through its capillaries, supplying the cementum from without; while passing through the membranous structure, further minute branches are given off which penetrate the walls of the alveolus and anastomose with the arteries which supply the oral mucous membrane, in this manner providing a generous blood-supply to the parts. Further on we shall see that the tooth-pulp and the alveolodental membrane spring from the same source (see Development of the Teeth), and the blood-supply to the parts during the saccular stage of development is alike distributed to the base of the pulp and to the follicular walls. After the completion of the developmental process this distribution is but little changed, the blood-vessels accommodating themselves to the alterations incident to the generation of the parts.

**The Nerve-supply to the Alveolodental Membrane.**—The nerve-supply to this membrane is distributed in a manner similar to the blood-supply, being derived from a single filament given off from the dental nerve and entering the tooth-socket by the side of the blood-vessels, and by numerous filaments which reach the structure by passing through the many minute canals in the substance of the alveolar walls and the intervening septa.

#### GLANDS OF THE MOUTH.

The glands of the mouth are of two kinds, being either *serous* or *mucous*, and, as they differ in the character of their secretions, so they differ in structure. The mucous glands are the most

numerous, and are found beneath the mucous membrane of the lips, in the same membrane lining the cheeks, the hard and soft palate, the tonsils, and at the back of the tongue. These glands are quite variable in size, but are all of macroscopical proportions, appearing when examined in this manner as minute whitish bodies. The secretions from the glands are poured into the mouth through small ducts which pass in various directions through the substance of the mucous membrane. Beginning as a single duct for each gland, they pass to the submucous tissue, here branching into two or more smaller ducts terminating in alveoli, the number and size of these depending upon the size of the gland with which they are connected. The glands are variously named according to their location, those occupying the lips being known as *labial glands*; those of the cheeks, the *buccal glands*; those of the palate, the *palatal glands*, etc. The mucous glands, although differing in size, are similar when histologically considered.

**The Labial Glands.**—These are among the largest mucous glands of the mouth, and are more numerous in the upper than in the lower lip. The form, size, and location of the labial glands may best be studied by dissection, which may readily be accomplished by first removing the integument and muscular tissues from the parts, when they will be brought into view. The glands are irregularly arranged, and are most numerous near the median line. The body of each gland is rounded and held in position by connective tissue, as well as by the duct connecting it with the interior of the mouth.

Besides the mucous glands of the lips, there are present numerous sebaceous glands. These are somewhat smaller, and are situated beneath the mucous membrane covering the contiguous surfaces of the lips, the numerous ducts leading from them opening upon these parts.

**The Buccal Glands.**—The glands of the cheek, otherwise known as buccal glands, are similar to, but smaller than those of the lips, and are placed between the submucous tissue and the buccinator muscle. These glands also pour their secretions into the mouth through numerous ducts which pass through the buccal mucous membrane.



In the region of the third molar teeth another set of mucous glands open into the mouth, known as the *molar glands*. They are placed between the buccinator and masseter muscles, are similar in construction, and secrete a like fluid to those previously described, being larger than the buccal and smaller than the labial glands.

**Palatal Glands.**—Situated between the mucous membrane of the hard palate and the periosteum are numerous mucous glands similar to those previously described. Provision is made for the accommodation of these glands by many small depressions in the bony plates (see Fig. 3). They are irregularly distributed over the surface of each lateral half of the hard palate, but are absent at the median raphe and immediately beneath the rugæ. The mucous membrane of the hard palate is tense and hard, in consequence of which it is not so thick as the buccal and lingual membranes, and the ducts from the numerous glands are therefore not so long. The glands of the soft palate, uvulæ, and fauces are situated beneath the deep layer of mucous membrane covering these parts, in the former structure opening on both the oral and nasal surfaces.

**Lingual Glands.**—The glands of the tongue are of two kinds—mucous and serous. The former are chiefly found at the back part of the tongue, but a few of smaller size are present near the tip. The serous variety are to be found only at the back of the organ, and are closely associated with the taste organs in this region. These glands are assisted in performing their function by being placed between bundles of striped muscular tissue, the activity of which forces the secretions to the surface by compressing the glands. While the majority of the lingual glands are present in the circumvallate region, a number are found distributed beneath the mucous membrane of the borders and tip of the organ.

**The Salivary Glands** (Fig. 53).—These glands, while outside the mouth, are so closely associated with its functions that a brief description will be presented. The chief salivary glands are six in number, three on each side. They are named *parotid*, *submaxillary*, and *sublingual*; the former, secreting true, thin, watery saliva, is a true salivary gland, while the latter two



are known as mixed, or mucosalivary glands, secreting both mucus and saliva.

**The Parotid Gland.**—This gland is the largest of the three, and is placed a little below and in front of the ear, having the following boundaries : Anteriorly, by the ramus of the mandible ; posteriorly, by the styloid and mastoid processes of the temporal bone ; above, by the root of the zygoma, and below, by a line drawn backward from the angle of the jaw. While the extent

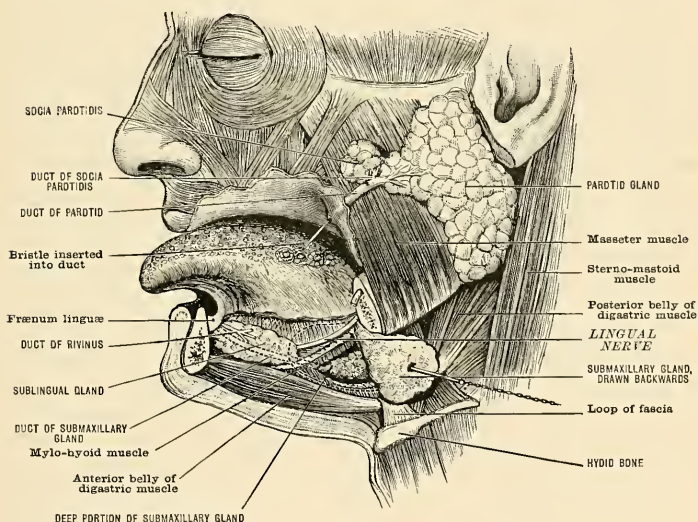


FIG. 53.—THE SALIVARY GLANDS.—(Morris.)

and outline of the gland is somewhat variable, its position is approximately that outlined in figure 53. Its superficial surface, somewhat lobulated, is in close relation to the skin and fascia, while deeply it penetrates well into the neck by two processes, one of which passes behind the styloid process and beneath the mastoid process of the temporal bone and the sternomastoid muscle, while the other passes in front of the styloid process. Given off from the body of the gland and extending in various directions are a number of processes or lobes, one extending

forward between the two pterygoid muscles, and known as the pterygoid lobe; another passing into the glenoid cavity, the glenoid lobe; while a third passes deeply between the carotid vessels, and is called the carotid lobe. In many instances there is an additional lobe, which is detached from the body of the gland, known as the *socia parotidis*. When present, this lobe is placed over the parotid duct and empties into it. Passing through the substance of the gland are a number of arteries and veins, principal among which are the external carotid, transverse facial, and internal maxillary, the gland receiving its blood-supply by branches from these. The internal carotid artery and internal jugular vein lie close to its internal surface. The facial nerve and its branches and the great auricular nerve pass through the gland from before backward, and supply its substance with nerve-force. The weight of this gland is from one-half to one ounce.

**The Parotid Duct.**—Leading from the gland to the mouth is the parotid or Stenson's duct. After passing through the fat of the cheek and the fibers of the buccinator muscle, the duct comes in contact with the deep layer of the oral mucous membrane. After passing between this structure and the cheek tissues for a short distance it enters the mouth opposite the crown of the upper second molar tooth, the orifice of the duct appearing on the surface of the mucous membrane in the form of a small papilla, which may be readily observed with the naked eye. When first given off from the gland a number of small ducts are present, but these soon unite and form a single canal. The parotid duct is quite dense, of considerable thickness, and is lined by a reflexion of the buccal mucous membrane.

**The Submaxillary Gland.**—This gland, which receives its name from occupying a position below the maxillary bone, is somewhat smaller than the parotid. It is situated beneath the mylohyoid ridge, and occupies the anterior part of the submaxillary triangle, extending upward to occupy the submaxillary fossa on the lower border of the maxilla. Superficially, it is covered by the skin and a few muscular fibers and the deep fascia. The facial vein and branches of the facial nerve pass

over its superficial surface. Deeply, it is in relation with the mylohyoid and hyoglossus muscles, and also with the mylohyoid artery and nerve. The gland receives its blood- and nerve-supply from the arteries and nerves which penetrate it. This gland is separated from the sublingual gland by the mylohyoid muscle, and weighs about two drams.

**The Submaxillary Duct.**—The submaxillary duct, otherwise known as Wharton's duct, passes forward and inward, opening into the cavity of the mouth on the summit of a small papilla near the frenum linguæ. The duct, which is nearly two inches in length, first passes through the adjacent muscular tissue, and finally beneath the oral mucous membrane to its outlet. Like the parotid duct, it is lined by a reflexion of the oral mucous membrane.

**The Sublingual Gland.**—This is the smallest of the salivary glands, and is also named from its location beneath the tongue. Its position is beneath the tip of the tongue and the mucous membrane covering this part of the floor of the mouth. It rests in the submaxillary fossa of the maxilla, meeting with its fellow at the median line, and extending as far back as the mylohyoid muscle, which separates it from the submaxillary gland. The gland is supplied with blood from the sublingual and submental arteries, and with nerves from the gustatory. The weight of this gland is about one dram.

**The Sublingual Ducts.**—This gland communicates with the mouth by one large duct—the duct of Rivini—which springs from the main portion of the gland, and by a number of smaller ducts, eight to twenty in number, which open on the floor of the mouth. The duct of Rivini follows the submaxillary duct, and opens with it at the same papilla. The smaller ducts are given off from a number of little lobes which cluster about the fore part of the gland.

## CHAPTER VIII.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE UPPER TEETH IN DETAIL.—CALCIFICATION, ERUPTION, AND AVERAGE MEASUREMENTS.—THEIR SURFACES, RIDGES, FOSSÆ, GROOVES, SULCI, ETC.

### UPPER CENTRAL INCISOR.



FIG. 54.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, FROM THREE CENTERS, FIRST YEAR AFTER BIRTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, TENTH TO ELEVENTH YEAR.

ERUPTED, SEVENTH TO EIGHTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .39.\*

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .49.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .88.

During the first year after birth this tooth begins to calcify, this primitive process taking place along the future cutting-edge of the tooth in three distinct lobes or plates, which afterward unite and form three eminences or tubercles, the lines of this union being indicated upon the completed crown by two more or less defined grooves—*developmental grooves*. By the end of the third year the deposit of lime-salts has carried the process of calcification to a point about midway between the cutting-edge and the cervical line. By a continuation of this formative action the calcification of the crown is completed

---

\* The measurements given are in fractions of an inch, and are taken from Black's "Dental Anatomy."

between the fifth and sixth year. At the beginning of the seventh year calcification has progressed to such an extent that the neck of the tooth and base of the root are fully outlined. Between the seventh and eighth year the cutting-edge of the tooth begins to make its appearance through the gum at a point either to the right or left of the median line, and, by a gradual separation of the gum tissue, eruption takes place. During the following year about one-eighth of an inch has been added to the length of the root. At the end of the eighth year the root has become calcified to about one-half of its completed length. During the ninth year, owing to a reduction in the diameter of the root, the extent of growth in an apical direction has almost doubled that of the previous year, and a decided narrowing of the free root margins is to be observed. At the eleventh year calcification is completed in the outer root walls, and the apical foramen has been established (Fig. 54).

**The Crown of the Upper Central Incisor** presents for examination four surfaces—labial, lingual, mesial, and distal ; two angles—a mesial and a distal ; and a cutting-edge. The general form of the crown is that of a double inclined plane, or wedge-shape, the cutting-edge representing the junction of the two sides of the incline, one of which looks anteriorly (labial) and the other posteriorly (lingual). The labial side of the incline is convex, while the lingual is concave from the cutting-edge toward the root ; but, upon reaching its upper or cervical third, it presents a slight general convexity. The base of the wedge is directed upward and partakes of the contour of the neck of the tooth.

X **The Labial Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 55).—In general outline this surface resembles an imperfect quadrilateral. The *margins* of the surface are the *mesial*, the *distal*, the *cervical*, and the *incisive*. The mesial margin begins at the lower border or cutting-edge and passes upward, usually with a slight distal inclination, gradually uniting with the cervical margin. The distal margin begins at the cutting-edge and passes upward with a slight mesial inclination, also joining the cervical margin. Both of these margins possess more or less general convexity, and, at their junction with the cutting-edge, form the mesial and

distal angles of the crown. The cervical margin is rounded and gradually passes into the two lateral margins just described. The incisive margin is marked by the cutting-edge, and extends from the mesial angle on one side to the distal angle on the other. These four margins, which assist in giving to the tooth its typical form, are quite variable. This difference is particularly marked on the mesial and distal margins, where, in some cases,

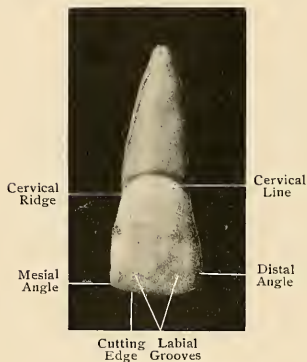


FIG. 55.—UPPER CENTRAL INCISOR, LABIAL SURFACE.

there is a decided convergence in the direction of the root, forming what is commonly termed the bell-shaped crown, while in others the same margins will be nearly parallel with each other, making the width of the crown almost as great at the cervical margin as at the cutting-edge.

The mesial angle is usually pointed and square, while the distal is much rounded. This surface of the crown is slightly convex from above downward, as well as from side to side, and in the majority of instances is of

greater vertical than transverse extent. Beginning at the incisive margin are two slight longitudinal depressions or grooves—the *labial grooves*—which are resultant from the developmental lobes previously composing the primitive cutting-edge, and, for this reason, are otherwise known as developmental grooves. In many instances one or more transverse ridges are found upon the cervical portion, but these are supplemental.

**The Lingual Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 56).—This surface has its borders formed by three marginal ridges and the cutting-edge. The marginal ridges are pronounced elevations of enamel, and surround the surface upon three sides, the intervening space in many instances being a decided concavity or fossa—the *lingual fossa*. The *mesial marginal ridge* begins at the mesial angle of the crown, passes upward, inward and backward, following the curvature of the mesial border. The *distal marginal ridge* begins



at the distal angle of the crown in a somewhat less pronounced form, passes upward, backward, and inward, following the curvature of the distal surface. Upon reaching the cervical portion of the crown these two margins unite and form the *cervicomarginal ridge*. This ridge may be bold and prominent, or it may be but slightly developed. Near its center it is frequently broken by a depression or pit—the *lingual pit*. In some instances this pit is deeply penetrating; in others it assumes the form of a fissure, and may completely sever the ridge. This border is sometimes elevated into a slightly developed tubercle or cusp—the *cuspile*. When this is present it has the appearance of being produced by a fold of enamel, and encircling it is a well-marked fissure. The lingual fossa is usually traversed by two longitudinal grooves, which correspond to the developmental grooves of the labial surface. When a cuspile is present, the fissure which surrounds it frequently passes into the fossa, or the fossa may be partly covered by the cuspile overhanging its cervical portion. When the cervicolingual fissure exists, it is not unusual for it to bifurcate and throw a branch along the inner border of each marginal ridge, or it may penetrate the fossa proper and divide it into two parts. The lingual surface is somewhat less in extent than the labial surface, this reduction being principally in a mediobuccal direction, the length of the two surfaces from the cutting-edge to the cervical margin being about equal.

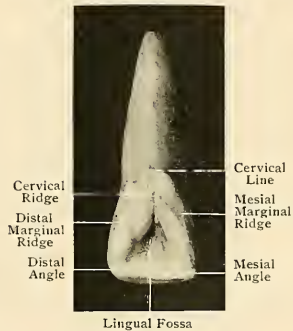


FIG. 56.—UPPER CENTRAL INCISOR,  
LINGUAL SURFACE.

**The Mesial Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 57).—The outline of this surface resembles an inverted cone or triangle, the lines of which are more or less broken, the apex of the cone terminating at the cutting-edge and the base directed toward the root of the tooth. The base of the cone is made concave by the enamel



margin or cervical line. The *margins* of the mesial surface are the *labial*, the *lingual*, and the *cervical*. [The labial margin is convex and rounded throughout its entire extent, from the cutting-edge to the cervical line.] The contour of this margin varies with the typical form of the crown, in some presenting a decided and well-marked convexity, in others being but slightly curved. [The lingual margin is concave and rounded, but the line is much broken. Beginning at the cutting-edge, it is decided

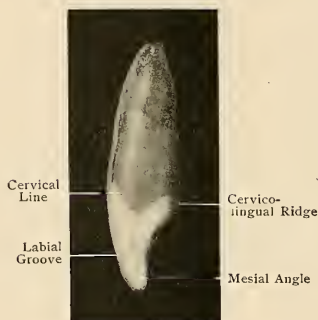


FIG. 57.—UPPER CENTRAL INCISOR,  
MESIAL SURFACE.

and square, this feature usually including the lower third. As it passes upward and the center is approached, the line is more concave and rounded in a mesio-lingual direction, this latter feature increasing upon approaching the cervical line. [The cervical margin is that formed by the cervical line. It is usually well-defined, being concave or V-shaped, with the point of the V more or less rounded, and with its free ends pointing one in a labial and one in a lingual

direction, the former being a trifle longer than the latter.] The surface between the borders presents a slight general convexity, but with an inclination to flatness near the cervical portion, which is occasionally developed into a slight concavity. Whatever deviations may be present in the borders of this surface, from those assumed in the description just given, their union at the cutting-edge will always be in a direct line with the long axis of the tooth.

**The Distal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 58).—In a general way, this surface resembles the mesial surface just described. There are, however, one or two minor points of distinction: the borders are all more rounded, the labial border presenting a greater convexity, and the lingual a more perfectly formed concavity. The surface is quite full in the center, from which it slopes away in all directions, thus producing a decided general convexity.

The cervical margin of the surface is almost identical with the cervical margin of the mesial surface. The distance in a direct line from the cervical border to the cutting-edge is a trifle less than the corresponding measurement on the mesial surface. The distal angle is equally constant in its position, and, being connected with the mesial angle in a direct line by the cutting-edge, finds this latter coronal margin always in the labiolingual center of the crown.

*The Cutting-edge of the Central Incisor.*—The cutting or incisive edge receives its name from its function, that of

cutting or incising the food. It is formed by the junction of the labial and lingual surfaces of the crown, and extends almost in a

direct line from the mesial to the distal surface; at its union with the mesial surface it assists in forming the mesial angle of the crown, and serves the same purpose by its union with the distal surface. In the majority of instances it is an unbroken line. In passing from the mesial to the distal angle it converges slightly in the direction of the root, thus making the crown a trifle shorter on the mesial than on the distal side. In the recently erupted tooth (Fig. 59) the line is broken by the developmental grooves; these usually disappear by wear, but occasionally traces of their existence remain, and thus permanently break the positive line that would otherwise be present. As the cutting-edge approaches the distal angle of the crown it is inclined to slope away, producing a less positive angle than the corre-

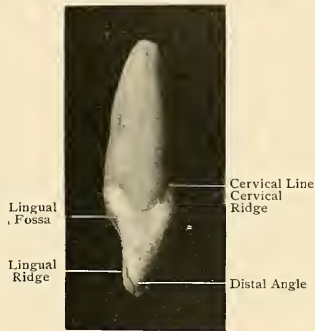


FIG. 58.—UPPER CENTRAL INCISOR, DISTAL SURFACE.



FIG. 59.—A YOUNG UPPER CENTRAL INCISOR, LABIAL SURFACE, SHOWING DEVELOPMENTAL GROOVES—*a*.

As the cutting-edge approaches the distal angle of the crown it is inclined to slope away, producing a less positive angle than the corre-

sponding mesial angle. In some instances the cutting-edge is quite thin and inclined to sharpness, in others it is blunt and dull, the former condition being present when there is a decided overbite in occlusion, the latter occurring when this feature is less pronounced. The cutting-edge is frequently referred to as the *occlusal surface*, this term being employed to make the description more uniform with the bicuspid and molars, and for this reason is permissible; but it is only in rare instances that the surfaces occlude directly with the opposing teeth, the condition being most frequent in teeth of the lymphatic type, and in cases of malocclusion.

*The Cervical Margin.*—This margin, which is distinctly outlined by the free extremity of the enamel covering of the crown, also marks the extent of the membrane covering the root of the tooth. The margins formed by this line are those of a double concavity and a double convexity. On the labial and lingual portions it is concave rootward, while on the mesial and distal sides it is convex in this direction. If a line be drawn around the tooth at the extreme upper point of the enamel covering, it will be found to touch only the labial and lingual prolongations, while a space will exist between the line thus drawn and the cervical margins of the proximate surfaces. The character of the cervical curvature varies with the type of the tooth, being more or less pronounced as the case may be. In a typical central incisor the cervical line of the labial surface will usually form the segment of a larger circle than that of the lingual, and, while the mesial convexity may be gracefully curved, the distal may incline to angularity.

*The Neck of the Tooth.*—The neck of this tooth partakes of a form between that of the crown and root which it joins. It is principally formed by a sudden sloping of the enamel margin to meet the root. It is broader on the labial than on the lingual surface, and is somewhat flattened laterally, with an occasional depression or concavity on its mesial portion. The neck of this tooth is seldom a decided anatomic feature, being less pronounced than upon any other tooth. In the bicuspid and molars both the crowns and the roots assist in forming the neck

by a constriction of their adjacent parts, while in this tooth the crown alone is instrumental in this direction.

**The Root of the Upper Central Incisor.**—The root of this tooth is conic in form, its base directed downward, its apex upward. [Viewed in transverse sections its outline is that of a rounded triangle, one side of which faces in a labial, one in a mesiolingual, and one in a distolingual direction. The labial side is the most flattened, while the two remaining sides are of equal length and oval in form. This triangular outline usually continues throughout the entire length of the root, but in some instances, near the apical end, may have a decided or slight distal curve, included in which will be a more circular form.] The taper of the root from the base to the apex is very gradual upon the labial and lingual surfaces, until the apical third is reached, when the two sides converge more rapidly. The mesial and distal surfaces are somewhat flattened and taper very gradually from the base to the apex. In a majority of instances the root is much longer than the crown, but in rare cases its length is barely equal to, or less than, that of the crown.

**Bilious Type.**—The crown of the upper central incisor in this type is of greater longitudinal than transverse extent; large in size, abounding in angles rather than curves. It possesses neither brilliancy nor transparency of surface, but is slightly inclined to translucency. The labial surface is flat, with more or less decided transverse ridges in the cervical portion. The labial grooves are generally present in the form of well-defined depressions. On account of the angular nature of the tooth, this surface approaches closely to the quadrilateral form. The mesial and distal surfaces are flat, with their margins bold and well defined. The lingual surface also shows the angular nature of the crown in having its marginal ridges squarely set and its developmental grooves definitely outlined. The cutting-edge is rather thin, square, and sharp, the line frequently being imperfectly formed. The mesial and distal angles are both well produced, and the cervical margin, in keeping with the rest of the parts, is inclined to angularity.

**Nervous Type.**—The central incisor common to this temperament is delicate and graceful in outline. The crown is of

medium size, with the length predominating over breadth. The enamel is inclined to transparency, and is of a blue or bluish-gray color, presenting much brilliancy. The labial surface is fairly well rounded, and the labial grooves are present as slightly rounded depressions, which frequently extend well toward the cervical margin, where they gradually disappear. In general outline this surface partakes of the triangular form, the crown of the tooth being broad at the cutting-edge and much constricted at the neck. The mesial and distal surfaces show a convexity in every direction, and the nature of the occlusion is manifest from the decided wedge-shape appearance of the crown providing for a long overbite. Upon the lingual surface but little in the way of detail is to be observed, the entire surface from the cutting-edge to the cervical ridge being smooth and concave. The cuspule previously referred to is occasionally present in this type, breaking the general smoothness of the surface with its prominence. The marginal ridges are poorly defined; the cutting-edge is a sharp, unbroken line; the mesial and distal angles are present in the form of long, graceful curves, rather than definite angles, this being particularly true of the distal angle. The cervical line is decidedly curved, the labial and lingual portions being deeply concave rootward, while the mesial and distal are decidedly convex.

**Sanguineous Type.**—The crown of the central incisor is usually above the average in size, but is well proportioned, abounding in curves and rounded outlines. The enamel is inclined to translucency, particularly near the cutting-edge. The labial surface is smooth and rounded; the depressions formed by the labial grooves are slightly observable, and extend but a short distance from the cutting-edge. The surface is somewhat greater in longitudinal than in transverse extent, and approaches much nearer to a circular form than the corresponding tooth of other types. The mesial and distal surfaces are well rounded, making the point of contact with approximating teeth near the center of the surface. The lingual surface abounds in heavy rounded lines; the marginal and cervical ridges are particularly prominent, diminishing the extent of the lingual fossa. A cuspule is frequently present in the form of a

well-rounded prominence. The cutting-edge is of moderate thickness and slopes away from the center in either direction to assist in forming the rounded mesial and distal angles. The cervical curvature on the labial and lingual surfaces is an unbroken semi-circle, while that of the mesial and distal surfaces is less uniform.

**Lymphatic Type.**—In the central incisor of this typical form the crown is large, but not shapely, and the breadth is equal to, or exceeds, the length. The enamel coloring is muddy or brownish-yellow, and the surface is lacking in brilliancy. The labial surface is flat and smooth, with a faint sign of the labial grooves. The general outline of this surface is that of a circular cone, with the cutting-edge for the base, and the apex formed on the cervical margin. The mesial and distal aspects present a striking contrast to the types previously described, by having a labiolingual diameter greater than that represented between the cervical line and the cutting-edge. These two surfaces are convex in a labiolingual direction only, making the point of contact with approximating teeth an extended surface rather than a single point.

The lingual surface is heavy and bulky, frequently to such a degree as to produce a general convexity rather than a concavity, as found in most typical forms. This surface is frequently broken by one or more longitudinal grooves, but is seldom crossed by transverse lines of any kind. The cutting-edge is barely deserving of the name. Although formed by the free borders of the labial and lingual surfaces, these two planes are so far separated at their incisive margins that the space between them, instead of being an edge, becomes a more or less broadened surface, and one upon which the lower incisors frequently occlude. The line thus formed is straight and direct from the mesial to the distal angle of the crown, both of which are well produced. The cervical curvature is represented by the segment of a much larger circle than that found upon teeth of other types, and the neck of the tooth is heavy and bulky, showing but little constriction at this point.



## UPPER LATERAL INCISOR.



FIG. 60.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, FROM THREE CENTERS, FIRST YEAR AFTER BIRTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, TENTH TO ELEVENTH YEAR.

ERUPTED, SEVENTH TO EIGHTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .34.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .51.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .85.

Like the central incisor, calcification in this tooth begins during the first year after birth, the process taking place in the same manner, from three centers, along the future cutting-edge, and gradually extending in the direction of the root. By the expiration of the third year the cutting-edge and the angles of the crown are fully formed; the fourth year finds the crown calcified to nearly one-half its completed length; by the fifth year the cervical ridge is reached; while the sixth year usually completes the process of coronal calcification. At the close of the seventh year the base of the root is fully outlined, and during the following year about one-eighth of an inch is added to its length, and still greater progress is made during the ninth year, by which time fully three-fourths of the root length has become calcified. During the tenth year the apical end of the root begins to form by a sudden doubling-over of the free calcifying margins, and by the eleventh year the apical foramen is established (Fig. 60). By the above description it will be observed that at the time of eruption the root of this tooth is only calcified to about one-half of its completed length, and the same may be said of the central incisor; but so much time



elapses between the beginning of the eruptive stage and the period at which this phenomenon is completed that the apical foramen is usually established by the time the tooth assumes its permanent position in the jaw.

The crown of the upper lateral incisor, like that of the upper central incisor, presents for examination four surfaces,—labial, lingual, mesial, and distal,—a cervical margin, a cutting-edge, and a mesial and distal angle. The general contour of the crown closely resembles that of the upper central incisor, except that it measures about one-third less from mesial to distal, and is a trifle shorter from the cutting-edge to the cervical line. As in the central incisor, the labial and distal surfaces form a double incline plane, and unite below to form the cutting-edge. The labial side of the incline is convex, while the lingual is concave, but seldom so marked as that found upon the central incisor. The base of the wedge, or double incline, formed by the cervical margin, is correspondingly smaller than that of the crown of the central incisor.

**The Labial Surface of the Crown (Fig. 61).—**This surface of the crown of the upper lateral incisor is more irregular in outline than the corresponding surface of the central incisor. The

*margins* of the surface are the *mesial*, *distal*, *cervical*, and *incisive*. The mesial margin begins at the mesial angle and passes upward with a decided distal inclination to meet the cervical margin. The distal margin is shorter and decidedly more convex than the mesial margin, this variation in outline being still more marked when compared with the corresponding margin of the central incisor. At the cutting-edge these two margins assist in forming the mesial and distal angles of the crown, and by their continuation and union above form the cervical margin.

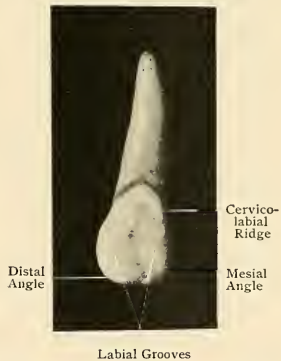


FIG. 61.—UPPER LATERAL INCISOR, LABIAL SURFACE.

The incisive margin is formed by the cutting-edge. Like the central incisor, the four margins of this surface vary greatly in the different types; this is particularly true of the two lateral margins, which at times are found to be in the form of a direct line, or even slightly concave, while in others they are both decidedly convex. This surface of the crown shows a greater general convexity than the labial surface of the central incisor, the cervical portion presenting a curve much more decided than that near the cutting-edge. The *labial grooves* are in all respects similar to those described in connection with the central incisor, and extend from the cutting-edge toward the center of

the surface, where they gradually disappear. Transverse ridges are occasionally found near the cervical portion of the surface.

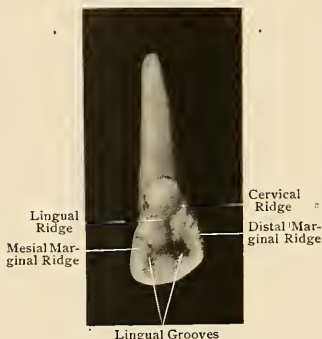


FIG. 62.—UPPER LATERAL INCISOR,  
LINGUAL SURFACE.

**The Lingual Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 62).—This surface of the upper lateral incisor is subject to much variation in form, but presents the same points for examination as the corresponding surface of the central incisor. These consist of the marginal ridges, which are usually more pronounced than those of the central, mak-

ing the concavity or fossa between them small and deep. In some instances the surface will be smooth and flat, with an entire absence of ridges or fossæ. The *distal marginal ridge* is shorter and more bowed than the mesial, and the *cervical ridge* is well marked and proportionately broader and stronger than in the central incisor. In some instances the marginal ridges are but slightly developed, with their cervical ends broadened and separated by a deep fissure, giving the appearance of a terminal fold in the enamel. The cervical ridge is frequently broken by a cuspule, which is usually more pronounced than when found upon the central incisor.

The *lingual fossa* may be present as a smooth, unbroken concavity, or it may be subdivided by a longitudinal ridge, which often exists to such an extent as to force the remaining portions of the fossa well against the marginal ridges, where they will be observed as slight depressions rather than marked concavities.

**The Mesial Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 63).—Viewing the crown from this aspect, the outline is that of an inverted cone or triangle. The *lingual margin* of the surface is well defined, and the angle formed by the union of this surface with the lingual surface is moderately acute. The *labial margin* is well rounded, and passes into the labial surface without a decided line of demarcation. The surface on its upper or cervical third is usually flattened and occasionally concave. At the center, and continuing toward the cutting-edge, it is decidedly convex in every direction, thus producing a prominent point of contact with the distal surface of the central incisor.



FIG. 63. — UPPER LATERAL INCISOR, MESIAL SURFACE.



FIG. 64. — UPPER LATERAL INCISOR, DISTAL SURFACE.

**The Distal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 64).—This surface also shows the characteristic wedge-shape of the crown, and is principally different from the mesial surface in being convex throughout. Near the center it is well rounded and full, providing a point of contact for the mesial surface of the cuspid. The *lingual margin*, while being more decidedly outlined than the labial, is much more rounded than the lingual margin of the mesial surface. From the most prominent point near its center the surface slopes away in every direction, the convexity being most marked near the cutting-edge.

*The Cutting-edge of the Lateral Incisor.*—In the young tooth the cutting-edge presents the three little tubercles common to all incisors, the grooves which divide them passing up over the labial and lin-

gual surfaces and forming the labial and lingual grooves. These soon disappear by wear, usually leaving the cutting-edge in the form of a direct line and connecting the two angles of the crown. Like the central incisor, this margin of the crown may be thin and sharp, or it may be thick and dull.

*The Cervical Margin.*—The line of demarcation between the crown and the root of the tooth resembles so closely that described in connection with the central incisor that it will only be necessary to mention one or two characteristic differences. The lingual side of the line presents a much smaller curve proportionately, and usually extends a little higher in the direction of the root than that represented upon the labial portion. The mesial and distal portions of the line dip well down, decreasing the length of the crown on these surfaces; the margin on the former surface is usually angular and V-shaped, while on the latter it is circular in form.

*The Angles of the Crown.*—The angles of the crown are the mesial and the distal, and are formed in the same manner as the same angles of the central incisor. The mesial angle is generally well produced, in most instances being slightly acute; but when the cutting-edge is thin and frail, the angle is frequently much obliterated by wear. That portion of the crown of the upper lateral incisor which is usually referred to as the distal angle is scarcely worthy of the name. It is usually present as a long curve, which begins near the center of the cutting-edge and extends well up on the distal surface. This characteristic outline is sometimes so pronounced as to completely destroy the cutting-edge, the distal surface being carried forward by a long curve ending in the mesial angle.

*The Neck of the Tooth.*—In this tooth the neck is usually marked by a constriction much more pronounced than that found in the central incisor. On the labial and lingual surfaces it is principally formed by a sudden sloping of the enamel surface rootward, but on the two lateral surfaces it is formed by a flattening or slight concavity of both the crown and the root.

*The Root of the Upper Lateral Incisor.*—The root of this tooth is conic in form, and is much more flattened from

mesial to distal than the root of the central incisor. At its junction with the crown it is circular in form, the labial portion forming the segment of a larger circle than the lingual, this feature being observed throughout its entire length. The flattening of the mesial and distal sides begins immediately above the neck, and gradually increases as the center of the root-length is approached, where it often develops into a slight longitudinal depression. As the apical end of the root is reached, this longitudinal depression gradually disappears, and the root again becomes circular in form. The thickness of the root is about one-third greater from labial to lingual than from mesial to distal, and, while it is generally classed as a straight root, it is frequently provided with a pronounced distal curve near the apical extremity. In some instances it is found with a double mesiodistal curve.

**Bilious Type.**—In this type the lateral incisor is frequently poorly developed, the cutting-edge and distal angle are wanting, the crown being in the form of a single conic cusp, the distal surface meeting the mesial at a point near the mesial angle. This form of crown might be classed as one of malformation, but the fact that it most frequently occurs in this temperament would appear to indicate a normal condition. When the crown takes the form common to incisors, it is of greater longitudinal than transverse extent, the angles are well produced, and the mesial and distal surfaces are flat and almost parallel with each other. The labial surface is flat and is frequently broken by transverse ridges near the cervical portion. The lingual surface presents well-marked outlines and margins, a cus-pule is seldom present, and the lingual fossa is well marked, but not deep. The cutting-edge is thin and sharp, to provide for the overbite, which is rather long. The cervical border is square and angular.

**Nervous Type.**—In this typical form the neck of the tooth is a pronounced feature. The crown is long and narrow, the constriction forming the neck beginning well down on the crown and extending over the cervical line to the surface of the root. The labial surface is convex in every direction and the labial grooves fairly well defined. The mesial surface is convex near

the center and cutting-edge, but often shows a slight concavity on its cervical portion. The distal surface is rounded and smooth. The lingual surface presents a general concavity, a cuspule being more frequently present than in other types. The lingual fossa is deep, and often extends beneath the cervicomarginal ridge in the form of a circular fissure. The cutting-edge is thin and sharp, providing for a long overbite; the mesial angle is pointed and well formed, while the distal is usually much rounded. The cervical line is well arched, forming the segment of a much smaller circle than that seen on the same tooth of other temperaments.

**Sanguineous Type.**—The crown is well proportioned, with the length slightly predominating over breadth, all the surfaces being more or less rounded and smooth, showing the crown to be made up of curves rather than angles. The labial surface presents a graceful convexity throughout; the mesial and distal surfaces are both convex, with their margins poorly defined. The lingual surface shows the rounded nature of the crown in having its fossa and marginal ridges oval and blending one into the other. The cutting-edge is moderately heavy and dull, in keeping with the overbite, which is short. The cervical line is made up of curves rather than angles.

**Lymphatic Type.**—In this type the crown is generally of greater transverse than longitudinal extent. The neck is poorly produced, the crown and root uniting without any marked constriction of the parts. The labial surface is much flattened from mesial to distal, and but slightly convex in the direction of the long axis of the tooth. The mesial and distal surfaces are but little rounded and are nearly parallel with each other, so that the contact with adjoining teeth becomes an extent of surface rather than a single point. The lingual surface is convex above, but as the cutting-edge is approached it becomes flat, but seldom concave. The marginal ridges are not well shown and the lingual fossa is but a slight depression. The angles of the crown are well produced and the cutting-edge thick and blunt, this marginal surface frequently occluding directly upon the opposing lower teeth. The curvature of the cervical line is that of a long circle.



## UPPER CUSPID.



FIG. 65.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, FROM THREE CENTERS, THIRD YEAR AFTER BIRTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, TWELFTH TO THIRTEENTH YEAR.

ERUPTED, TWELFTH TO THIRTEENTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .37.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .68.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, 1.05.

About the third year after birth calcification begins in the central lobe, which is gradually extended laterally, until, at the fourth year it is met by the two lateral lobes, which are somewhat later in beginning, and by the fifth year the three are united, the former eventually establishing the single cusp of the tooth and the latter two the mesial and distal angles. About the sixth year two-thirds of the crown is formed, and by the seventh year the constriction which marks the beginning of the neck of the tooth commences to make its appearance. Between the seventh and eighth year calcification in the crown is completed and the cervical line established, during the following year nearly one-quarter of an inch is added to the length of the root, and by the beginning of the tenth year the root is formed for fully two-thirds of its entire length. Between the twelfth and thirteenth years or at the time of eruption, calcification is completed in the root and the apical foramen established (Fig. 65). In this latter particular the cuspid tooth differs from most of the others in



being completely calcified previous to, or about the time of, its eruption, the eruptive process in this tooth, therefore, differs from that of the other teeth, being fully calcified about the time it makes its appearance through the gum tissue. To reach its final position in the arch the tooth moves bodily downward, the bone filling in behind; while in the incisors, bicuspids, and molars the free calcifying root-extremities remain nearly stationary, the crowns being forced downward as the lime salts are deposited.

**The crown of the upper cuspid** presents for examination four surfaces,—labial, lingual, mesial, and distal,—two margins,—the cervical margin and the cutting-edge,—and a mesial and a distal angle. In general outline it is of the simplest form, resembling the primitive cone-shaped teeth of many fishes. When viewed by looking directly upon the mesial or distal surface, the wedge-shape common to the incisors is observed. The base of the double incline is, however, much broader proportionately than the corresponding measurement of the incisors. Looking at the crown from a labial or lingual direction, its function, as both a penetrating and incising organ, may be observed in the single cusp from which it derives its name. The cusp, which is formed at the expense of the cutting-edge, divides this latter margin into two distinct portions—the *mesial cutting-edge* and the *distal cutting-edge*.

**The Labial Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 66).—The contour of this surface is that of a broken circle more or less perfectly drawn. It is bounded by five margins—mesial, distal, cervical, mesial-incisive, and distal-incisive. The *mesial margin* is rounded from labial to mesial, and slightly convex from the cutting-edge to the cervical line. The *distal margin* is also rounded from labial to distal, presents a greater convexity, and is somewhat shorter from the cutting-edge to the cervical line than the mesial margin. By a continuation and final union of these two lateral margins the *cervical margin* of the surface is formed, while by their union with the cutting-edges the mesial and distal angles of the crown are established. The *mesial-incisive margin* is usually slightly concave near its center, although in some instances it is convex. The *distal incisive margin* responds to the same

description, although the concavity, when present, is nearest the point of the cusp. From the summit of the cusp these two margins slope away to join the mesial and distal angles, the distal incline being about one-fourth longer than the mesial. This surface is generally of greater longitudinal than transverse extent, its greatest mesiodistal diameter being from angle to angle, or at a point immediately above them. The surface is convex in every direction, and is marked by a central longitudinal ridge, usually well defined—the *labial ridge*. Beginning at the summit of the cusp, this ridge is more or less contracted laterally, but as it passes over the surface in the direction of the root it becomes broadened and flattened, and gradually disappears in the cervical portion. Upon either side of this ridge are the *labial grooves*, well defined at their beginning, but which gradually blend into the surface of the crown as they pass rootward. In some instances these grooves are so strongly defined as to form a decided ridge upon the mesial and distal margins of the surface;—these are the *labial marginal ridges*.

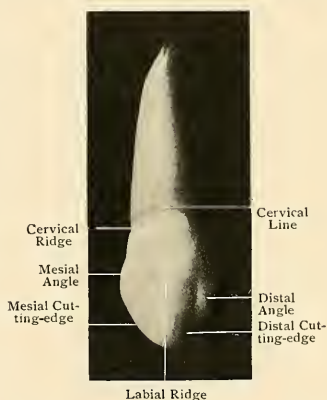


FIG. 66.—UPPER CUSPID, LABIAL SURFACE.

The labial ridge and the two labial grooves mark the developmental lines of the crown, the former resulting from the middle lobe, which in this tooth is much the largest of the three, while the latter denotes the line of junction between the middle and the lateral lobes.

**The Lingual Surface of the Crown (Fig. 67).**—This surface presents nearly the same general outlines as the labial, with the exception of the cervical portion, which is more constricted, tending to produce an oblong or egg-shape. It usually abounds in well-defined ridges and depressions, giving to the

tooth a rugged and strong appearance. There is but little general concavity to the surface in passing from the point of the cusp to the root, while it may be flat, concave, or convex. As in the incisors, the margins of this surface are formed by three marginal ridges and by the cutting-edge. The *mesio-marginal ridge* is commonly a well-defined fold of enamel, beginning at the mesial angle and passing upward in the direction of the root, where it unites with the cervicomarginal ridge. It is sometimes quite narrow and rather sharply outlined; at others,

it extends well toward the center of the surface in the form of a well-rounded fold. The *distomarginal ridge*, which is somewhat shorter than the mesial, begins at the distal angle and passes rootward to meet the cervical ridge. It is well rounded in every direction, but seldom so well produced as the mesial. The *cervicomarginal ridge*, which is formed by a continuation or union of the two former, nearly always partakes of their nature, except when broken by the presence of a cuspule, which

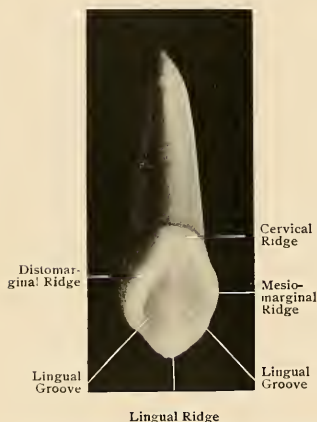


FIG. 67.—UPPER CUSPID, LINGUAL SURFACE.

is frequently found upon this tooth (Fig. 70). This small cusp of enamel may be bounded on one or both sides by a fissure, which often extends well under the cervicomarginal ridge, and sometimes completely separates it from the two lateral ridges. Passing through the center of the surface from the summit of the cusp to the base of the cervicomarginal ridge is the *lingual ridge*, which corresponds to the labial ridge of the labial surface. This ridge is usually well produced at or near the point of the cusp, and may continue so throughout, but most frequently becomes reduced in size near the center of the surface. Be-

tween this ridge and the mesio- and disto-marginal ridges are two longitudinal depressions—the *lingual grooves*.

**Mesial Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 68).—In general outline this surface resembles that of the central incisor, excepting that the wedge shape which it describes is more heavily set and blunt, with the surface extending beyond the base of the cone, in the direction of the root, to the extent of about one-third of its entire length. In some cases the base of the cone will be on a line with the cervical margin. The lower two-thirds of the surface, or that nearest the mesial angle, is convex in every direction; this convexity gradually disappears as the center is approached, beyond which point it is much flattened, usually ending in a slight concavity at the cervical margin. When looking directly upon this surface, its margins will be found within the profile lines, these being represented by the labial ridge anteriorly, and by the lingual and cervical ridges posteriorly. The *margins*, three in number, are the *labial*, which is well rounded and poorly defined; the *lingual*, more or less distinctly outlined and somewhat irregular; and the *cervical*, which is represented by the extent of the enamel covering of the crown; this latter margin being concave in the direction of the root. The most prominent point of this surface serves as a point of contact for the distal surface of the lateral incisor, the extent of contact being much influenced by the type of tooth, but in the cuspid this is usually a single point rather than an extent of surface.

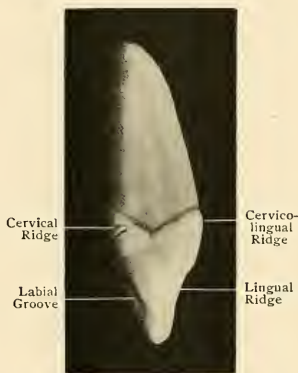


FIG. 68.—RIGHT UPPER CUSPID, MESIAL SURFACE.

**The Distal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 69).—This surface in many respects is similar to the mesial, particularly in its general outline. The extent of surface is somewhat less and the

convexity much more marked than that of the mesial surface. The position of the distal angle, which is the lower boundary of the surface, being much nearer the cervical line, makes this surface about one-third shorter than the mesial surface. The lateral margins of the surface, which are also within the profile lines, differ from those of the mesial in being more clearly defined. The *cervical margin* differs from that of the mesial surface by having a concavity with much less depth. As stated above, the surface is decidedly more convex than the mesial, the point of contact for the mesial surface of the first bicus-

pid being almost in the center. Near the cervical margin the surface is inclined to flatness, and frequently concave.

*The Cutting-edge, or Cusp.*—As inferred in the beginning of this description, the cuspid tooth is both an incising and a penetrating organ, the latter function being provided for by the presence of the single cusp, which divides the cutting-edge into an anterior or mesial portion and a posterior or distal portion.

The *mesial cutting-edge*

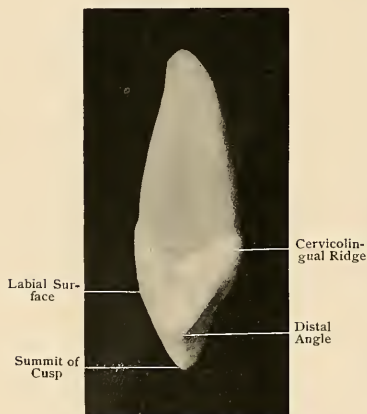


FIG. 69.—LEFT UPPER CUSPID, DISTAL SURFACE.

begins at the summit of the cusp and slopes away to meet the mesial angle, which it assists in forming. The outline of this edge is usually gracefully curved and unbroken unless permanently crossed by the labial groove. The *distal cutting-edge* is generally somewhat longer than the mesial. Immediately after leaving the summit of the cusp it may be slightly concave; but beyond this point it is well rounded, until it reaches the distal angle, into which it gradually disappears. This edge is also frequently broken by the labial groove. In its entirety the cutting-edge is subject to the same variations as

those of the incisors—*i. e.*, it may be thin and sharp, or it may be thick and blunt.

**The Cusp.**—The single cusp from which this tooth derives its name is formed by the union of the labial ridge, the lingual ridge, and the mesial and distal cutting-edges. The summit of the cusp is constant in its position, always being in a direct line with the long axis of the tooth, whether it be viewed from a mesial or a lingual direction.

**The Cervical Line.**—To describe this fully would be to repeat what has already been said in connection with the incisor teeth. This enamel margin differs in one particular only from that of the incisors, and that variation is not a constant one—the lingual portion is frequently extended in the direction of the root, producing a short, positive curve at that point.

**The Angles of the Crown.**—Owing to the rounded nature of the majority of cuspid crowns, the term angle, as applied to its free extremities, is almost a misnomer, and can only be considered as assisting in description. The mesial angle, which is formed by the union of the marginal ridges of the labial and lingual surfaces with the mesial cutting-edge, is seldom a well-produced angle, usually being rounded in every direction. The distal angle, which is formed in a manner similar to the mesial, is somewhat more deserving of the name, both the labio- and linguo-marginal ridges frequently presenting angularity. The position of the distal angle is usually well toward the center of the crown, and occasionally above this point, and, although it may descend, it is seldom found on a line with the mesial angle.

**The Neck of the Upper Cuspid.**—This may or may not be a distinctive feature of the cuspid tooth, although when viewed

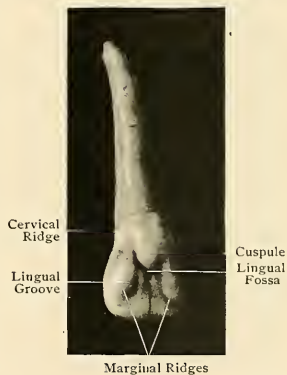


FIG. 70.—UPPER CUSPID, LINGUAL SURFACE, STRONGLY DEVELOPED.



from a labial aspect, the lateral flare or bulging of the crown gives the appearance of a decided constriction between the crown and the root; but, when examined from the mesial surface, this constricted appearance is absent, the contour of the crown passing into that of the root, with the cervical line alone marking the extent of each. The tooth at this point is well rounded anteriorly, flattened laterally, and again rounded posteriorly, the latter forming the segment of a smaller circle than that of the labial surface.

**The Root.**—This tooth possesses the largest and longest root of any of the teeth, in the latter respect usually exceeding the central incisor by about one-third, and the lateral incisor by one-

fourth or more. Like the base of the crown, it is rounded on the labial and lingual surfaces, and is flattened laterally, this form usually being continued throughout its entire length. It gradually diminishes in size from the neck to the apex, and in its entirety forms a perfect cone. On the mesial and distal sides it is not only much flattened, but is frequently provided with a longitudinal depression, which is most marked near the center of its length. In some instances this root is possessed of a slight distal curve, which may be gradual from the base to the apex, or it may exist in a more positive way by a sudden distal curve near its apical extremity.



FIG. 71.—BILIOUS TYPE,  
DISTAL SURFACE.

**Bilious Type** (Fig. 71).—The rounded outlines common to the cuspid tooth are less pronounced in this type than in any other, and instead of curves, angles are present. The crown is above the average size, length predominating over breadth, the cusp well formed, and the angles strong. The labial surface is often crossed by a number of transverse ridges near the cervical portion, the labial ridge is bold, as are also the labio-marginal ridges. The mesial and distal surfaces possess no distinguishing features, but the lingual, like the labial, shows the angular nature of the crown in having its margins and ridges squarely set.



A cuspsule is more frequently found in this type than any other, and sometimes reaches down to a point corresponding to the transverse center of the crown. The neck is moderately well produced, and the cervical line decidedly V-shaped on its lateral portions, while on the labial and lingual it takes the form of a broken circle. The cutting-edges are rather heavy and square, and are nearly of equal length. In this temperament the cuspid tooth often partakes of the form described in connection with the lateral incisor of the same type—*i. e.*, the absence of the cutting-edge and one or both angles, making the crown a perfect cone.

**Nervous Type** (Fig. 72).—The crown is of much greater longitudinal than transverse extent, the outlines oval and gracefully formed, and the neck is much constricted from mesial to distal, being made so by the lateral flare of the body of the crown, which is a distinctive feature of this type. The labial ridge is well formed near the summit of the cusp, but usually disappears near the center of the surface. The labiomarginal ridges are seldom present, and the surface in general is convex and smooth. The mesial and distal surfaces show a pronounced convexity near the angles, and often a slight concavity between this point and the cervical line. The lingual surface, while generally showing all the descriptive lines, may be considered smooth; it is convex from mesial to distal, and slightly concave in the direction of the long axis of the tooth. The cusp is long and penetrating, the distal cutting-edge is much longer than the mesial, and both are inclined to sharpness. The cervical line on the labial and lingual surfaces is deeply arched, frequently giving to the gingival margin a receded appearance.



FIG. 72.—NERVOUS TYPE, LABIAL SURFACE.

**Sanguineous Type** (Fig. 73).—The crown in this type abounds in long curves, the longitudinal and transverse extents are nearly equal, the angles, owing to their circular form, are barely deserving the name, while the cusp and cutting-edges are outlined by one long, oval sweep. The labial surface is

prominent and convex, and the developmental grooves are fairly well shown. The mesial and distal surfaces show a moderate general convexity, while the lingual abounds in well-rounded ridges and borders. The constriction forming the neck of the tooth is moderate. The cervical line is in the form of perfectly arched curves, forming on the labial surface the segment of a circle corresponding to the circumference of the crown of the tooth.



FIG. 73.—SANGUINEOUS TYPE, DISTAL SURFACE.

**Lymphatic Type.**—In this type the crown is usually greater in its transverse than in its longitudinal measurement; it is lacking in graceful outline, and may best be described as being short, thick, and heavy set. None of the surfaces abound in descriptive lines, although transverse ridges are sometimes present on the labial surface near the cervix. Both the labial and lingual surfaces are convex in every direction, while the mesial and distal are inclined to flatness. The cusp is heavy and blunt, and the cutting-edges, which are nearly of equal length, are thick and dull. The mesial and distal

angles are well produced. The cervical line is almost a direct line encircling the neck of the tooth, the segmental form on the labial surface being that of a much larger circle than any of those previously described. The neck is thick and heavy, and the roots generally short.

## UPPER FIRST BICUSPID.

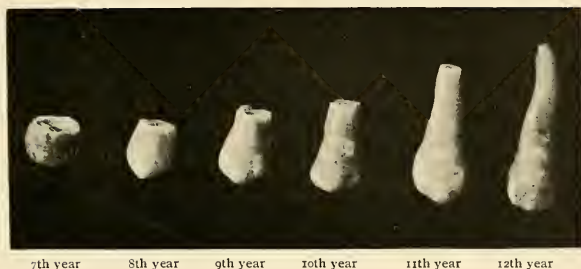


FIG. 74.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, FROM FOUR CENTERS, ABOUT THE FOURTH YEAR.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, ELEVENTH TO TWELFTH YEAR.

ERUPTED, TENTH TO ELEVENTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .32.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .48.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .80.

This tooth, although presenting a crown of vastly different contour, is developed by a process almost identical with that of the incisors and cuspids. As the name implies, it is made up of two cusps, one forming the buccal and the other the lingual half of the crown. Calcification in the buccal cusp is from three centers and begins about the fourth year, the central lobe first receiving the lime salts. During the following year the two lateral lobes begin to calcify, soon followed by a union of the three, thus completing the margins and summit of the cusp. Unlike the incisors, but corresponding to the cuspid, the middle lobe is much the largest of the three, frequently forcing the developmental (buccal) grooves well toward the angles of the crown. The development of the lingual cusp corresponds to the development of the cervical ridge on the incisors and cuspids, except that it has a separate center of calcification, and a cusp almost as large as the buccal results. Between the fifth and sixth year union between the two cusps takes place, the line of confluence being permanently recorded by a well-

defined groove, which traverses the crown from mesial to distal. This groove, although forced to occupy a different position, corresponds with the lingual groove of the incisors and cuspids. After the union of the cusps the process of calcification is continued into the body of the crown, and by the seventh year it is more than half completed. The eighth year usually finds the crown fully formed and the base of the root or roots outlined. As this tooth is generally provided with two roots, the first indication of bifurcation will be observed between the eighth and ninth year by a filling-in near the center of the mesial and distal walls, which finally become united by a thin septum of dentine or cementum. After this period the roots calcify separately, and by the middle of the ninth year about one-third of their length is

established. During the following year, or at about the time of eruption, the development of the roots has extended to about three-fourths of their completed length, and between the eleventh and twelfth year, or at a time corresponding to that of the crown assuming its final position in the arch, calcification is completed and the apical foramen formed (Fig. 74).

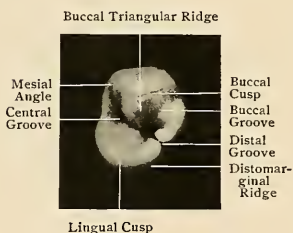


FIG. 75.—UPPER FIRST BICUSPID, OCCLUSAL SURFACE.

**The Crown of the Upper First Bicuspid** presents for examination five surfaces—buccal, lingual, mesial, distal, and occlusal. In general, the contour of the crown is irregularly quadrilateral, being about one-third greater in its buccolingual measurement than from mesial to distal. It is somewhat flattened from mesial to distal, but rounded on its buccal and lingual surfaces.

**The Occlusal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 75).—The contour of the crown is best observed by a view of this surface, which may be described as trapezoidal or irregularly quadrilateral in form. The four margins of the surface are those which represent the four lateral surfaces,—the buccal, lingual, mesial, and distal,—the latter two being in the form of well-

defined ridges—the *mesio-* and *disto-marginal ridges*. The buccal margin is formed by the mesial and distal inclines of the buccal cusp; it has a slight buccal convexity, and at its union with the proximate surfaces assists in forming the mesial and distal angles of the crown. The distal half of this margin is usually somewhat longer than the mesial, and the distal angle is less pronounced than the mesial. The lingual margin presents a much greater convexity than the buccal, but the curve formed is the segment of a much smaller circle. As in the buccal margin, the distal half of this margin is the longest, but unlike the former, its free extremities pass into the mesial and distal margins without producing angles. The mesio- and disto-marginal ridges are strong folds of enamel which arise from the mesial and distal angles and converge slightly as they pass to the lingual, where they are gradually lost in the lingual margin.

**The Cusps** (Fig. 75).—These are two in number, and are named, in accordance with their location, buccal and lingual. The *buccal cusp* is the larger and longer of the two. From the summit of this cusp four ridges descend—one in a mesial direction, forming the mesial cutting-edge of the crown; one in a distal direction, forming the distal cutting-edge; one to the buccal surface, the *buccal ridge*; and a fourth, the *buccal triangular ridge*, descends the central incline. The mesial and distal ridges enter into the formation of the mesial and distal angles at their extremities; the latter is slightly longer than the former, and both are frequently broken near the center by the grooves of development—the *buccal grooves*. The buccal ridge may be well developed and extend almost to the cervical line, or it may be slight and disappear near the center of the surface. The buccal triangular ridge usually ends somewhat abruptly in the central groove, but in some instances it is continued and joins a similar ridge from the lingual cusp, this union forming the *transverse ridge*. The triangular ridge often bifurcates near the center of its incline, and is continued in two distinct but smaller ridges. The *lingual cusp* is much less angular than the buccal; the apex is usually rounded, while the descending ridges are generally three in number instead of four. The mesial and distal ridges are nearly of the same length, and pass without interruption into

the mesio- and disto-marginal ridges. The triangular ridge is less clearly defined than its fellow of the buccal cusp, and it is not unusual for it to be entirely wanting. The lingual aspect of the cusp is smooth and rounded, presenting nothing in the form of a ridge in correspondence with the buccal ridge of the buccal cusp. Like the incisors and cuspids, the summits of these cusps are usually in a direct line with the long axis of the tooth.

The *developmental grooves*, all of which are observed upon the occlusal surface, are the central, mesial, distal, two triangular, and two buccal. The central groove is the most marked, is deeply sulcate, and extends through the center of the surface from mesial to distal, ending just within the two marginal ridges in two irregularly formed depressions or pits—the *mesial* and *distal pits*. This groove marks the line of union between the buccal and lingual lobes. The mesial and distal grooves are not always well defined, but may usually be observed as fine lines passing over the central portion of the mesio- and disto-marginal ridges. The mesio- and disto-triangular grooves begin in the mesial and distal pits, and pass in the direction of the mesial and distal angles, where they are either lost, or may be traced as slight depressions passing over the buccal ridges near the angles, and they may further continue over the buccal surface in the direction of the root. These two grooves, together with the mesial and distal above referred to, form the outlines of the mesiobuccal and distobuccal developmental lobes. The buccal grooves will be described in connection with the buccal surface. Supplemental grooves are seldom found in connection with the buccal half of the occlusal surface, but are occasionally present on the central incline of the lingual cusp.

**The Buccal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 76).—In many respects this surface resembles the corresponding or labial surface of the cuspid tooth. It is bounded by four margins—occlusal, mesial, distal, and cervical. The occlusal half of the surface is formed of the buccal cusp, and is cone-shaped, while the cervical half is irregularly quadrilateral in form. The extent of surface from the cervical line to the point of the cusp is usually about one-third greater than the greatest mesiodistal diameter, which is represented by a line drawn from the mesial to the dis-



tal angle. The form shown is that of a general convexity, the summit of which is surmounted by a longitudinal ridge—the *buccal ridge*. This ridge, which is formed from the central developmental lobe, is most pronounced near the occlusal margin, and gradually disappears near the center of the surface. Upon either side of the buccal ridge are two grooves—the *buccal grooves*—which denote the line of union between the central and the two lateral lobes, and beyond these are the angles of the crown. The buccal ridge springs from the buccal cusp, the summit of which is generally in a direct line with the long axis of the tooth;

when there is a deviation from this the summit is usually thrown a little to the mesial, resulting in a reduction of the length of the mesial cutting-edge.

As previously stated, the greatest mesiodistal diameter of the surface is on a line with the angles of the crown; this measurement is much reduced at the cervical line, so that the point of contact with adjoining teeth is thrown near the occlusal margins of the crown. This variation in the transverse measurement also results in what is commonly referred to as the “bell shape” of the crown. The cervical margin of the surface is fairly well arched,

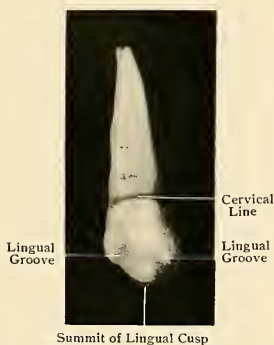


FIG. 77.—UPPER FIRST BICUSPID,  
LINGUAL SURFACE.

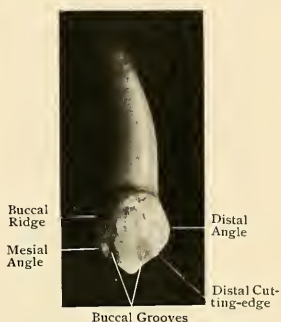


FIG. 76.—UPPER FIRST BICUSPID,  
BUCCAL SURFACE.

but seldom to such a degree as the corresponding margin upon the incisors and cuspids.

**The Lingual Surface of the Crown (Fig. 77).**—This surface

is smooth and decidedly convex, the absence of strongly developed grooves and ridges contributing to the former fact. Like the buccal surface, its greatest transverse measurement is at the base of the cusp in which it terminates. The extent of the surface is about one-third less than that of the buccal, and its occluding and cervical margins are alone well defined, the mesiodistal convexity passing so gradually into these respective surfaces that a positive line of distinction can scarcely be recognized. In passing from the cervical line to the occlusal margin, the surface is rapidly carried toward the center of the crown.

The cervical margin of this surface is usually in the form of a direct line encircling the neck, but occasionally presents a slight concavity in the direction of the root.

**The Mesial Surface of the Crown (Fig. 78).**—This surface of the crown has three of its borders well defined; these are the buccal, the occlusal, and the cervical, the remaining or lingual margin passing so gradually into the lingual surface that

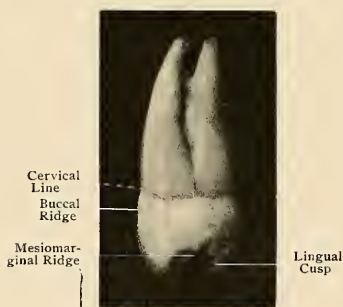


FIG. 78.—UPPER FIRST BICUSPID, MESIAL SURFACE.

no positive line of demarcation can be given. The buccal margin extends from the mesial angle to the cervical line, and invariably presents a slight buccal inclination, thus increasing the width of the surface on its cervical portion. The occlusal margin is formed by the mesiomarginal ridge, and by a portion of the ridge descending from the lingual cusp. It is irregularly V-shaped, and in many instances is broken in the center by the mesial groove. The cervical margin differs from those of the incisors and cuspids, nearly always being in the form of a straight line from buccal to lingual. The surface in general is flattened, but shows a slight general convexity near the occlusal margin, and frequently a slight concavity immediately below the cervical line, this form placing the point of contact with the distal surface

of the cuspid near the occlusal margin. The surface is occasionally divided into a buccal and a lingual portion by the mesial groove, which may extend to the cervical line, but which generally disappears near the center of the surface. The buccal half of the surface which is formed from the mesial developmental lobe is inclined to angularity, while the lingual half is decidedly rounded, particularly in the direction of the occlusal margin.

**The Distal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 79).—In general, this surface resembles the mesial, being flattened and bounded by three more or less distinct margins. The slight buccolingual convexity is not confined to the occlusal portion of the surface, but is inclined to extend to the cervical margin, in this particular being at variance with the mesial surface. This surface passes into the lingual by a much longer curve than that shown on the mesial surface.

**The Angles of the Crown.**—These are two in number and, as in the teeth previously described, are named, according to their location, *mesial* and *distal*.

The mesial angle is formed by the union of the mesiomarginal ridge and mesial cutting-edge. It is primarily the product of the mesial developmental lobe, and is usually well produced. The distal angle, which is formed in a like manner, is inclined to be more rounded.

**The Neck of the Tooth.**—In most typical forms the neck of the upper first bicuspid is well defined, particularly upon the mesial and distal surfaces. Viewing the tooth from a buccal aspect, the neck is a distinctive feature, but when studied from the mesial or distal sides, the constriction is scarcely observed, this being particularly the case if the tooth has but a single root. In general, the neck partakes of the contour of the crown, being

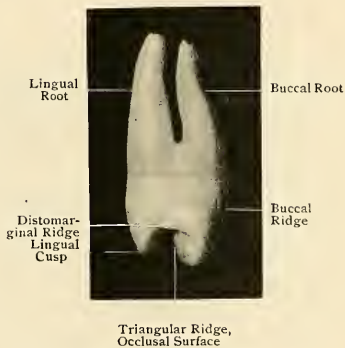


FIG. 79.—UPPER FIRST BICUSPID, DISTAL SURFACE.

convex on the buccal and lingual, and flattened and frequently slightly concave on the mesial and distal.

**The Roots of the Upper First Bicuspid.**—This tooth is usually developed with two roots, sometimes with only one, and in rare instances it may have three. When two roots are present, one is above the buccal and the other above the lingual half of the crown, and are named, according to their location, as *buccal* and *lingual*. In general form the two roots are quite similar, but the buccal is usually a trifle longer than the lingual. They taper off to a slender apex, and are inclined to curve in various directions near their extremities. The point of



FIG. 80.—TYPES OF BICUSPIDS.

bifurcation is frequently some distance above the neck, so that the tooth may be said to possess a single root with two branches. Below the bifurcation the root assumes the form of the neck or cervical portion of the crown, but as the bifurcation is approached, the mesial and distal sides present a longitudinal groove, which gradually increases in depth until the single root becomes separated. The curves of the root-branches above referred to are, in the buccal branch, first to the buccal and then to the lingual; while the lingual branch first shows a slight lingual inclination immediately above the point of separation, fol-

lowed by a gentle buccal curve as the apical end is reached. In some cases the bifurcation begins immediately above the neck of the tooth; in others it may occur in the apical third; while a third class is represented by the two roots being united throughout their entire length by a thin septum of dentine and cementum, or, as occasionally happens, by a layer of cementum alone. In this latter instance each root is provided with a distinct canal and foramen. When the tooth has but a single root, it is much flattened from mesial to distal, the flatness being slightly broken by an inclination to convexity. The four surfaces usually converge toward the apical end, which is oblong from buccal to lingual, and generally provided with a slight distal curve. The presence of three roots is so rare that the condition might be classed as a malformation; but when they do exist, two are usually attached to the buccal and one to the lingual half of the crown, with the point of separation near the neck of the tooth.

**Bilious Type** (Fig. 81).—

The upper first bicuspid of this temperamental type is marked by a crown of moderate length, the neck well pronounced, and the cusps and angles marked by angular outlines. The buccal ridge is strongly defined, and the buccal grooves, which extend well up on the buccal surface, cross the mesial and distal cutting-edges, separating them into two distinct parts. The cusps are long and penetrating, and are nearly of equal length, assisting to form the firm and well-locked occlusion common to this type. The mesial and distal surfaces are nearly parallel with each other; they are seldom convex, so that the approximating teeth are in contact over an extent of surface rather than a single point. The cervical line is but little curved.

**Nervous Type** (Fig. 82).—In this temperament the bell-



FIG. 81.—BILIOUS TYPE, DISTAL SURFACE.

shaped crown is strongly observed, the crown being long and the tooth much constricted at its neck. The extreme length of the buccal cusp, and the marked cervical constriction, produce an appearance in the buccal surface resembling the labial surface of the cuspid tooth. The developmental grooves are finely outlined, and the cusps long and penetrating, usually being more pronounced than in any other class. The cutting-edges are sharp and inclined to angularity; the mesial and distal surfaces are convex near their occlusal margins, but near the cervical line a pronounced concavity is observed, which is continued upon the corresponding root-surfaces. This formation forces

the point of contact with adjoining teeth well toward the occlusal surface, and results in an extensive V-shaped interproximate space. The cervical line is sharply and gracefully formed, the curvature being well arched.



FIG. 82.—NERVOUS TYPE, BUCCAL SURFACE.

**Sanguineous Type.**—The typical upper first bicuspid of this class is provided with a crown well proportioned, its length being somewhat greater than its breadth, but about equal to its buccolingual measurement. The buccal surface is seldom broken by the buccal grooves, and is strongly convex in every direction. The lingual surface is much more rounded than the same surface of other types. The mesial and distal surfaces are

usually smoothly convex, with an occasional slight concavity immediately below the cervical line. Upon the occlusal surface the grooves are rounded and obscure, rather than sharp and well defined, and the cusps, much less pronounced than in either of the types previously described, are rounded and smooth; this latter fact is particularly true of the lingual cusp, which is usually much smaller than the buccal. The cutting-edges of the buccal cusp are scarcely deserving of the name, being broad and rounded throughout. The form of the mesial and distal surfaces above described provides for a point of contact near the center of each surface, leaving a slight interproximate space both above and below this point.



**Lymphatic Type.**—An examination of the upper first bicuspid of the lymphatic type results in finding a tooth vastly different from any of those previously described. The length of the crown from the cervical line to the point of the cusp is less than either the mesiodistal or buccolingual measurements. In general appearance it is lacking in symmetry, or poorly proportioned. The buccal surface presents a gradual convexity from mesial to distal, and seldom has the buccal ridge well developed. The lingual surface is smoothly convex and passes off into the lingual root without the interposition of a decided neck. The mesial and distal surfaces are flattened and sparingly convex, and are nearly parallel with each other, so that the contact with adjoining teeth is inclined to be distributed over the entire surface, leaving little or no interproximate space. The cusps are short, flat, and rounded, and the occlusal surface much flattened in general, corresponding with the nature of the occlusion, which is loose and wandering. The developmental grooves and ridges are fairly well shown, while the cutting-edges and angles of the crown are smooth and rounded. The neck is less pronounced in this type than in any other, the curvature of the cervical line is very slight, the root is short and heavy set, frequently passing well up toward the apex before bifurcating.

## UPPER SECOND BICUSPID.



7th year

8th year

9th year

10th year

11th year

12th year

FIG. 83.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, FROM FOUR CENTERS, ABOUT THE FIFTH YEAR.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, ELEVENTH TO TWELFTH YEAR.

ERUPTED, ELEVENTH TO TWELFTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .29.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .55.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .84.

The process of development in this tooth is identical with that of the first bicuspid, calcification in the buccal half of the crown taking place in one central and two lateral lobes, while the lingual half is developed from a single center. The calcifying process is about one year later than that in the first bicuspid, the summit of the buccal cusp receiving its lime salts about the beginning of the fifth year. During the following six months calcification begins in the lateral lobes, and also in the lingual lobe. By the sixth year the occlusal surface and a portion of the crown are completed by a union of the various lobes, and at seven years the crown is calcified for more than two-thirds of its completed length. Between the eighth and ninth year the contour of the crown is established, and the neck of the tooth and outline of the root-base formed. At the tenth year about one-third of the root-length is formed, and during the following year about  $\frac{1}{5}$  of an inch is added to it. By the eleventh or twelfth year calcification is completed and the apical foramen established (Fig. 83).

This tooth so closely resembles the first bicuspid that a description in detail will be unnecessary; there are, however, a few minor points which are at variance and must be described in order to distinguish one from the other. In general, the tooth is a trifle smaller than the first bicuspid, the cusps are somewhat shorter, and the various ridges less distinct. A distinguishing feature of the occlusal surface is found in the diminished length of the central groove (Fig. 84). This groove, as observed in the first bicuspid, extends from mesial to distal for fully three-fourths of the entire width of the surface; but in the second bicuspid it is diminished by one-third, being thus reduced by the broadened marginal ridges, which force the mesial and distal pits well toward the center. It is not uncommon to find the triangular grooves joining the central groove directly in the center of the

surface, forming a central pit from which may radiate numerous small supplemental grooves and ridges. The summits of both the buccal and lingual cusps are nearer to the mesial than to the distal surface, thus increasing the length of the ridges which descend from them in a distal direction, and decreasing those which pass to the mesial. The buccal surface presents a greater convexity than that of the first bicuspid; the buccal grooves are usually shallow depressions and are frequently entirely wanting, thus giving the buccal ridge the appearance of extending its margins to the angles of the crown. Unlike the first bicuspid, the mesiodistal diameter of the mesial surface

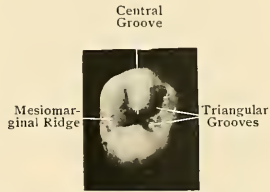


FIG. 84.—SECOND UPPER BICUSPID, OCCLUSAL SURFACE.

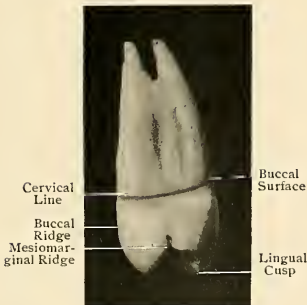


FIG. 85.—UPPER SECOND BICUSPID, MESIAL SURFACE. MOST COMMON FORM.

the first bicuspid, the mesiodistal diameter of the mesial surface

is but little more than the same measurements on the lingual surface. The neck of the tooth is not quite so pronounced as that of the first bicuspid, thus giving less of the bell shape to the crown. One very important difference between this tooth and the first bicuspid is in the root-formation. We have seen that the first bicuspid is generally provided with two roots, while in the second bicuspid a single root is usually present. Like the first bicuspid, there are exceptions to this, the tooth sometimes



FIG. 86.—YOUNG UPPER SECOND BICUSPID, LINGUAL SURFACE.

being provided with two, and in rare instances with three, roots. When the single root is present, it partakes of the form of the crown at its base, being well rounded on the buccal and lingual portions and much flattened on the mesial and distal. The mesiodistal diameter of the root at its base is only about one-third that of the buccolingual measurement, this proportionate size continuing throughout its entire length. In passing from the base to the apex the root is gradually diminished in size, finally ending somewhat abruptly in an oblong extremity. In some instances the apical end is round and pointed, resembling the apex of the incisors and cuspids, but when thus formed the root is usually

curved near its apical third and somewhat extended in length. The mesial and distal surfaces are provided with a well-defined longitudinal concavity, extending from the cervical margin to the apex and dividing the root into a buccal and a lingual portion. This depression is often so decided that the contour of the single root is almost lost, and in its place the appearance is that of two roots similar to those described in the first bicuspid. The length of the root is usually a little greater than that of the first bicuspid, but the crown being a trifle shorter, results in producing a tooth the entire length of which is about equal to that of the first bicuspid.

## UPPER FIRST MOLAR.



FIG. 87.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, FROM FOUR CENTERS, ABOUT ONE MONTH BEFORE BIRTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, NINTH TO TENTH YEAR.

ERUPTED, SIXTH TO SEVENTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .30.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .51.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .81

This tooth being the first of the permanent organs to erupt, it precedes all others in the process of calcification, beginning to receive its lime salts as early as the eighth fetal month. The form of the crown being so entirely different from those previously described, embodies a developmental process which is also different, four distinct lobes being present, one for each cusp, these making their appearance during the first year after birth, closely followed by a completion of the occlusal surface by the union of the free calcifying margins, these lines of union being finally represented by the developmental grooves of the occlusal surface. After the completion of this surface, calcification proceeds in the direction of the base of the crown, and at the beginning of the third year about two-thirds of the crown is formed. During the fifth year the contour of the crown is completed, and at the beginning of the eruptive period, or about the sixth year, the developmental process has extended to the base of the roots, and an effort at trifurcation begun. At seven years the three roots with which the tooth is provided are branching out, each into its own socket, subsequent

development in each being continued as a separate and distinct process. The tenth year more than half completes the calcifying process in the roots, and at the beginning of the eleventh year the apical foramina are established (Fig. 87). Like the first bicuspid, the crown of this tooth presents for examination five surfaces—occlusal, buccal, lingual, mesial, and distal. In general contour it is irregularly quadrilateral, with the angles of the crown more or less rounded, two of its sides convex and two flattened or slightly concave. The length of the crown from the cervical line to the summits of the cusps is about equal to, or slightly less than, its mesiodistal diameter, while the buccolingual measurement is usually a trifle greater than the mesiodistal.

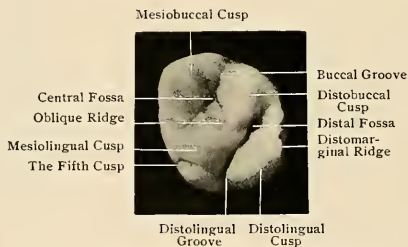


FIG. 88.—UPPER FIRST MOLAR, OCCLUSAL SURFACE.

**The Occlusal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 88).—The coronal outline of this tooth is best studied when looking directly upon this surface, which shows the two convex sides above referred to, represented by the buccal and lingual margins, with the mesial and distal margins more or less flattened. The surface is bounded by these four margins, which are nearly of equal length, the angles formed by their union being more or less rounded, two of which, the mesiobuccal and the distolingual, are acute angles, while the mesiolingual and distobuccal are obtuse angles. The surface is divided into four developmental portions—the mesiobuccal, distobuccal, mesiolingual, and distolingual. Each one of these parts is surmounted by a well-defined point or cusp, which likewise is named in accordance with its location. These



various parts are separated from one another by four developmental grooves—the mesial, the buccal, the distal, and the distolingual. In the center of the triangle formed by the central incline of the mesiobuccal, distobuccal, and mesiolingual cusps is a deep depression,—the *central fossa*,—while near the distal margin is a somewhat similar depression—the *distal fossa*. Traversing the surface in various directions are a number of ridges and supplemental grooves, each of which will be described in turn.

*The Marginal Ridges of the Occlusal Surface.*—These are four in number—the mesial, distal, buccal, and lingual. The *mesiomarginal ridge* is a well-pronounced elevation of enamel which passes from the mesiobuccal angle to the mesiolingual angle. It is slightly concave in the direction of the root, and is broken near the center of its concavity by the mesial groove, upon either side of which are frequently found one or two small points or tubercles, which are formed either by a division of the mesial developmental groove, or by one or more supplemental grooves. These grooves pass over the ridge and are continued for a short distance on the mesial surface. Descending from the mesiobuccal cusp, the ridge passes in a lingual direction to meet the mesiolingual cusp, and in so doing has a slight distal inclination until the mesial groove is reached, after passing which it makes a sweeping distal curve and is lost in the lingual margin. This ridge marks the line of junction between the occlusal surface and the mesial surface. The *distomarginal ridge* in some respects resembles the mesial just described, being concave and ascending in a buccal and lingual direction, with a somewhat rounded outline, to the summits of the distobuccal and distolingual cusps. The depth of the concavity is usually greater than that of the mesial margin, and is frequently crossed near the center by the distolingual groove, frequently so marked as to produce a V-shape to the center of the margin. There are occasionally found upon either side of this central groove one or more small tubercles, corresponding to those of the mesial ridge, but they are less frequent and less pronounced. This ridge forms the line of demarcation between the occlusal surface and the distal surface. The *buccomarginal*

*ridge* begins at the mesiobuccal angle, and gradually ascends to the summit of the mesiobuccal cusp, from which it afterward descends in a distal direction to the buccal groove; continuing, it again ascends the distobuccal cusp, after descending from which it ends in the distobuccal angle. The nature of this ridge is a series of cutting-edges, giving to the cusps their angular nature. Besides the buccal groove, which makes a decided break in the center of its course, the ridge is frequently crossed by numerous small supplemental grooves occurring in various locations and forming a series of minute tubercles; this latter condition is most frequently present in young teeth, and is soon obliterated by wear. The course of this ridge is not that of a direct line from mesial to distal, but in its ascent of the mesiobuccal cusp it is inclined to the buccal; in its descent it presents a corresponding return to the lingual, and the same variations are observed in passing over the distal cusp. The *linguomarginal ridge* begins at the mesiolingual angle of the crown and passes distally to the distolingual angle, differing from the three previously described by being heavy and rounded in its nature, more irregular in outline, and divided nearest to its distal extremity instead of in the center of its length. From the point of beginning it makes a curved ascent to the summit of the mesiolingual cusp; descending from this in a distobuccal direction, it divides, one portion passing to join the triangular ridge of the distobuccal cusp, the two uniting to form the *oblique ridge*, the other portion continuing in the direction of the distolingual cusp, before reaching the base of which it is broken by the distolingual groove. From this groove the ridge makes a sudden and direct ascent to the summit of the distolingual cusp, after passing which it gradually descends in a long curve to join the distomarginal ridge. Like the buccal ridge, it is frequently crossed by numerous supplemental grooves. The ridge forms the lingual margin of the occlusal surface, and gives to the cusps their angularity.

**The Cusps** (Fig. 88).—These are four in number (see also Fig. 89)—the mesiobuccal, distobuccal, mesiolingual, and distolingual.

*The Mesiobuccal Cusp* (Fig. 88).—In extent of surface this is usually the largest cusp, although it is sometimes exceeded by the mesiolingual. From the summit of the cusp three ridges descend—the *buccal ridge* to the buccal surface, the *buccomarginal ridge* making a double descent, and the *mesiobuccal triangular ridge*, the latter descending the central incline and ending in the central fossa. The mesial base of the cusp is frequently crossed by one or more supplemental grooves, which begin at the mesial margin and pass in the direction of the central fossa. The central slope of the cusp contributes to the formation of the central fossa, its extent in this direction being controlled by the mesial and buccal grooves, which together form the mesiobuccal triangular groove.

*The Distobuccal Cusp* (Fig. 88).—This cusp is frequently the smallest in extent of surface, but is usually longer and more pointed than the others. Like the mesiobuccal cusp, three ridges descend from it—the *buccal ridge* to the buccal surface two which spring from the buccomarginal ridge, and the *distobuccal triangular ridge*, which descends obliquely toward the distal center of the surface and joins a similar ridge (previously described) from the mesiolingual cusp, the two forming the oblique ridge. The mesial portion of the base of this cusp assists in forming the central fossa, while a portion of the distal contributes to the formation of the distal fossa. The inner boundary of the cusp is formed by the buccal groove, the distal groove, and by a portion of the distolingual groove.

*The Mesiolingual Cusp* (Fig. 88).—As above stated, this cusp is frequently the largest in extent of surface, and is somewhat rounded, with its summit poorly defined. The ridges which descend from it correspond in name and number to those of the buccal cusps, the *linguomarginal ridge* making a double descent, the *mesiolingual ridge* descending to the lingual surface, while the central incline is marked by the *mesiolingual triangular ridge*, which ends in the central fossa. Toward the mesial portion of the cusp one or more small ridges are frequently present, extending from the marginal ridge to the mesial groove. The distal descent of the marginal ridge is bifurcated, one portion making a sweeping curve and joining

the transverse ridge from the buccal cusp, forming the oblique ridge previously referred to, the other portion passing in a distal direction and ending at the distolingual groove. The central incline of this cusp forms the lingual side of the central fossa, and its boundaries are outlined by the mesial, distal, and distolingual grooves.

*The Distolingual Cusp* (Fig. 88).—This cusp is usually the smallest of the four; it is triangular in outline, with the summit nearest the mesiolingual portion. The ridges which descend from this cusp are only two in number, one passing in a mesial direction and forming a portion of the linguomarginal ridge, the other passing to the distal, with a gradual buccal curve, to join the distomarginal ridge. Of the two remaining inclines, one looks in a distolingual direction, presenting a surface which is smooth and rounded; the other, sloping by a broad expanse in a mesiobuccal direction, ending in the distolingual groove, and also assisting to form the distal fossa. This latter incline is often crossed by small supplemental grooves, which take a winding course from the base to the summit of the incline. The inner margin or outline of the cusp is formed by the distolingual groove.

*The Fifth Cusp* (Fig. 89).—Although usually referred to as possessing but four cusps, this tooth is frequently developed with five, the additional lobe being situated on the lingual side of the mesiolingual cusp, about midway between its summit and the neck of the tooth. When present, it is distinctly separate from the main cusp by a well-developed groove—the *mesiolingual groove*. Both the cusp and the groove may be more or less developed, the former in some instances assuming dimensions corresponding to that of the distolingual cusp, and the latter sometimes being as well marked as the distolingual groove. When thus pronounced, the groove begins near the center of the mesial surface, and passes obliquely toward the summit of the mesiolingual cusp, before reaching which it makes an abrupt turn rootward, and joins the lingual terminal of the distolingual groove, this union frequently resulting in a well-defined pit—the *lingual pit*. This cusp, as usually found, is small and apparently without function. When occurring on the tooth

of one side, it is usually present on the corresponding tooth of the opposite side. It is seldom present on any but the upper first molar.

**The Fossæ and Grooves of the Occlusal Surface** (Figs. 88 and 89).—The fossæ are two in number—central and distal. The *central fossa* occupies a position near the center of the surface, and is formed by the central incline of the mesiobuccal, distobuccal, and mesiolingual cusp, which usually give it a three-sided form. Connecting the three sides of the fossa, and in a measure assisting in its construction, is the mesiomarginal ridge and the oblique ridge. The depth of this fossa, as well as that of the distal, is of course regulated by the length of the

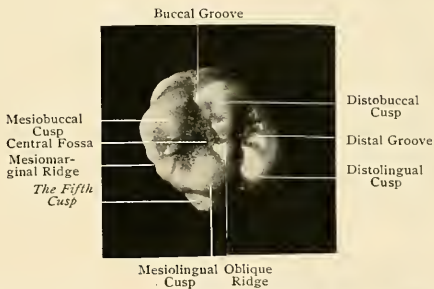


FIG. 89.—UPPER FIRST MOLAR, OCCLUSAL SURFACE, STRONGLY DEVELOPED, SHOWING PRESENCE OF FIFTH CUSP.

cusps, which in turn is much influenced by the temperamental type of the tooth. The bottom of the fossa is deeply marked by two of the grooves of development—the *mesial groove* and the *buccal groove*. The former begins on the mesial surface, passes over the mesiomarginal ridge, and continues in an irregular line to the bottom of the fossa; the latter, beginning near the center of the buccal surface, enters the fossa by crossing the buccomarginal ridge near the center of its length, and also ends in the *central pit* of the central fossa. As previously referred to, the union of these two grooves forms the *mesio-buccal triangular groove*. From the central pit of this fossa another groove is given off—the *distal groove*. It is usually well

defined at its beginning, but as it passes over the oblique ridge it is generally partly obliterated, although occasionally being so marked as to divide this ridge. The *distal fossa* is much smaller than the central, and is of an entirely different form. Its walls are principally formed by the distolingual incline of the oblique ridge, and the mesiobuccal incline of the distolingual cusp ; a portion of the distomarginal ridge and the distal incline of the distobuccal cusp also assist in its formation. Like the central fossa, its sides are more or less irregular, from the presence of various grooves and ridges in its vicinity. The greatest length

of the fossa is in a distolingual direction, and it is traversed by a deep developmental groove—the *distolingual groove*. When the distal groove crosses the oblique ridge, it usually extends to the bottom of this fossa.

### The Buccal Surface of the Crown (Fig. 90).

—This surface, which is the result of a union between the mesial and distal developmental lobes, may be divided into a mesial and a distal half.

These two portions are

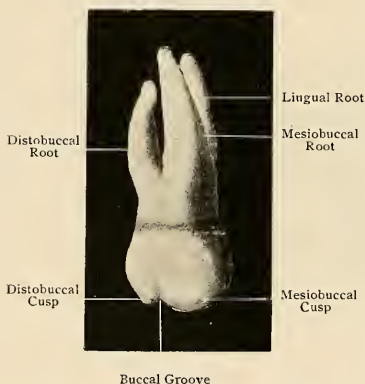


FIG. 90.—UPPER FIRST MOLAR, BUCCAL SURFACE.

quite similar in outline, and are separated from each other by the buccal groove, which usually ends near the center or about half-way to the cervical line in a decided pit—the *buccal pit*. In some instances this groove is continued to the cervical line, or even beyond this to the bifurcation of the roots. Both the mesial and distal half are provided with a longitudinal ridge (the *buccal ridges*)—one the *mesiobuccal ridge* and the other the *distobuccal ridge*. These are similarly formed and descend from the summits of the respective cusps, at which point they are usually well defined, but gradually disappear



as they pass toward the cervical line. The location of the buccal groove being a little to the distal of the center of the surface, gives to the mesial portion a somewhat greater extent than the distal. The margins of the surface, which form an irregular quadrilateral, are the mesial, distal, occlusal, and cervical. The mesial and distal margins are rounded, and gradually converge as they pass rootward, making the average diameter of the surface about one-fourth less at the cervical line than at the base of the cusps. In some instances these margins are slightly concave over their cervical portion, and convex on approaching the occlusal margins; or the mesial may be concave and the distal convex throughout their entire length; in some types they appear as straight lines and are parallel with each other. The occlusal margin is formed by the marginal ridges as they pass over the two buccal cusps, being in the form of the letter W. The cervical margin is usually a direct line drawn around the circumference of the tooth, but in some instances deviating slightly from this. Immediately

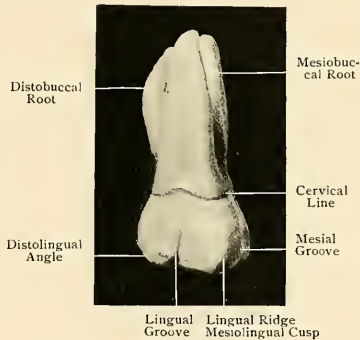


FIG. 91.—UPPER FIRST MOLAR, LINGUAL SURFACE.

below the cervical line, and conforming to its general direction, is a rounded fold of enamel—the *cervical ridge*.

**Lingual Surface of the Crown\*** (Fig. 91).—In correspondence with the buccal surface, this surface is developed from two lobes,—the mesio- and disto-lingual lobes,—the line of union between the two being recorded by a well-defined groove—the *lingual groove*. This groove, which is a continuation of the distolingual groove of the occlusal surface, usually ends near the center of the lingual surface in a well-defined pit—the *lingual pit*—or it

\* When the fifth cusp is present, the anatomy of the mesial half of this surface is somewhat more complex.

may continue rootward and gradually disappear. It is located a little to the distal of the center of the surface, thus making the mesial a trifle larger than the distal portion. The mesial half of the surface is smooth and convex; the lingual incline of the mesiolingual cusp is seldom provided with a well-defined ridge, although usually referred to as the *mesiolingual ridge*. The distal half of the surface is also smooth and rounded, with the mesiodistal convexity much more marked than that of the mesial lobe. The cervical ridge is seldom so pronounced as that of the buccal surface, but the enamel frequently makes a sudden dip at this point to meet the cementum of the root. That portion of the surface immediately below the cervical ridge is smooth and

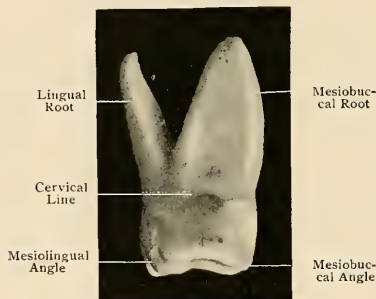


FIG. 92.—UPPER FIRST MOLAR, MESIAL SURFACE.

unbroken, slightly convex in the direction of the long axis of the tooth, and flattened or slightly convex from mesial to distal. The margins of the surface are the mesial, distal, occlusal, and cervical. The surface passes so gradually into the mesial and distal that it is somewhat difficult to define these margins. In general, the margins converge slightly in the direction of the

root. Both the occlusal and cervical margins are similar to the corresponding margins of the buccal surface.

**The Mesial Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 92).—This surface is almost an unbroken plane, being smooth and flat. In some instances it is crossed near the center of its occlusal margin by a continuation of the mesial groove, but this is seldom so pronounced as to divide the surface. The occlusal third of the surface is inclined to a slight general convexity, providing a point of contact for the distal surface of the second bicuspid, but between this and the cervical line there is often a slight concavity. The margins of the surface are the occlusal, buccal,

lingual, and cervical. The first named is formed by the mesio-marginal ridge of the occlusal surface, and is concave in the direction of the root. The buccal and lingual margins are rounded, and, unlike the lateral margins of the buccal and lingual surfaces, diverge in the direction of the roots. The cervical margin is slightly concave in the direction of the occlusal surface, and its length is much greater than that of any other margin of the crown. This surface is more extensive than either the buccal, lingual, or distal, and is about equal to that of the occlusal. When the fifth cusp is present it alters the form of the lingual margin of this surface by crossing it near the center, and extending for some little distance on the face of the surface.

#### The Distal Surface of the Crown (Fig. 93).—

Taken in its entirety, this surface usually presents a general convexity. The lingual half of the surface is usually somewhat more prominent than the buccal, the latter being flattened and frequently slightly concave, particularly near the cervical portion. In some instances the surface is trav-

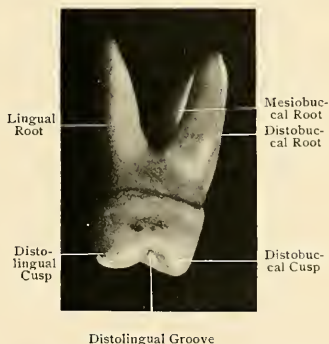


FIG. 93.—UPPER FIRST MOLAR, DISTAL SURFACE.

versed by a continuation of the distolingual groove, which, after passing over the distomarginal ridge, is continued in a longitudinal direction, dividing the surface into two equal parts. Not infrequently this groove, instead of existing as such, is represented as a shallow depression, often extending to the bifurcation of the roots. The margins of the surface are four in number: the occlusal, which closely resembles the corresponding margin of the mesial surface; the buccal, which is not well defined; the lingual, somewhat angular; and the cervical, formed by the cervical line.

**The Neck of the Tooth.**—When looking upon the buccal

surface of this tooth, the constricted portion forming the neck is greatest at a point immediately above the cervical line. Viewed in this direction the crown is usually bell-shaped, and both the crown and the base of the roots assist in producing the neck. Viewed from a lingual direction, the neck is a distinctive feature, but is seldom so marked as when examined from the opposite side. When studied from either a mesial or a distal aspect, the neck appears above the cervical line, the prominent fold of enamel immediately adjacent to this line forcing the neck rootward.

**The Roots of the Upper First Molar.**—The roots of this tooth are three in number, two of which are on the buccal side, and are, therefore, called mesiobuccal and distobuccal roots, and one on the lingual side, known as the lingual root. These three roots are given off from a common base, which is sometimes referred to as the root, while those parts above the point of trifurcation are considered as root-branches. The number, location, and form of the roots of this tooth are, perhaps, more constant than those found in connection with any other cuspidate tooth. The common base from which the roots are given off is similar in contour to the crown of the tooth, excepting in those cases in which the form of the root is carried over this base to meet the neck of the tooth.

*The mesiobuccal root* (Fig. 90) is flattened from mesial to distal, broad at its base from buccal to lingual, from which point it gradually tapers to the apex. At the base the mesiodistal measurement is less than one-third that of the buccolingual. In its course it is first inclined to the mesial, but after reaching the center of its length it makes a decided distal curve, which looks almost directly to the distal. The mesial side of this root is decidedly flattened at its base, but as the center of the surface is reached a shallow longitudinal groove is present, which is continued to the region of the apex. The distal side is also possessed of a similar groove, which extends throughout its entire length. Both the buccal and lingual sides of the root are smoothly convex, the latter being only about half the width of the former.

*The distobuccal root* (Fig. 90) is much the smallest of the

three, and, while inclined to flatness on its mesial and distal sides, it is much more rounded than the mesial root. The mesial side is provided with a slight longitudinal groove, and in rare instances a similar groove exists on the distal side. The buccal and lingual sides are similar to those of the mesial root. The root is generally straight, and tapers gradually from base to apex, ending in a rounded point.

*The lingual root* (Fig. 91) is usually the largest and longest of the three, and is more rounded in form than either of the buccal roots. The lingual surface is inclined to flatness near its base, and is provided with a well-defined longitudinal groove, which is sometimes independently formed, while at others it is present as a continuation of the lingual groove. This root being the only one given off from the lingual side of the tooth, is constructed with a mesiodistal measurement about equal to that of the base of the crown at this point. From its place of beginning it passes first in a lingual and then in a buccal direction, forming a long curve and ending in a sharp-pointed apex.

**Bilious Type.**—The upper first molar of this temperament is manifest by a crown with angles well produced, the marginal ridges and cutting-edges of the cusps bold and well marked. The cusps are of medium length, with summits angular and pointed. The developmental grooves are deep and often sulcate, and numerous supplemental grooves are found upon the occlusal surface. The longitudinal and transverse measurements of the crown are about equal, and when viewed upon the occlusal surface, the angular nature of its anatomy is noted as a distinctive feature. The neck is fairly well developed, giving a slight bell-shape to the crown. The cervical line is made up of angles rather than curves, and the roots are long and straight.

**Nervous Type.**—Like the teeth previously described under this class, the crown of this tooth is of greater longitudinal than transverse extent; the neck is especially well formed, producing a decided bell-shape to the crown. The cusps are long and penetrating, the marginal ridges sharply defined, as are also those ridges upon the central incline of the cusps. The grooves of development are decided and frequently sulcate. The buccal

surface is rounded and smooth, with the buccal groove extending well toward the cervical line. The lingual surface also presents a general convexity, and is usually divided by the lingual groove. The mesial surface is convex over its cervical third, and the occlusal margin is a decided convex ridge, serving as a point of contact for the adjoining tooth, and thus forming the characteristic V-shape common to this temperament. It is in this type that the fifth cusp is most frequently present. The cervical line is much curved, and the roots are slim and frail.

**Sanguineous Type.**—The crown of the upper first molar of this type usually presents a slightly greater longitudinal than transverse extent. The angles of the crown are poorly formed, being rounded and smooth. The cusps are of moderate length, and are rounded in their nature; the marginal ridges, as well as those ridges of the central incline of the cusps, are less distinct than either of the forms previously described. The buccal and lingual surfaces are convex and seldom broken by grooves; the mesial and distal surfaces are convex in every direction, throwing the point of contact with adjoining teeth near the center of the surface. The roots are inclined to be large and oval in form, while the cervical line is a series of long curves.

**Lymphatic Type.**—In this temperament the crown is much less in its longitudinal than transverse measurement. The neck of the tooth is poorly defined, the crown passing into the root-base without a marked constriction. The mesial and distal surfaces are flattened and nearly parallel with each other, providing a broad contact surface. The buccal and lingual surfaces each present a marked general convexity, the latter being frequently broken by the distolingual groove. The tooth is provided with cusps which are short and heavy-set; the marginal ridges, as well as all the ridges common to the occlusal surface, are poorly defined. The developmental grooves are shallow and terminate abruptly. There is but little curvature to the cervical line, and the roots are short, heavy-set, and inclined to cluster together.



## UPPER SECOND MOLAR.



FIG. 94.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS FROM FOUR CENTERS ABOUT THE FIFTH YEAR.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, SIXTEENTH TO EIGHTEENTH YEAR.

ERUPTED, TWELFTH TO FOURTEENTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .28.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .51.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .79.

Calcification in this tooth takes place in precisely the same manner as that of the first molar, but the formative process is much later in beginning, the lime-salts commencing to accumulate in the four separate lobes about the fifth year. At the beginning of the sixth year the formation of the cusps is completed, soon after which they coalesce and the occlusal surface of the crown is established. At the beginning of the eighth year fully two-thirds of the crown is calcified, and the following year the crown and neck are completed and the root-base outlined. By the tenth year the beginning of separate root-development is observed; at the twelfth year, or at the time of eruption, the roots are formed to about one-half of their completed length, the process continuing until the sixteenth or seventeenth year, when calcification is completed and the apical foramina established (Fig. 94). In many respects this tooth closely resembles the first molar previously described, the crown presenting the same number of surfaces similarly named, and also being provided with the same number of roots. Notwithstanding this fact, there are a number of ways in which they are at variance. The crown of the second molar is smaller than that of the

first, and the quadrilateral outline common to the first molar is much compressed and broken in the second. The distal cusps are much smaller proportionately than the mesial cusps, this being particularly true of the distolingual cusp. This reduction in size of the distal cusps gives to that portion of the occlusal surface a slight distal incline.

**Occlusal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 95).—The general contour of the crown is best studied by viewing it directly upon the occlusal surface; this aspect also shows to best advantage the difference in form between this and the first molar tooth, as shown in figure 87. The mesial and lingual outlines closely resemble the corresponding outlines on the first molar, but the

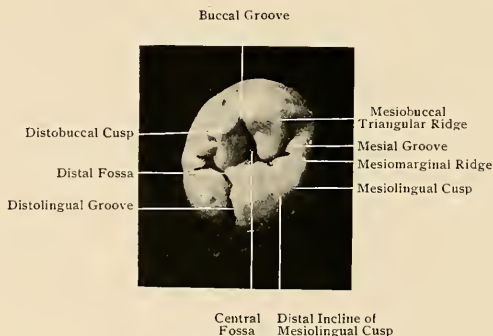


FIG. 95.—UPPER SECOND MOLAR, OCCLUSAL SURFACE.

buccal and distal are much at variance, the former passing into the latter without a distinct line of demarcation existing between the two, this gradual blending of one into the other being at the expense of the distobuccal angle of the crown, which is poorly developed. The crown is much compressed in a distobuccal-mesiolingual direction, making this measurement of the occlusal surface about one-third less than the mesiobuccal-distolingual measurement. The cusps are much inclined to cluster toward the center of the surface, this being especially true of those on the lingual half.

*Marginal Ridges of the Occlusal Surface* (Fig. 94).—Like the occlusal surface of the upper first molar, this surface of the second molar is bounded by four marginal ridges—the mesial, distal, buccal, and lingual. They are usually less marked than those found on the first molar, and are much more variable in their individual anatomy. The *mesiomarginal ridge* extends from the summit of the mesiobuccal cusp to the summit of the mesiolingual cusp. It is concave in the direction of the body of the crown, and is broken near its central portion by the mesial groove. In some instances one or more small supplemental grooves are found to cross it. Compared with the mesiomarginal ridge of the first molar, its length is much less and the convexity not so pronounced. The *distomarginal ridge*, owing to the variation in form and size of the distal cusps, is difficult to describe definitely; suffice it to say that it extends from the summit of the distobuccal to the summit of the distolingual cusp. The concavity is V-shaped, and is usually crossed near the center by the distolingual groove. In some instances the distolingual cusp is almost wanting, in others the distobuccal is but little developed; when either of these conditions are present, the marginal ridge is extended either to the buccal or to the lingual, in a measure taking the place of the missing cusp. The mesial half of the *buccomarginal ridge* closely resembles the corresponding margin of the first molar; beginning at the mesiobuccal angle it ascends to the summit of the mesiobuccal cusp, after which it descends by a longer incline to the buccal groove. The distal half of the ridge, unlike that of the first molar, presents much variety, its form being controlled by the character and position of the distobuccal cusp; usually small. As most frequently observed, it ascends to the summit of the cusp, and in so doing it presents a decided lingual inclination. In passing down the distal incline the lingual inclination is increased and gradually passes into the distomarginal ridge. Branching off from the mesiomarginal ridge, the *linguomarginal ridge* ascends to the summit of the mesiolingual cusp and descends by a much shorter incline to the distolingual groove. This portion of the margin is thrown well toward the center of the surface, the location of the cusp carry-

ing it to that point. Like the distal half of the buccal margin, the outline of the distal half of this margin is controlled by the position and form of the distolingual cusp. In the majority of cases, when the cusp is moderately strong, the ascent from the distobuccal groove to the summit of the cusp is short and abrupt, the descent being somewhat more gradual, and with a decided buccal inclination it passes into the distomarginal ridge, or ends abruptly at the distal end of the distolingual groove.

**The Cusps and Ridges** (Fig. 95).—This tooth is provided with four lobes or cusps, two of which are located on the buccal, and two on the lingual side. They are usually smaller and less angular than the cusps of the first molar. This is particularly true of both the distal cusps, and especially of the distolingual cusp, which is often quite diminutive and occasionally entirely wanting. When this latter condition exists, the lingual half of the surface is for the most part occupied by what would otherwise be the mesiolingual cusp, the absence of the distal cusp permitting the distolingual groove to occupy a position near the extreme distolingual angle, that portion of the surface which is distal to the groove being a portion of the distomarginal ridge.

*The Mesiobuccal Cusp* (Fig. 95).—Like the corresponding cusp of the first molar, this cusp is usually the longest of the four, and in many instances covers a greater extent of surface than any of the others. Its base is outlined by the buccal and mesial grooves, the two together forming the mesiobuccal triangular groove. Descending from its summit to the buccal surface is the mesiobuccal ridge; the marginal ridge makes a double descent, one in a mesial and one in a distal direction, while sloping toward the central fossa is the mesiobuccal triangular ridge. The cusp is seldom traversed by supplemental grooves such as are found on the corresponding cusp of the first molar.

*The Distobuccal Cusp* (Fig. 95).—As previously stated, this cusp is not constant in its form; in some instances it is bold and well produced, corresponding closely to the mesiobuccal cusp just described. When thus pronounced it is possessed of ridges,

and bounded by grooves which are similar to those described in connection with the first molar. More frequently the cusp is much rounded, its summit being carried well toward the center of the surface. When this formation exists, the buccal ridge is absent, the marginal ridges short and rounded; the distobuccal triangular ridge which descends from it toward the center of the crown is short and heavy set.

*The Mesiolingual Cusp* (Fig. 95).—In the majority of instances this is the largest cusp, particularly when there is a degenerate tendency in the distolingual cusp. Descending from its summit are a number of ridges, the marginal ridges being given off as already described, the mesiolingual triangular ridge descending the central incline to the central fossa, and when the cusp has an additional mesiodistal extent by the presence of a diminutive distal cusp, other ridges descend in the same direction. The lingual descent of the cusp is smooth and more rounded than the corresponding surface of the first molar, and is seldom elevated in the form of a definite ridge. The central outline of this cusp is marked by the mesial, the distal, and the distolingual grooves.

*The Distolingual Cusp* (Fig. 95).—In no other cusp do we find such a diversity of form as in the distolingual cusp of the upper second molar. In some instances it is fully as prominent as its neighbor just described, in others appearing as a mere fold of enamel, and it is not uncommon to find it entirely wanting, the distomarginal ridge extending to occupy a portion of the space which it should claim. Deductions might be drawn from an average between these two extremes, wherein the existing cusp would be much smaller than any of the others, the summit rounded rather than sharp, but with a decided inclination to occupy the extreme distolingual angle of the surface, in this latter respect differing from the distobuccal cusp. The mesial and buccal outlines of the cusp are formed by the distolingual groove, and its mesiolingual incline contributes to the formation of the distal fossa.

**The Fossæ and Grooves of the Occlusal Surface** (Fig. 95).—These in name, number, and general form are similar to those of the first molar. The central fossa is never, strictly speak-

ing, in the center of the surface, and is formed by the central incline of the mesiobuccal, distobuccal, and mesiolingual cusps. It is seldom so deep as the central fossa of the first molar. The distal fossa is more or less pronounced, its size and position being controlled by the extent of development in the distolingual cusp. The distolingual groove, which usually crosses the lingual surface of the first molar near its center, is not constant in its location on this tooth, in some cases being near the center, in others near the distolingual angle of the crown. The buccal groove is never constant in its location, usually crossing the buccomarginal ridge and passing over the buccal surface near its mesiodistal center, but it is not uncommon to find it forced to the distal by a diminution in the size of the distal cusp.



FIG. 96. — UPPER SECOND MOLAR, BUCAL SURFACE.

**Buccal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 96).—The most constant difference between this and the corresponding surface of the upper first molar is the wandering location of the buccal groove. While in the majority of instances it may be found near the mesiodistal center of the surface, it is not uncommon to find it passing over the distal third, or even as far posterior as the distobuccal angle. In general, the surface is somewhat more convex and necessarily less extensive than the buccal surface

of the first molar. The buccal ridges which descend from the summit of the two buccal cusps are seldom so marked as those on the first molar, and in many instances the distal ridge is wanting. The distal half of the surface frequently passes into the distal surface, by a long gradual sweep, there being no line of demarcation between the two.

**The Lingual Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 97).—In keeping with the other surfaces just described, the lingual surface differs from the corresponding surface of the first molar in that it presents a greater general convexity. This is particularly true in passing from the cervical line to the occlusal surface. The lingual groove is also less constant in its location. In most



instances it is to be found a little to the distal of the center, in others being as far posterior as the extreme distal third of the surface, and in rare instances it is entirely wanting. The general character of this surface, which is smooth and convex, is seldom broken by the presence of well-defined ridges, such as are usually found descending from the lingual cusps of the first molar. As previously referred to, the mesial, distal, and buccal surfaces, as well as the surface under consideration, are proportionately smaller than those of the first molar, and, while this refers to both the transverse and longitudinal measurements, it is particularly applicable to the latter.

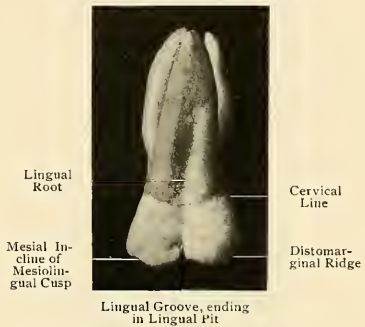


FIG. 97.—UPPER SECOND MOLAR, LINGUAL SURFACE.

**The Mesial Surface of the Crown (Fig. 98).**—Aside from this surface being of less extent than the corresponding surface of the first molar, there are no other differences of importance. In many instances, however, there is a decided tendency for the surface to be concave from buccal to lingual, the convex distal surface of the first molar closely fitting into this concavity. Another variation which is frequently observed is that

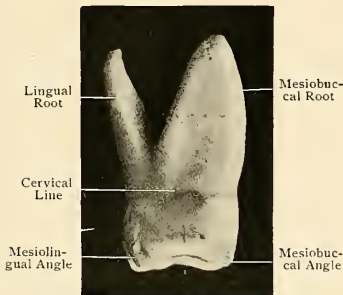


FIG. 98.—UPPER SECOND MOLAR, MESIAL SURFACE.

of the longer and more gradual sweep which it takes in passing into the lingual surface.

**The Distal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 98).—This differs from the distal surface of the first molar principally in its more pronounced convexity. Its general form is also much influenced by the nature of the two distal cusps. If one or the other of these is sparingly developed, either the buccal or lingual half of the surface, as the case may be, is quickly rounded off to pass into the deficient lobe.

**The Angles of the Crown.**—The increased inclination for the crown of this tooth to general convexity dispels, in a measure, the presence of angles, as such, in correspondence with the

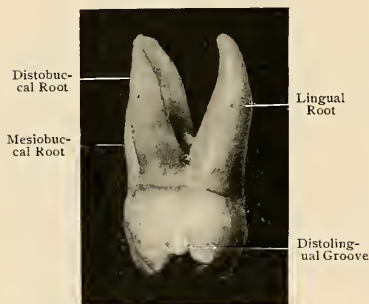


FIG. 99.—UPPER SECOND MOLAR, DISTAL SURFACE.

four corners of the first molar. In some instances the crown is represented as a fairly well-formed quadrilateral, in which case the angles are well defined, but usually this outline is so much broken by a mesiodistal compression that the angular form of the crown is entirely abolished. But, whatever the form of the crown may be, it is well to adhere to the commonly

accepted term, and speak of that point at which the sides of the crown unite as the angles, each being named in accordance with its location.

**The Neck of the Tooth.**—The principal variation between the neck of this tooth and that of the first molar, is that produced by the greater general convexity of the crown, which contributes to the production of a neck much more constricted. There is also a greater variety in the contour of the neck, incident to the variation in the general outline of the crown.

**The Roots of the Upper Second Molar.**—These are the same in name and number as those of the first molar—two buccal and one lingual. In many respects they differ from the roots of the first molar. They are much smaller, fre-

quently inclined to cluster together, and are often fused, in some instances, all three being united, in others the union existing between but two. When isolated, each root usually presents a decided distal curve near its apical third. When the crown is flattened from mesial to distal, as before described, the distobuccal root is forced to occupy a position much more to the lingual than that assumed by the mesiobuccal root. The lingual groove seldom passes over the lingual root, as observed on the first molar.

## UPPER THIRD MOLAR.



FIG. 100.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, NINTH YEAR.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, EIGHTEENTH TO TWENTIETH YEAR.

ERUPTED, SEVENTEENTH TO TWENTIETH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .24.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .44.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .68.

Calcification of this tooth takes place in precisely the same manner as that in the first and second molar, with the exception of the number of lobes, which are sometimes three and sometimes four. The lime-salts begin to accumulate between the eighth and ninth year, and continue with somewhat more activity than that of the first or second molar. Between the ninth and tenth year the three or four cusps, of which the future tooth is to be composed, have coalesced, and by the eleventh year calcification in the crown of the tooth is completed; at the end of the following year the roots, which are variable in number, have made considerable progress; at the fourteenth year they are calcified to about half their length, while at a period between the eighteenth and nineteenth year the formative process is completed (Fig. 100). This tooth, like the cuspid, is usually fully formed before eruption takes place.

This tooth is subject to a greater variety of form than any other; in rare instances it is similar in general outline and cusp formation to the first molar, but in a vast majority of cases it is dissimilar, the most constant deviation being its

size, which on the average is about one-third less. In the accompanying illustration (Fig. 101) the forms most frequently met with are shown. It will be observed that the contour of the tooth in general is much more rounded than either the first or second molar. The buccal angles of the crown are alone well marked, the mesial and distal surfaces passing into the lingual surface by a long, gradual sweep, and thus obliterating the lingual angles. In the vast majority of instances the tooth is tritubercular, and is usually made so by the absence or diminutive size of the distolingual cusp. Just as

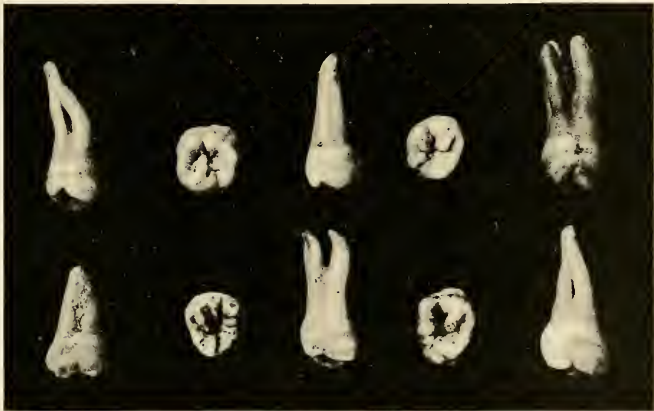


FIG. 101.—VARIOUS TYPES OF UPPER THIRD MOLAR.

this cusp was inclined to degenerate in the second molar, so we find this retrograde developmental tendency increased in the third molar. With this change in the construction of the occlusal surface, there is a corresponding variation in the grooves, ridges, and fossæ.

**Mesial Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 102).—In many particulars this surface corresponds in form and outline to the mesial surface of the first molar; it is, however, usually much more convex, seldom presenting a concavity or even a positive flatness. The surface is not only rounded from buccal to lingual, but also

from the cervical line to its occlusal margin. Thus formed, a point of contact is provided near the center of the surface. The

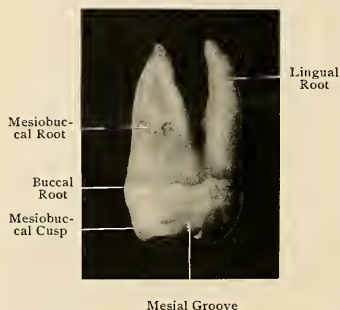


FIG. 102.—UPPER THIRD MOLAR, MESIAL SURFACE.

occlusal margin, the buccal margin, and the cervical margin are almost identical to those of the first molar, but in most instances the lingual margin is wanting, the surface gradually passing into the lingual without a decided line of demarcation.

**Distal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 103).—This surface is much less extensive in comparison to the size of the crown than the

corresponding surface of either the first or second molars. It is decidedly rounded in every direction and is frequently crossed by the distal developmental groove, and sometimes by one or more supplemental grooves. The general form of the surface is much influenced by the presence or absence of the distolingual cusp; with the former, the surface is more extensive, presenting less convexity and resembling more closely the distal surface of the first and second molars; with the latter, the extent of the surface is decreased and the convexity increased.

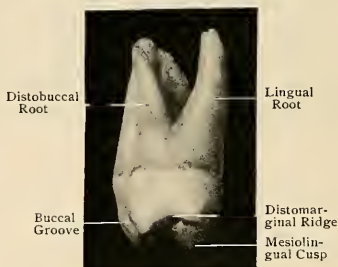


FIG. 103.—UPPER THIRD MOLAR, DISTAL SURFACE.

**Buccal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 104).—The mesial portion of this surface is in no way at variance with the mesial portion of the buccal surface of the first or second molar, but much variety of form exists in the distal portion. The buccal groove



which serves to separate these two portions is located well toward the distal third of the surface, thus reducing the size of the distal portion to about one-third that of the mesial portion. In general, the surface is but little more convex than the corresponding surface of the first and second molar. Its mesial border is definitely outlined, as are also the cervical and occlusal margins, but the distal margin can not be definitely located, the surface tending to pass gradually into the distal surface. Like the distal, the extent of this surface is much regulated by the size and shape of the distobuccal cusp, which, like the distolingual cusp, is inclined to degenerate.

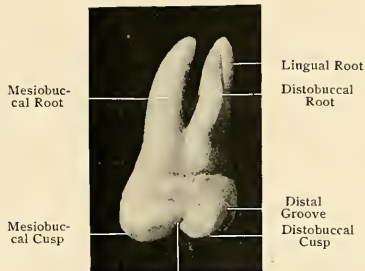


FIG. 104.—UPPER THIRD MOLAR, BUCCAL SURFACE.

**Lingual Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 105).—Like the distal



FIG. 105.—UPPER THIRD MOLAR, LINGUAL SURFACE.

surface previously described, the form of this surface is much influenced by the presence or absence of the distolingual cusp. When this cusp is wanting or but little developed, the surface presented is decidedly convex and smooth; in many instances the mesiodistal curvature described is almost a perfect semicircle, and in passing from the cervical line to the occlusal margin the surface is carried well toward the center of the crown by a long gradual sweep toward the lingual. The lingual groove is usually absent. The change in form produced by the presence of the distolingual cusp is

principally noticeable in a less pronounced convexity and the presence of the lingual groove, which may be noticed as a slight depression or as a well-defined groove. This groove, when pres-

ent, is always located near what would represent the distolingual angle of the crown; the distolingual cusp seldom if ever being of sufficient size to force its location near the center of the surface as in the first molar. In some instances this groove is shown upon the lingual surface when the cusp is not present; in this case the distomarginal ridge represents in a manner the cusp by its bold, heavy development.

**Occlusal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 106).—When looking directly upon this surface, an opportunity is presented to study the general contour of the crown; the most noticeable difference in this respect between this tooth and the first molar being observed in its smaller size, and the absence of well-marked

angles. It will be noted that the mesial and buccal outlines in a measure resemble the corresponding outlines of the first and second molars, but there is scarcely any similarity existing when comparing the distal and lingual outlines. In some instances the crown is triangular (Fig. 101); in others the mesiobuccal

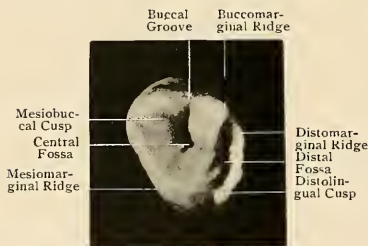


FIG. 106.—UPPER THIRD MOLAR, OCCLUSAL SURFACE.

and buccomarginal outlines form an obtuse angle, the free ends of which are joined together by a long semicircle, the latter constituting the distal and lingual outlines (Fig. 101). Again, almost the reverse of this last-mentioned form is seen, the buccal and distal outlines constructing the angle, while the semicircular connection between the two is made up of the mesial and lingual outlines.

**The Marginal Ridges.**—The *mesio-marginal ridge* is usually well defined, and in most instances is crossed near its center by the mesial groove, and frequently by two or more supplemental grooves. This marginal ridge is probably the most constant in form, the numerous variations to which the surface is liable seldom making any material alteration in it.

Unlike the ridge above described, the *distomarginal ridge* is most variable in its construction, nearly all of the forms characteristic of the occlusal surface exerting a controlling influence over it. In rare instances the ridge resembles that of the first and second molars, but this form is most frequently interfered with by the absence or diminutive size of the distolingual cusp, the ridge itself frequently supplying the place of the cusp. In many cases the ridge is elevated near its central part by being reinforced by a portion of the oblique ridge. When the distolingual cusp is wanting, this ridge not infrequently descends from the summit of the distobuccal cusp to the distal groove and from this point ascends obliquely to the summit of the lingual cusp. The *buccomarginal ridge* may be described as similar in most respects to the corresponding margin on the first and second molars, the principal variation being in the distal half, which is much shorter and less pronounced. In the *linguomarginal ridge*, again, much variety in outline is noticeable. In nearly all instances the ridge is thrown much nearer the center of the body of the crown, and, when the tooth is bicuspid in form, it simply makes a mesial ascent of the lingual cusp, followed by a gradual incline, and passes into the distal ridge, as above noted. When the distolingual cusp is present, the ridge is similar to that upon the first and second molars, with the exception of the distal portion, which is less clearly marked.

**The Cusps** (Fig. 106).—As previously stated, the form most frequently met with is tritubercular, two of the cusps being upon the buccal and one upon the lingual half of the surface.

*The Mesibuccal Cusp* (Fig. 106).—This cusp corresponds in nearly every particular to the mesibuccal cusp of the first and second molars; it is the most constant in size and form of the three. Its summit is usually angular, and the numerous ridges



FIG. 107.—UPPER THIRD MOLAR, OCCLUSAL SURFACE, WITH DISTOLINGUAL CUSP AND DISTAL FOSSA POORLY DEFINED.

which descend from it are well defined and similar in name and number to those of the first molar.

*Distobuccal Cusp* (Fig. 106).—The constant inclination to degeneracy in the distal portion of the crown of the tooth is noticeable in this cusp, which is much smaller than the mesio-buccal and scarcely half as large as the corresponding cusp of the first and second molars. In some instances, however, it is inferior only in size, retaining its angularity, being possessed of small but well-defined ridges.

*The Lingual Cusp* (Fig. 106).—When the three cusps alone are present, this one is much the largest, the extent of the surface covered being all of the lingual half of the crown. The summit of the cusp, which is thrown well toward the center of the body of the crown, is prominent, but seldom angular. Only in rare instances will there be found a lingual ridge descending therefrom, but the central incline is usually marked by a number of wrinkles or folds of enamel resembling minute ridges. The central boundary of this cusp is marked by the mesial and distal developmental grooves.

*The Distolingual Cusp* (Fig. 106).—It is the presence or absence of this cusp that contributes most to the variations present in the crown. When present, it is usually diminutive in size, and is without definite form. In many instances nature is apparently attempting to cast it off in precisely the same manner in which she is attempting to add to the first molar by a development of the "fifth cusp," the distobuccal cusp appearing to hang to the distolingual angle of the crown in a manner very similar to the "fifth cusp." When thus situated, it is separated from the body of the crown by a groove, which cannot be considered as being upon the occlusal surface. When located in its normal position, it has for its inner boundary the distolingual groove.

**The Fossæ and Grooves of the Occlusal Surface.**—The great variety and *form* common to this surface exerts a controlling influence over the size, number, and position of the grooves and fossæ. In the tritubercular class the central fossa alone is present. The developmental grooves, with the exception of the buccal, are not definitely outlined, but, descending

toward the fossæ from the central incline, are numerous small ridges divided from each other by a like number of diminutive supplemental grooves. The distal groove is sometimes well defined, and crosses over the oblique ridge, which in this type becomes the distomarginal ridge. When the distolingual cusp is present, all of the ridges and grooves are more pronounced. In this case the central fossa corresponds more closely to the central fossa of the other molar teeth, this resemblance increasing just in proportion as the size of the distolingual cusp increases. The distal fossa, in a vast majority of instances, is present as a mere pit; the size of this fossa is likewise much controlled by the extent of development in the distolingual cusp. Where the distomarginal ridge is supplementary to the distolingual cusp, the distolingual groove lies between the former and the oblique ridge. Another peculiarity found only upon the occlusal surface of this tooth is, what appears to be an effort upon the part of the cusps to cluster toward the center. This is common only to those teeth possessing three cusps, and accompanying this form the central fossa shows a number of fantastically arranged grooves and ridges which ascend the cusps, passing over the marginal ridges and breaking them into a number of small tubercles.

**Temperamental Types.**—The third molar tooth is probably less influenced by the character and habits of the individual than any other tooth in the mouth. The inclination to a general degeneracy is no doubt favored by civilization. With a constant decline in the functional activity, brought about by the present culinary methods common to civilization, this tooth in a measure becomes useless, and nature is gradually making an effort to cast it off. While there are undoubtedly many individuals possessed of the highest mental attainments with the third molar as fully developed as either the first or the second, this condition is usually confined to those possessed of little intellectuality. If, in general, the temperament of the subject be taken into consideration, the cusp-formation on this tooth will correspond in a relative degree to that on the bicuspid and molars.

## CHAPTER IX.

A DESCRIPTION OF THE LOWER TEETH IN DETAIL.—CALCIFICATION, ERUPTION, AND AVERAGE MEASUREMENTS.—THEIR SURFACES, RIDGES, FOSSÆ, GROOVES, SULCI, ETC.

### THE LOWER TEETH.

In most respects the lower teeth correspond to the upper, but in each class we find a slight variation existing between the two sets. As compared to the upper incisors, the crowns of the lower incisors are more slender and somewhat more angular in outline. The roots are more slender, proportionately longer, more flattened laterally, and seldom crooked. The crowns of the lower incisors are probably more constant in form than those of any other teeth in the mouth, seldom varying except in size. The mesiodistal measurement of the crown of the lateral incisor is a trifle greater than that of the central, a condition exactly the reverse to that of the upper incisors. The labial and the lingual surfaces of these teeth are smooth, and, with the exception of young teeth, show but little trace of the developmental process by the presence of grooves, fissures, etc. The outline of the lower cuspids is almost identical to that of the corresponding teeth in the superior arch, excepting that they are in every way more slender. The bicuspid are proportionately smaller in every direction, have their cusps much less developed than their upper antagonists, and are seldom found with more than one root. The crowns of the lower molars are somewhat larger than those of the upper, and are provided with five cusps instead of four,\* and they are attached to the alveolus with two, instead of three, roots. In the incisors, cuspids, and bicuspids the process of development is the same as in the corresponding upper teeth, calcification taking place from the same number of centers along the coronal

---

\* The lower first molar has five cusps in ninety per cent. of cases, while, in the second, five cusps are present in about fifty per cent.



extremities. In the molars, however, development may proceed from five centers instead of four, as in the upper molars. The manner of development, and the period at which this action takes place, so nearly corresponds with that of the upper teeth that the process will not be repeated.

### LOWER CENTRAL INCISOR.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, FIRST YEAR AFTER BIRTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, ABOUT THE TENTH YEAR.

ERUPTED, SEVENTH TO EIGHTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .34.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .47.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .81.

Like the upper central incisor, this tooth presents for examination four surfaces, a cutting-edge, and various angles, margins, etc. By the union of the labial and lingual surfaces at the cutting-edge the incisive feature is established and the double incline plane common to incisors produced.

**The Labial Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 108).—This surface is smooth and convex, its general outline resembling an inverted cone, the base of which is formed by the cutting-edge and the apex by the cervical line. The margins of the surface are, with the exception of the cutting-edge, not so well defined as those of the upper central. Near the cutting-edge the mesial and distal margins pass somewhat abruptly into the respective lateral surfaces, but as the neck of the tooth is approached, they are much rounded. The incisive margin is squarely cut, and is nearly at right angles with the long axis of the tooth. The cervical margin is fairly well defined, and is deeply concave in the direction of the root. Except in very

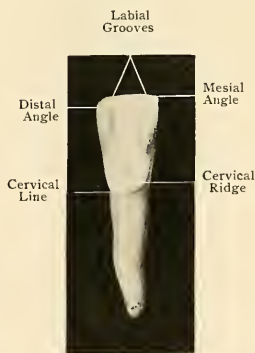


FIG. 108.—LOWER INCISOR, RIGHT SIDE, LABIAL SURFACE.

Except in very

young teeth, this surface is seldom much broken by the labial grooves; but in certain types one or more transverse ridges may be found occupying the cervical third. The mesiodistal diameter at the cutting-edge is about one-third greater than at the cervical line, and, while these measurements are likely to vary in accordance with the temperament of the subject, this variation is not so pronounced as in the upper incisor. The surface is frequently inclined to flatness near the incisive margin, the general convexity becoming more marked as the cervical line is approached.

**The Lingual Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 109).—In general outline this surface resembles the labial, with the exception of the cervical margin, the lines of which are somewhat more acute. The surface presents a marked concavity from the cutting-edge to the cervical ridge, and also a slight transverse concavity near the incisive margin. All of the margins are more definite than those of the labial surface. The mesial and distal margins are formed by the marginal ridges common to these borders, but these ridges are not so well defined as those of the upper incisors. The cervicomarginal ridge is present as a well-rounded band of enamel, but is never a well-defined cingulum, or cuspule. The depression between these marginal ridges is so slight that it can scarcely be referred to as a fossa, although usually characterized as the lingual fossa. The lingual grooves are generally more pronounced than the corresponding developmental grooves of the labial surface, but end more or less abruptly before reaching the cervical ridge. The mesiodistal measurements of the surface are a trifle less than the corresponding measurements of the labial surface.

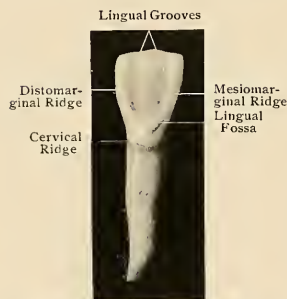


FIG. 109.—LOWER INCISOR, RIGHT SIDE, LINGUAL SURFACE, STRONGLY DEVELOPED.

**The Mesial Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 110).—The outline of this surface is exactly the reverse of the labial and

lingual just described, being a cone, with its base directed downward or in the direction of the root, while its apex is formed by the mesial extremity of the cutting-edge. The cervical margin of the surface, or that represented by the base of the cone, is concave; the labial and lingual margins are rounded over the cervical third and inclined to angularity near the cutting-edge. There is a slight convexity over the entire surface, which is most marked near the center. The lingual half of the cervical portion slopes away to the distal, passing gradually into the lingual surface. By the union of this surface with the cutting-edge and the labial and lingual surfaces, the mesial angle of the crown is formed. This angle is well outlined and reaches out toward the median line, giving to this portion of the crown a prominent appearance. Near the cutting-edge the surface presents a slightly rounded prominence, which provides a point of contact with the corresponding tooth of the opposite side.



FIG. 110.—LOWER INCISOR, MESIAL SURFACE.

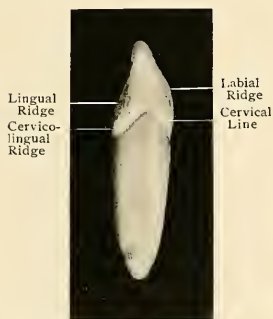


FIG. 111.—LOWER INCISOR, DISTAL SURFACE.

**The Distal Surface of the Crown (Fig. 111).**—In a general way this surface closely resembles that of the opposite or mesial side of the crown. Near the cutting-edge the surface is usually more prominent and presents a more marked convexity, and near the cervical margin it is flattened and sometimes slightly concave. The union of this surface with the cut-

ting-edge and the labial and lingual surfaces forms the distal angle of the crown, which, like the mesial angle, is square and well

defined. The margins of the surface are in no way different from those of the mesial surface.

**The Cutting-edge.**—In the young tooth this incisive margin is thin and generally divided into three distinct parts (Fig. 112) by the developmental grooves, but these disappear so early that they can scarcely be considered in connection with a description of the fully developed tooth; in fact, the cutting-edge of this, as well as that of all the lower incisors, is so susceptible to change by mechanical abrasion that a normal condition is of but short duration. After the disappearance of the primitive

Developmental Grooves

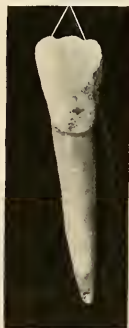


FIG. 112.—YOUNG LOWER INCISOR, WITH CUTTING-EDGE, SHOWING THE LINES OF DEVELOPMENT.

cusps, and before further abrasion has taken place, the edge is fairly sharp and placed nearly at right angles with the crown. As in the upper incisors, the cutting-edge is in a line with the long axis of the tooth. The labial margin of the edge is slightly convex, while the lingual is irregularly concave to the same extent.

**The Cervical Margin.**—This marginal line, which is marked by the extent of the enamel cap, corresponds closely to that of the upper incisors, dipping down with a graceful concavity on the labial and lingual surfaces, with a corresponding convexity on the mesial and distal surfaces. The prominence of this enamel margin, together with the nature of the curvature, is much influenced by the tooth type.

**The Neck of the Tooth.**—A distinctive feature of this tooth is found in the convergence of its mesial and distal surfaces in passing from the cutting-edge rootward, thus producing a neck much constricted from mesial to distal. When examined from either the mesial or distal surface, this feature is scarcely noted, the crown passing into the root with little more than the cervical line as a mark of separation. The labial and lingual portions of the neck are rounded and narrow, while the two lateral sides are flat and broad.

**The Root.**—The root of this tooth is usually smaller than

that of any other tooth in the mouth. It is much flattened from mesial to distal, while the labial and lingual aspects are rounded and narrow. Besides being flattened and broad, the mesial and distal sides are usually found with a longitudinal depression extending from a point near the base of the root almost to its apex. These surfaces gradually taper from the base to the apex, while the labial and lingual first widen from the base and then gradually taper to the apex. The contour of the root-base is generally reduced at the apical extremity, although in some instances the latter is a rounded point. While the root of the tooth is usually straight, there is sometimes a tendency for the apical third to have a slight distal inclination.

### LOWER LATERAL INCISOR.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, FIRST YEAR AFTER BIRTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, TENTH TO ELEVENTH YEAR.

ERUPTS, EIGHTH TO NINTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .35.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .50.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .85.

The crown of this tooth differs from the central incisor in being broader from mesial to distal at the cutting-edge, resulting in a crown more strongly bell-shaped. The cutting-edge, instead of being at right angles to the long axis of the tooth, slopes to the distal at the expense of the distal angle, which is much rounded, while the mesial angle closely resembles the corresponding angle of the central incisors. The labial and mesial surfaces do not differ materially from the corresponding surfaces of the central incisor, excepting that the lingual more frequently shows the lines of development, and the distal is at variance in having that portion which contributes to the formation of the distal angle extended and prominent. The marginal ridges of the lingual surface are probably more definitely outlined than those of the central incisor, and the crown in general presents a stronger appearance. The neck of the tooth is similar to the neck of the central incisor, as is also the root, with the exception of a slight addition to its length.

## LOWER CUSPID.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, THIRD YEAR AFTER BIRTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, TWELFTH TO THIRTEENTH YEAR.

ERUPTS, TWELFTH TO THIRTEENTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .40.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .60.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, 1.00.

There is probably a greater similarity existing between the upper and lower cuspid teeth than in any other class of teeth in the mouth. Occupying as they do a prominent position in the dental arch, and being called upon to perform

the double function of incising and tearing the food, their crowns are strong and heavy-set, and their roots long and firmly anchored in the alveoli. Like the upper cuspid, the crown of the lower is surmounted by a single cusp, from the summit of which descend a mesial and a distal cutting-edge. There is also a labial, lingual, mesial, and distal surface presented for examination.

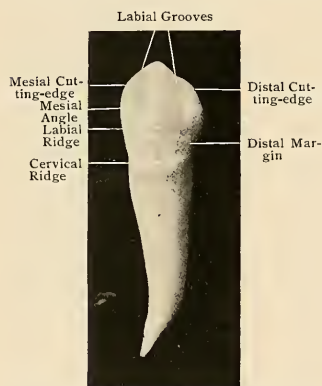


FIG. 113.—LOWER CUSPID, LABIAL SURFACE.

**The Labial Surface of the Crown (Fig. 113).—**The crown of the tooth, being a

little longer than that of the upper cuspid, gives to this surface the appearance of being more slender, when in reality there is but little difference in the width of the two teeth. This surface is smooth and convex, and, while the labial grooves are usually present, they are not so marked as those found upon the corresponding upper tooth. A pronounced feature of the surface is the labial ridge, which extends from the summit of the cusp to the cervical line, providing additional strength to the crown. Aside from this ridge and the labial



grooves, the surface is occasionally broken by one or more transverse ridges over the cervical portion. The margins of the surface closely resemble those of the upper cuspid, the incisive and mesial being definite in character, while the distal is made equally indefinite by the passing of the labial into the distal surface by a gentle curve.

**The Lingual Surface of the Crown (Fig. 114).**—The ridges and grooves of this surface are far less bold in their character than those of the upper cuspid. The lingual ridge, which divides the surface into two equal parts, extends from the summit of the cusp to the base of the cervical ridge, while the marginal ridges pass rootward from the angles of the crown, and, uniting, form the cervical ridge. The slight depressions between the lingual ridge and the marginal ridges correspond to the palatal grooves of the upper cuspid, but in this tooth partake more of the nature of fossæ.

**The Mesial Surface of the Crown (Fig. 115).**—A peculiarity found in connection with this surface is the general plane existing between the crown and root-

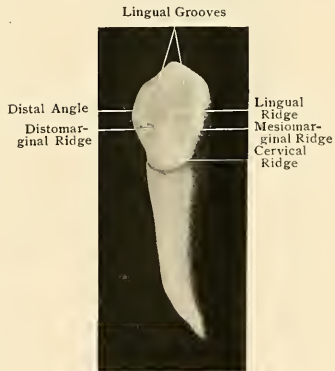


FIG. 114.—LOWER CUSPID, LINGUAL SURFACE.

surface. In all other teeth the mesial and distal surfaces are found to bulge somewhat beyond the corresponding surface of the root, but this surface of the lower cuspid is not only usually in a direct line with the mesial surface of the root, but is occasionally inclined to the distal, resulting in a crooked or bent appearance to the tooth. In addition to this individual peculiarity, the surface is flat and passes by a long curve to meet the lingual surface.

**The Distal Surface of the Crown (Fig. 116).**—This surface is somewhat less in extent than the mesial surface, and, in place

of being flat and in line with the root-surface, that portion near the angle of the crown presents a marked convexity, while that near the cervical line is frequently slightly concave. This general form of the surface further assists in producing the distal crook previously referred to. The lingual margin is well defined and somewhat angular, while the surface passes so gradually into the labial that a positive line of demarcation can scarcely be said to exist.

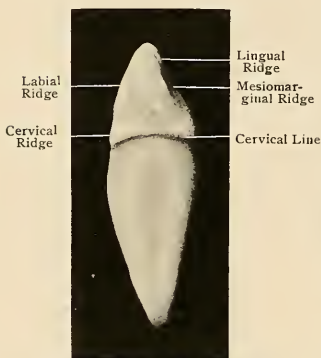


FIG. 115.—LOWER CUSPID, MESIAL SURFACE.

The length of the mesial cutting-edge is usually somewhat less than that of the distal, but this difference is seldom so marked as that found in the upper cuspid. The mesial and distal angles of the crown are equally as pronounced as those of the corresponding upper tooth.

#### The Neck of the Tooth.

—This is shown by a fairly well-marked constriction, but the passing of the mesial surface of the crown into the mesial surface of the root is not broken by this circular depression. On account of this latter feature the neck of this tooth is somewhat less pronounced than that of the upper.

**The Root of the Lower Cuspid.**—The root of this tooth is somewhat shorter and more flattened on its mesial and distal

**The Cusp and Cutting-edges.**—In most respects these are similar to the corresponding parts of the upper cuspid.

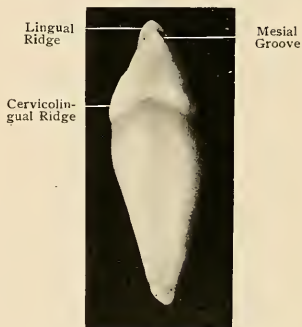


FIG. 116.—LOWER CUSPID, DISTAL SURFACE.

sides than that of the upper cuspid, this lateral flatness frequently amounting to a decided longitudinal depression or groove. As referred to in the description of the crown, the mesial side of the root is continuous in a direct line with this surface of the crown, but as the apical third of the root is approached, there is frequently found a slight distal inclination which affects alike both the mesial and distal sides. The labial and lingual surfaces of the root are abruptly convex and taper very gradually from the cervical line to the apex, while the mesial and distal surfaces taper much more rapidly, the four ending in a slender apex usually flattened from mesial to distal.

### THE LOWER BICUSPIDS.

In many respects these teeth are similar to the bicuspid of the upper jaw, but there are a few minor points of dissimilarity. They are somewhat shorter and smaller in every respect; their crowns are much more rounded and the cusps are never so strongly developed. Unlike the upper bicuspid, the buccal and lingual cusps are connected by a transverse ridge. The roots are much less flattened from mesial to distal, and are seldom bifurcated.

#### LOWER FIRST BICUSPID.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, ABOUT THE FOURTH YEAR.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, ELEVENTH TO TWELFTH YEAR.

ERUPTED, TENTH TO ELEVENTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .30.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .54.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .84.

In general, the crown of this tooth is much more rounded and smaller in all its measurements than that of the upper bicuspid. The buccal surface presents a much greater convexity, which results in forcing the summit of the buccal cusp well toward the center of the long axis of the tooth. The mesio-distal and buccolingual measurements of the crown are nearly equal, and about correspond to the maximum length of the crown. As in the upper bicuspid, the development of this tooth is similar to that of the incisors and cuspid, the buccal

cuspid being derived from three lobes, while the lingual results from a single center.

**The Occlusal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 117).—This surface is so unlike that of the corresponding surface of the upper first bicuspid that a separate description without further comparative reference is required. In general outline the form of a rounded triangle is approached, the buccal margin serving as one side of the triangle, while, by the union of the mesial and distal margins to form the lingual, the remaining sides are established.

*The Buccal Cusp.*—As previously stated, the summit of this cusp is thrown well toward the center of the surface. Descending from it are four well-defined ridges—the buccal ridge to the buccal surface, the mesial cutting-edge, the distal cutting-edge,

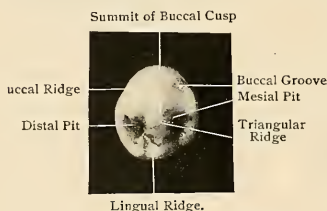


FIG. 117.—LOWER FIRST BICUSPID,  
OCCLUSAL SURFACE.

and the triangular ridge, the latter descending in a lingual direction to meet the lingual ridge or cusp. This ridge divides the surface into two parts, the center of each being marked by a well-defined pit—the *mesial* and *distal pits*. The mesial and distal cutting-edges are frequently crossed by the buccal

grooves, and mark the line of union between the central and two lateral lobes of the buccal cusp. The marginal ridges, one of which begins at the mesial angle and the other at the distal angle, pass to the lingual, where they unite to form the *lingual ridge* or *cusp*.

*The Lingual Cusp.*—This cusp is seldom well developed, and corresponds to the cervical ridge of the incisors and cuspids. The extent of development in the lobe is extremely variable, in some instances amounting to little more than a continuation of the mesio- and disto-marginal ridges, while in others there is a building-up of the enamel in the form of a small tubercle. When this latter condition is present, the triangular ridge of the buccal cusp contributes to its formation. The triangular ridge

frequently divides into two or more smaller ridges, which usually end in the mesial pit, but in some instances they continue to the lingual, and divide the lingual ridge into two or more smaller tubercles.

**The Buccal Surface of the Crown (Fig. 118).**—This surface is smooth and convex in all directions, and in general outline there is but little variation between it and the corresponding surface of the upper first bicuspid. It is traversed from the point of the cusp to the cervical line with a rounded ridge, the buccal ridge, upon either side of which are the buccal grooves.

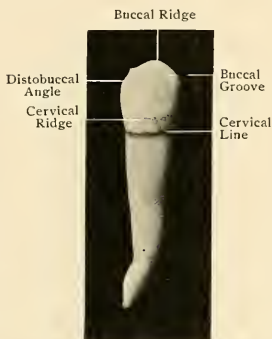


FIG. 118.—RIGHT LOWER FIRST BICUSPID, BUCCAL SURFACE.

**Lingual Surface of the Crown (Fig. 119).**—This surface is more or less extensive in accordance with the character of the lingual lobe. In most instances the measurement from the summit of the cusp or ridge to the cervical line is about one-half that of the same measurements on the buccal surface. From mesial to distal a well-rounded convexity is present, while from the occlusal margin to the cervical line it is straight or only slightly convex. The surface passes so gradually into the mesial and distal surfaces that no definite lateral margins exist.

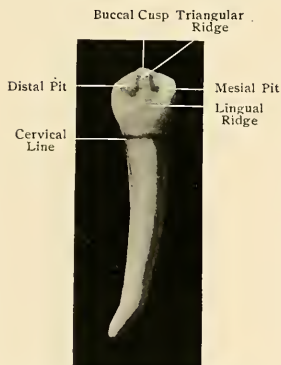


FIG. 119.—LEFT LOWER FIRST BICUSPID, LINGUAL SURFACE.

**The Mesial Surface of the Crown (Fig. 120).**—In the region of the occlusal margin this surface is prominent, with a marked convexity from buccal to lingual; but as the cervical margin is approached, the surface recedes to the distal, and is flattened

or is possessed of a slight general convexity. The occlusal and cervical margins alone are well defined, the buccal being gracefully rounded, while the surface passes to the lingual with a long curve.



FIG. 120.—LEFT LOWER FIRST BICUSPID, MESIAL SURFACE.

The neck of the tooth is marked by a well-defined constriction, the enamel of the crown suddenly folding in to meet the cementum of the root at the cervical line, forming a band or ridge which completely encircles the tooth. The amount of constriction appears to be evenly distributed between the various parts, so that, viewed in all directions, the neck becomes a distinctive feature of the tooth.

**The Root of the Lower First Bicuspid.**—The root of this tooth is usually straight and tapers gradually from base to apex. In rare instances it is bifurcated, and when thus formed, those portions beyond the point of separation are more or less crooked. In the single root the apical third often curves slightly to the distal. The buccal and

**The Distal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 121).—There is but little difference between this and the mesial surface; the occlusal portion of the surface is somewhat less prominent, resulting in less of the bell-shaped appearance to this side of the crown.

**The Neck of the Tooth.**—

The neck of this tooth is marked by a well-defined constriction, the enamel of the crown suddenly folding in to meet the

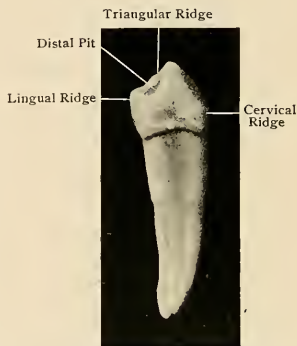


FIG. 121.—RIGHT LOWER FIRST BICUSPID, DISTAL SURFACE.

lingual sides are convex throughout their entire length, while the mesial and distal may be slightly convex, flattened, or provided



with a slight longitudinal concavity. In passing from buccal to lingual the mesial and distal sides converge, thus resulting in a narrowing of the lingual side of the root.

### LOWER SECOND BICUSPID.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, BETWEEN THE FOURTH AND FIFTH YEAR.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, ELEVENTH TO TWELFTH YEAR.

ERUPTS, ELEVENTH TO TWELFTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .31.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .56.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .87.

In general contour this tooth is similar to the lower first bicuspid, excepting that the crown is somewhat more rounded and the lingual cusp more fully developed, this latter feature causing it to closely resemble the upper bicuspid. The crown is frequently a trifle shorter than that of the lower first bicuspid, but the length of the root generally exceeds that of the latter, making this the longer tooth of the two.

**The Occlusal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 122).—The occlusal surface of this tooth presents a greater variety in form than any other tooth of its class.

The general outline of the surface is that of a broken circle, in most instances the mesial and distal margins showing almost as much of a convexity as that of the buccal and lingual. The summit of the buccal cusp usually extends well toward the center of the surface, but it is sometimes forced toward the buccal by an increased development in the lingual cusp. The buccal grooves, which cross the mesial and distal cutting-edges of the buccal cusp, are seldom so well defined as those of the first bicuspid, but they occasionally pass over these marginal ridges and form well-marked grooves, which end in the mesial and distal pits. The triangular ridge of the buccal cusp is usually more prominent than in the

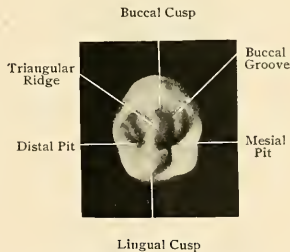


FIG. 122.—LOWER SECOND BICUSPID, OCCLUSAL SURFACE.

first bicuspid, and divides the surface into two portions, which are about equal in extent, the center of each portion being provided with a small pit—the mesial and distal pits. As in the first bicuspid, the mesio- and disto-marginal ridges begin at the mesial and distal angles of the crown, pass to the lingual, and, uniting, form the lingual ridge or cusp. The lingual cusp, while generally well developed, is never so prominent as the buccal. The lingual lobe is sometimes divided by a groove which passes from buccal to lingual, thus forming three cusps upon the surface. When this latter condition is present, the mesial and distal

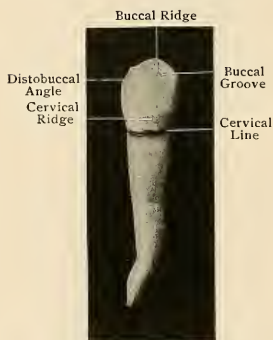


FIG. 123.—RIGHT LOWER SECOND BICUSPID, BUCCAL SURFACE.

grooves are fully outlined from the mesio- and disto-marginal ridges to the center of the surface, where they unite with the groove previously referred to and form a central pit or fossa. Another form frequently met with is one in which the surface closely resembles that of the upper bicuspid, two well-defined cusps being present, separated from each other by a central groove, which passes from mesial to distal and joins the triangular grooves at these points. The resemblance to the upper bicuspid is further increased by the

presence of two small pits, one on the mesial and one on the distal half of the surface.

**The Buccal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 123).—The principal variation between this and the buccal surface of the lower first bicuspid is that it is less extensive and the buccal grooves somewhat less defined. It presents a general convexity, which is most pronounced near the center, between which point and the occlusal margins it is slightly inclined to flatness. The summit of the buccal cusp is usually to the mesial of the center of the occlusal margin, so that the mesial cutting-edge is considerably longer than the distal, this fact also resulting in forcing the buccal ridge to the mesial of the center

of the surface. The mesial angle of the crown, as observed when looking directly upon the buccal surface, is in a direct line with the mesial side of the root, while the distal angle extends beyond this corresponding line, and gives a prominent or bulging appearance to this section of the crown.

**The Lingual Surface of the Crown (Fig. 124).**—Proportionately, this surface is more extensive than the corresponding surface of the first bicuspid, this increase being produced by the additional development of the lingual cusp. It is well rounded from mesial to distal, and passes into these surfaces without the

existence of a positive line of separation. From the cervical line to the occlusal margin a slight convexity is present. The general outline of the surface is much influenced by the conditions present upon the occlusal surface.

**The Mesial Surface of the Crown (Fig. 125).**—In the region of the occlusal margins this surface is decidedly convex from buccal to lingual, but in passing toward the cervical line a gradual flatness is apparent, which, however, seldom amounts to a perfect plane. While there is a gradual convergence of this and the distal surface to-

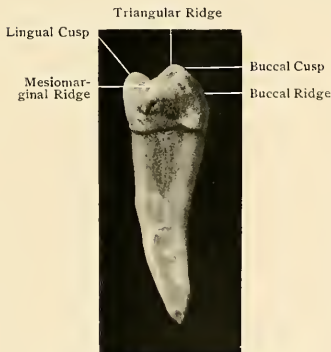


FIG. 125.—LOWER SECOND BICUSPID, MESIAL SURFACE.

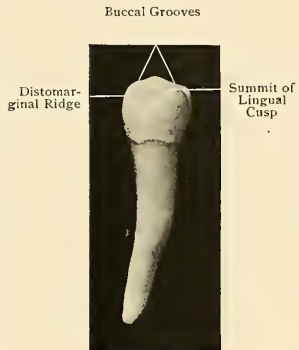


FIG. 124.—LOWER SECOND BICUSPID, LINGUAL SURFACE.

ward the root, it is not so marked as that of the first bicuspid, resulting in less of the bell-shaped appearance to the crown.

**The Distal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 126).—The description given of the mesial surface applies equally well to this, there being but slight variation existing between the two. Occasionally this surface will present a greater convexity in the region of the occlusal margin, but this is not a constant feature.

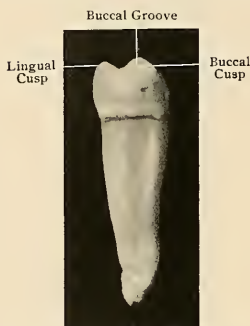


FIG. 126.—LOWER SECOND BICUSPID,  
DISTAL SURFACE.

### **The Neck of the Tooth.**—

The crown of the tooth being somewhat smaller, and the root proportionately larger and longer than that of the first bicuspid, results in diminishing the amount of constriction at the neck, and for that reason this feature is less definite.

**The Root of the Tooth.**—As previously stated, the root of this tooth is larger and longer than that of the first bicuspid. The mesial and distal sides are flattened and

frequently provided with a longitudinal groove. In some instances it is rather blunt, ending in a heavy, rounded apex; in others it tapers very gradually from the base to the apex, ending in a slim, pointed extremity.

## **THE LOWER MOLARS.**

### **THE LOWER FIRST MOLAR.**

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, ABOUT ONE MONTH BEFORE BIRTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, NINTH TO TENTH YEAR.

ERUPTS, SIXTH TO SEVENTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .30.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .52.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .82.

The process of development in this tooth corresponds to that of the upper first molar, calcification beginning upon the coronal extremities as early as the eighth fetal month, the crown being completely calcified by the fifth year, the roots formed and the apical foramina established by the eleventh year.

There is, however, one important difference between the development of this tooth and the corresponding upper tooth: that of calcification taking place usually from *five centers* instead of four, and, as a result, we find the occlusal surface provided with five well-developed cusps separated from one another by five developmental grooves. When compared with the upper first molar, the crown of this tooth is found to be somewhat less in size; in general outline it is subject to a greater variation and is much more angular in its nature. The mediobuccal measurement of the crown is nearly always greater than the buccolingual, and the length of the crown from the occlusal margins to the cervical line is proportionately less than that of the corresponding upper molar.

**The Occlusal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 127).—The general outline of the crown is best studied when looking directly upon this surface. Two principal varieties exist: one in which the sides or margins of the surface appear to be flattened or straightened out, and the other when these same margins are gracefully rounded. In either form the buccal line is the longest, so that the mesial and distal lines converge to meet the lingual.

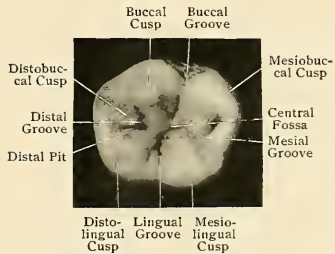


FIG. 127.—LOWER FIRST MOLAR, OCCLUSAL SURFACE.

This common form gives to the buccal angles an acute character, while the lingual angles are about equally obtuse. The surface is divided into five distinct or developmental portions, each of which is surmounted by a cusp, named, as their location indicates, mesiobuccal, buccal, distobuccal, mesiolingual, and distolingual. Separating these parts are five developmental grooves—the mesial, the distal, the buccal, the lingual, and the distobuccal. The four former cross the marginal ridges from the various surfaces and end in the central fossa, while the latter passes from the distobuccal angle and joins the distal groove, their union being marked by a slight depression or pit—the

distal pit. Branching off from the various grooves are a number of supplemental grooves, the presence of which results in the production of a number of smaller ridges.

*The Marginal Ridges of the Occlusal Surface.*—Properly speaking, these are only two in number, the mesiomarginal ridge and the distomarginal ridge. Those margins which correspond to the buccal and lingual ridges of the upper molars are so broken by the various cusps and developmental grooves that a definite marginal ridge scarcely exists, as will be observed by the description of these parts.

*The mesiomarginal ridge* is strongly outlined, passing from the mesiobuccal to the mesiolingual angle of the crown in the form of a bold angular ridge. In some instances it is broken near the center by the mesial groove passing over it to reach the mesial surface, in others being further divided by numerous small supplemental grooves.

*The distomarginal ridge* is much shorter and less decided than the mesial, and extends from the distobuccal to the distolingual angle. In nearly every instance it is broken by the distal groove, which crosses it to reach the distal surface.

*The buccomarginal ridge* is formed by the various ridges which descend in a mesial or distal direction from the three buccal cusps. Near the center the margin is broken by the buccal groove, and it is again broken at its distal third by the distobuccal groove, both of which pass over it to reach the buccal surface of the crown. This is much the longest margin of the surface, and in its entirety presents a gradual buccal convexity.

*The linguomarginal ridge* is principally made up of the distal incline from the mesial cusp, and by the mesial incline from the distal cusp. Near the center it is broken by the lingual groove, which passes over it to reach the lingual surface. This margin, unlike the buccal, is not always convex, but in many instances is almost a straight line, extending from the mesial to the distal angle.

**The Cusps** (Fig. 127).—*The Mesiobuccal Cusp* (Fig. 127).—This is usually the largest, though not always the longest, cusp of the group. It is bounded by the mesial and buccal surfaces and by the mesial and buccal grooves, which together form the mesio-



buccal triangular groove. Descending from the summit of this cusp to the distal is a well-defined ridge,—a part of the bucco-marginal ridge,—while in a mesial and lingual direction the descending ridges contribute to both the bucco- and mesio-marginal ridges. Descending toward the center of the surface and ending in the central fossa is the mesiobuccal triangular ridge.

*The Buccal Cusp* (Fig. 127).—This cusp, which is placed a little to the distal of the center of the buccal surface, is separated from the mesiobuccal cusp by the buccal groove, and from the distobuccal cusp by the distobuccal groove. It is about one-half the size of the mesiobuccal cusp, and a trifle less in length. Descending from it are two ridges, one in a mesial and one in a distal direction, which form a portion of the bucco-marginal ridge; descending to the buccal surface is the buccal ridge, while the central incline gives place to a fourth ridge—the buccotriangular ridge.

*The Distobuccal Cusp* (Fig. 127).—This cusp is much the smallest of the five, and is located at the distobuccal portion of the crown, in some instances being nearest the buccal surface, in others forced to the distal by an increase in the size of the buccal cusp. It is separated from the buccal cusp by the distobuccal groove, and from the distolingual cusp by the distal groove. The ridges which descend from it contribute to both the bucco- and disto-marginal ridges, and descending toward the distal pit is the distobuccal triangular ridge.

*The Mesiolingual Cusp* (Fig. 127).—This cusp is second in size, and frequently the longest and most pointed. It has for its boundaries the mesial and lingual surfaces, and the mesial and lingual grooves. The ridge which descends from it in a mesiobuccal direction assists in forming the mesiomarginal ridge, while that which passes to the distal forms a part of the linguomarginal ridge. In the direction of the central fossa a pronounced ridge is present,—the mesiolingual triangular ridge,—which is often supplemented by one or more smaller ridges running in the same direction.

*The Distolingual Cusp* (Fig. 127).—This cusp usually occupies the distolingual portion of the crown, although sometimes being forced well toward the lingual by the distobuccal cusp.

It is separated from the mesiolingual cusp by the lingual groove, and from the distobuccal by the distal groove. Two of the ridges which descend from it assist in forming the linguo- and disto-marginal ridges, while the one which descends the central incline is the distolingual triangular ridge. The central incline of the mesiobuccal, buccal, mesiolingual, and distolingual cusps contribute to the formation of the central fossa, while the buccal, distobuccal, and distolingual central inclines assist in forming the distal pit or fossa.

**The Buccal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 128).—This is the most extensive of the lateral surfaces of the crown. It is

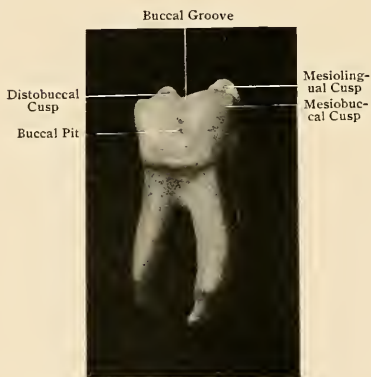


FIG. 128.—LOWER FIRST MOLAR, BUCCAL SURFACE.

convex from mesial to distal, and also from the occlusal margin to the cervical line. The width of the crown from the mesial to the distal angle is always somewhat greater than that at the cervical line, the difference being governed by the typical form of the tooth. A little to the mesial of the center of the surface is the buccal groove, which, after crossing the buccomarginal ridge, is usually

quite deep; but as it proceeds in the direction of the root it gradually disappears, or it may end abruptly in a well-defined pit—the *buccal pit*. The *distobuccal groove* enters the surface near the distobuccal angle, and gradually becomes less pronounced as it passes rootward. It is seldom so well defined as the buccal groove, and usually ends when about half-way to the cervical line. The occlusal margin is made irregular by the presence of the three buccal cusps; the cervical margin is nearly straight from mesial to distal, and is surmounted throughout by a strong

enamel fold, the cervicobuccal ridge. The mesial margin is longer than the distal, but neither of them are well defined.

**The Lingual Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 129).—This surface is smooth and convex in every direction. It is generally divided into two portions, a mesial and a distal, which are nearly equal in extent. This separation is formed by the *lingual groove*, which is sometimes deep and sulcate, at others shallow, and not infrequently entirely wanting. The surface is nearly one-third less in extent than the buccal, the convergence of the mesial and distal surfaces in passing to the lingual accounting for this difference. The occlusal margin is formed by the double incline of the two lingual cusps; the cervical margin is either straight or slightly concave in the direction of the occlusal surface, while the mesial and distal margins are rounded and poorly defined.

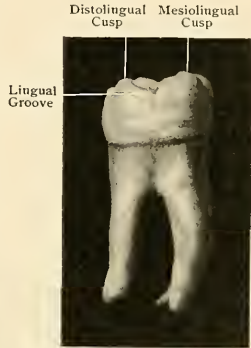


FIG. 129.—LOWER FIRST MOLAR, LINGUAL SURFACE.

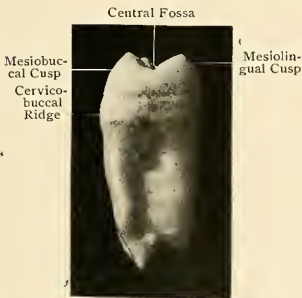


FIG. 130.—LOWER FIRST MOLAR, MESIAL SURFACE.

**The Mesial Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 130).—This surface is inclined to flatness, with a slight bulging near the center, which marks the point of contact with the approximate tooth. It is usually smooth, and unbroken by developmental or other grooves, although the mesial groove occasionally traverses it after crossing the marginal ridge from the occlusal surface.

Near the center of the cervical third a slight concavity is often present. The margins of the surface are somewhat irregular, the occlusal margin being made irregularly concave by the ridges

which descend from the two mesial cusps; the cervical margin is slightly concave in the direction of the occlusal surface, and, while the buccal margin inclines to the lingual as the occlusal surface is approached, the lingual is almost perpendicular.

**The Distal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 131).—Unlike the mesial, this surface is possessed of a decided convexity in every direction. It is surmounted by a portion of the distobuccal and distolingual cusps, and is frequently broken by the distal groove, which reaches it after crossing the marginal ridge from the occlusal surface. The occlusal margin is irregularly formed of the marginal ridges which descend from the distobuccal and distolingual cusps; the cervical margin is usually straight, while

the buccal and lingual are rounded and indefinite.

**The Neck of the Tooth.**—One characteristic feature of this tooth is the greater circumference of the crown at the occlusal margin over that at the cervical line, giving a flaring appearance to the crown, and resulting in the production of a neck which is much constricted. This is particularly noticeable

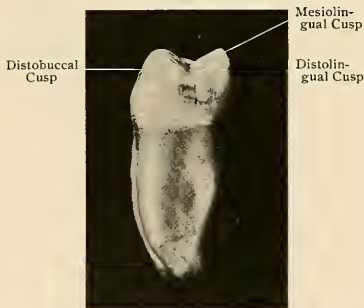


FIG. 131.—LOWER FIRST MOLAR, DISTAL SURFACE.

when looking upon the buccal surface of the tooth; but when looking upon the mesial or the distal surface, this feature is not so pronounced, although the rather heavy fold of enamel which surmounts the cervical line contributes much to the formation of the neck from these aspects.

**The Roots of the Tooth.**—The roots of this tooth are two in number,—one of which is placed beneath the mesial, and the other beneath the distal half of the crown,—and are named the *mesial root* and the *distal root*. The fact that the point of bifurcation is constantly in close proximity to the neck or crown of the tooth is a sufficient reason for the statement that two roots exist,

rather than a single root with two branches. The roots are both much flattened from mesial to distal, and broad at the base from buccal to lingual.

*The mesial root* is usually the larger and longer of the two. After leaving its base it generally inclines to the mesial, but beyond the center of its length it is provided with a distal turn, which in some instances amounts to a decided crook. The center of the mesial side is occupied by a longitudinal depression, as is also the distal side, making this part of the root thin, giving the appearance of an effort to bifurcate, which condition is occasionally present. The buccal and lingual sides of the root are rounded and smooth, and taper gradually to the apex, which is somewhat broadened from buccal to lingual.

*The distal root* is usually straight, with a more gradual taper throughout, ending in an apical extremity more pointed than that of the mesial root. A longitudinal depression is also present upon both the mesial and distal sides, but is never so pronounced as that upon the mesial root. The buccal and lingual sides are convex and smooth. The root possesses little or no inclination to bifurcate.

### LOWER SECOND MOLAR.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS ABOUT THE FIFTH YEAR.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, SIXTEENTH TO SEVENTEENTH YEAR.

ERUPTS, TWELTH TO SIXTEENTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .27.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .50.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .78.

This molar differs in so many particulars from the lower first molar that a separate description will be called for. The principal variation is frequently found in the absence of the fifth lobe or cusp,\* resulting in the production of an occlusal surface much less complicated.

**The Occlusal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 132).—When the crown is studied by looking directly upon this surface, the

---

\*When five cusps are present, the anatomy of this surface does not differ from that of the first molar.

variations between this and the first molar are readily noted. Four equally proportioned cusps are observed, separated from each other by four developmental grooves. A single pit or fossa is present, the four grooves arising from this one point. In general outline two principal varieties exist: one in which the opposite sides of the crown are nearly of the same length, and parallel with each other, with the angles rounded; the other, in which either the buccal or lingual margin is the longest, with the mesial and distal margins converging one way or the other, as the case may be. The marginal ridges are formed in a manner similar to those of the first molar, with the exception of the distal portion of the buccal ridge, which is not broken by a develop-

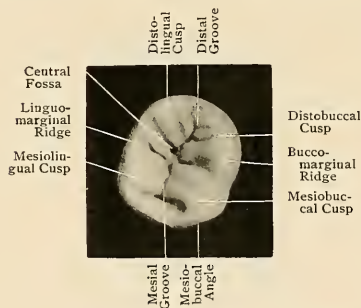


FIG. 132.—LOWER SECOND MOLAR, OCCLUSAL SURFACE.

mental groove. Each marginal ridge is divided near its center by one of the grooves of development, the mesial groove crossing the mesiomarginal ridge, the buccal groove crossing the buccomarginal ridge, the lingual groove crossing the lingual ridge, and the distal groove passing over the distal ridge. In many instances numerous supplemental grooves are

present, which in turn form a number of smaller ridges. The four *cusps* are the *mesiobuccal*, *distobuccal*, *mesiolingual*, and *distolingual*. In a general way they are similar to the cusps of the first lower molar, excepting that they are somewhat larger and probably less pointed and less angular. Each cusp is provided with a number of ridges, which descend from the summit to the base, two of these contributing to the formation of the marginal ridges, one passing to the buccal or lingual, and one, the triangular ridge, descending the central incline of each cusp. The names given to these various ridges are identical with those of the first molar.



**The Buccal Surface of the Crown (Fig. 133).**—The principal difference between this and the corresponding surface of the first molar is that produced by the absence of the fifth cusp, the surface being divided into two parts instead of three. The single division is caused by the buccal groove, which reaches the surface after crossing the buccomarginal ridge from the occlusal surface. The position of this groove is usually a little to the mesial of the center of the surface. Like the buccal groove of the first molar, it may disappear gradually as it passes toward the cervical line, or it may end in a well-marked pit—the buccal pit.

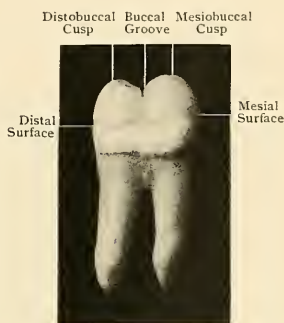


FIG. 133.—LOWER SECOND MOLAR, BUCCAL SURFACE.

**The Lingual Surface of the Crown (Fig. 134).**—This surface so closely resembles the corresponding surface of the first molar that it is somewhat difficult to distinguish one from the other. The occlusal margin may be a trifle less irregular, and in some instances more extensive, than the buccal surface, this latter feature seldom occurring in the first molar.

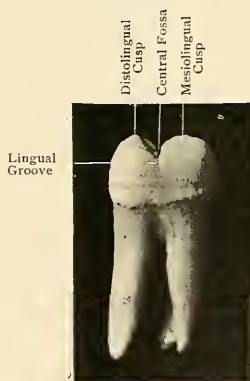


FIG. 134. — LOWER SECOND MOLAR, LINGUAL SURFACE.

**The Mesial Surface of the Crown (Fig. 135).**—This surface corresponds to the mesial surface of the first molar, being flattened or slightly convex from buccal to lingual, with an inclination to a slight depression or concavity near the cervical margin.

**The Distal Surface of the Crown (Fig. 136).**—On account of the absence of the fifth cusp, this surface is less complex than

that of the first molar. It is convex in all directions; in most instances smooth, in others broken by the distal groove, which

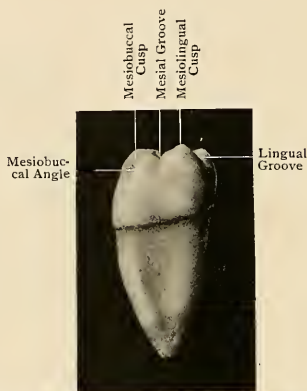


FIG. 135.—LOWER SECOND MOLAR, MESIAL SURFACE.

reaches it after crossing the distomarginal ridge from the occlusal surface.

**The Roots of the Tooth.**—Like the first molar, these are

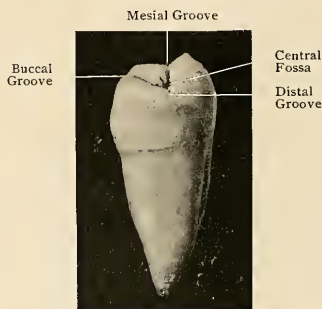


FIG. 136.—LOWER SECOND MOLAR, DISTAL SURFACE.

two in number, a mesial and a distal. They are much less constant in form, are often nearer together, and in some instances

united. When the two roots exist,—which may be considered the normal condition,—they are less flattened upon their mesial and distal sides, with the longitudinal depression wanting or but slightly apparent. These roots, therefore, are more rounded in general, taper more gradually from neck to apex, and end in a rounded apex, this often being provided with a slight distal curve.

### LOWER THIRD MOLAR.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, EIGHTH TO NINTH YEAR.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, EIGHTEENTH YEAR.

ERUPTS, SIXTEENTH TO TWENTIETH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .26.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOTS, .36.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .62.

This tooth is probably subject to a greater variety in form than any other tooth in the mouth. There are, however, two varieties which are most frequently met with. In one the crown of the tooth is similar to the lower second molar, being provided with four cusps, which are separated from one another by four developmental grooves (Fig. 137). The other is similar to the lower first molar, having five cusps and five developmental grooves.

While these two forms are those most commonly met with, the occlusal surface may be so broken by numerous supplemental and developmental grooves that even six or eight well-defined cusps may be present. Whatever complications

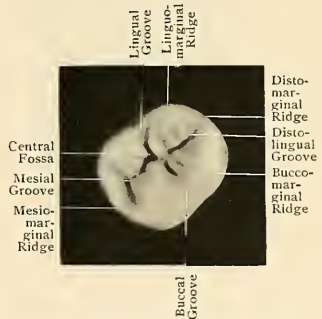


FIG. 137.—LOWER THIRD MOLAR,  
OCCLUSAL SURFACE.

may exist upon the occlusal surface, a central fossa is usually present, from which radiate the various developmental grooves. When the central fossa is absent, the space which it should occupy is usually taken up by a rounded cusp, by the interference of which the grooves are prevented from uniting, and their course is much

distorted. Along with these variations, the tooth is subject to much variety in size. In some instances the crown is one-third less in circumference than that of either the first or second lower molars, while in others it is a trifle greater. The increase in the size of the crown is generally accompanied by an increase in the number of cusps. One feature very common to the crown is its inclination to the circular form, almost resulting in the absence of the angles common to molars in general. The marginal ridges are, of course, subject to the ever-varying conditions to be found upon the occlusal surface; in general,



FIG. 138.—LOWER THIRD MOLAR,  
BUCCAL SURFACE.

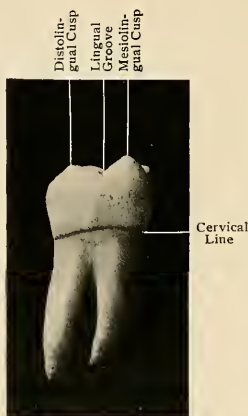


FIG. 139.—LOWER THIRD MOLAR,  
LINGUAL SURFACE.

they are poorly defined, and are frequently crossed by numerous small supplemental grooves, dividing them into many minute tubercles. The latter are smooth and strongly convex, with their general outlines much influenced by the number of cusps.

**The Roots of the Tooth.**—While this tooth is strongly inclined to be two-rooted, like the other lower molars, this condition is by no means the common one. Like the crown, the roots are probably more variable than those of any other tooth. A single conic root may be present, or a mesial and a distal root may exist; again, the mesial root may bifurcate,

thus resulting in three. In some instances, four, or even five, branches may be given off from a common base. When more than two roots are present, they are usually much twisted



FIG. 140.—TYPES OF LOWER THIRD MOLARS.

or crooked, and, while generally inclined to the distal, are liable to branch in various directions.

A better idea in the variations in this tooth may be had from the accompanying illustration (Fig. 140).

## CHAPTER X.

### THE PULP-CAVITIES OF THE TEETH.

In the preceding chapters the study of the teeth has been confined to their external forms; it will now be necessary to learn something of their internal anatomy, and for this purpose various dissections of each individual tooth must be made.

**Dissections.**—First, a longitudinal dissection of each tooth should be made by sawing or filing from labial to lingual in the anterior teeth, or from buccal to lingual in the posterior teeth. Second, a longitudinal dissection by sawing from mesial to distal. Third, numerous transverse dissections by sawing through the crown or root at various points.

These dissections will expose to view a central cavity with outlines closely corresponding to those of the tooth itself. This is called the *pulp-cavity*, and in the vital tooth contains the formative and life-sustaining substance of the dentin, the *dental-pulp*. The pulp-cavity is divided into two principal parts, that portion within the crown of the tooth being the *pulp-chamber*, while that traversing the root is the *pulp-canal*. At the apex of the root the canal ends in a small foramen, the *apical foramen*, which transmits the blood-vessels and nerves to the pulp. The pulp-chamber occupies the center of the crown and is always a single cavity; the pulp-canals are prolongations from this central cavity, and are usually one for each root, although in some instances two or more canals are present in a single root. The form of the pulp-chamber varies with the shape of the crown, the outline of the cutting-edge in the incisor teeth being reproduced in that part of the chamber nearest to the cutting-edge, while in the bicuspid and molars the occlusal surface is reproduced on the wall of the pulp-chamber, immediately beneath it, the lateral walls corresponding to the various sides of the tooth. In the incisors and cuspids the pulp-chamber passes so gradually into the pulp-canal that a positive line of demarcation between the two



is not observed. In the bicuspid and molars the canals may be readily distinguished by a sudden constriction and branching out of the cavity into the various roots, which prolongations gradually decrease in size until the apical foramen is reached. The size of the pulp-cavity is much influenced by the age of the tooth, its functional activity, character of the occlusion, etc. The tooth-pulp, as the formative organ of the dentin, gradually decreases in size as the tooth develops (see Development of the Teeth), and as a result of this action the youngest teeth are provided with the largest pulp-cavities. At the time of eruption of a tooth, the diameter of the pulp-cavity is about equal to one-half the diameter of the crown, while the length of the canal must, of necessity, accord with the extent of root-calcification. As the growth of the tooth proceeds, the diameter of both the chamber and canal is gradually diminished; this gradual reduction in size is continued during the life of the tooth, and if permitted to proceed until old age, the chamber and canal may become almost or entirely obliterated. It must be remembered that while the diameter of the root-canal is diminished with the growth of the tooth, its length increases, continuing to do so until the time of complete root-calcification. During the period of root-development the diameter of the root-canal is greatest at the free or apical end of the root, at which point it presents a funnel-shaped opening (Fig. 141). As the root continues to calcify, this funnel-shaped extremity of the canal advances in the direction of calcification, and finally, as the formative process nears completion, the mouth of the funnel gradually disappears, and the apical foramen is established. The various lobes of the teeth are penetrated by a prolongation of the pulp-cavity, these being called the *horns of the pulp-chamber*. The depth to which the horn penetrates the lobe varies in accordance with the form of the latter. If the tooth is one provided with long, penetrating cusps, the horns of the pulp-chamber will also be long, but if the cusps be poorly formed, the horns of the chamber will be short. In the anterior teeth, when the lobal construction is outlined by well-marked developmental grooves, the horns of the pulp-chamber will be three in number and directed toward the cutting-edge. These are most marked in young teeth, and

gradually disappear as age advances. The functional activity of the teeth also serves to materially reduce the size of the pulp-chamber. Thus, when opposing teeth occlude squarely and firmly against each other, with more or less rubbing or sliding during mastication, the external surface is prone to rapid abrasion, and, as a direct result of this external change, the pulp-chamber undergoes a corresponding alteration by a growth of secondary dentin about its walls.

### THE PULP-CAVITIES OF THE UPPER TEETH.

**Upper Central Incisor.**—Figure 141 represents a number of labiolingual sections presenting the relative size and shape of the pulp-cavity in the upper central incisor at various

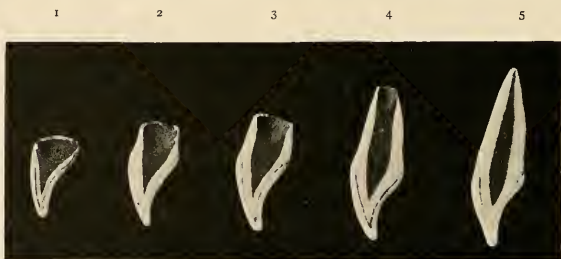


FIG. 141.—THE PULP-CAVITY IN THE UPPER CENTRAL INCISOR, FROM THE SIXTH TO THE TENTH YEAR.

ages. In No. 1 the condition existing at about the sixth year, or at a time immediately prior to the eruption of the tooth, is shown. The tooth-crown is fully formed and calcified; the cervical line may be observed, as well as a small portion of the root-wall. The pulp-chamber, which is represented by the dark portion of the cut, occupies about one-third of the diameter of the crown at its greatest width. The pulp-chamber at this age, when viewed in this direction, forms almost a perfect cone, the base of which is directed upward or toward the future extremity of the root, and its apex downward in the direction of the cutting-edge of the tooth. The apex of the cone may end somewhat

abruptly, or it may be lengthened into a slender, horn-like projection, extending well toward the cutting-edge. No. 2 represents the same tooth about the seventh year, or at a time shortly after its eruption. The pulp-chamber has become slightly reduced in its basal diameter, while but little change has taken place in the apex. That portion of the pulp-cavity above the cervical line represents a part of the future pulp-canal. At this age the canal is a direct continuation of the conic pulp-chamber, ending above in a broad, funnel-shaped extremity. No. 3 shows the condition of the cavity about the eighth year. The diameter of the pulp-chamber is considerably diminished, the apex has slightly receded, and the horn-like projection has partly disappeared. The increase in the length of the canal is about  $\frac{3}{16}$  of an inch over its length at seven years. The two parallel sides of the canal have lengthened proportionately, and the funnel-shaped extremity is reduced in diameter owing to the gradual narrowing of the root-walls. No. 4 gives the relative size of the pulp-chamber and canal at the ninth year, or at a time when root-calcification is nearing completion. The decrease in the capacity of the chamber is readily apparent; the horn-like projection has disappeared and the parallel sides of the canal are partly extended into the chamber, thus reducing the length of the cone. In the canal a greater reduction has taken place in its diameter, while its length has increased about  $\frac{1}{4}$  of an inch over that at eight years, and the diameter of the funnel-shaped opening is but little greater than that of the body of the canal. No. 5, which represents the tooth about the tenth year, shows the calcific action in the root completed, and the apical foramen established. A glance at the illustration will show the gradual decrease in the capacity of the pulp-cavity and the completion of its growth in an apical direction. At this stage of development the fan-shaped extremity of the canal gradually disappears, and for the first time in the life of the tooth the canal partakes of the external root form throughout its entire extent.

Figure 142, A, represents the size and form of the average pulp-cavity in the adult upper central incisor. In its entirety it represents a double cone, with a common base near the

cervical line, the pulp-cavity forming one cone and the pulp-canal the other. At this common base the cavity assumes its largest diameter, which measurement is approximately equal to one-fourth the labiolingual diameter of the tooth. The extent and form of the lower cone, or that represented by the pulp-chamber, varies in the adult tooth with the tooth type. Thus, in the nervous type the cone is long and narrow, with the apex ending in a hair-like projection. In the tooth of the lymphatic temperament the cone is prone to be wide, with its apex ending abruptly. In the sanguine and bilious types the form and extent of the cone do not partake of either of the foregoing extremes, but, in keeping with the outline of the crowns, are intermediate between them. Figure 142, B, represents the average

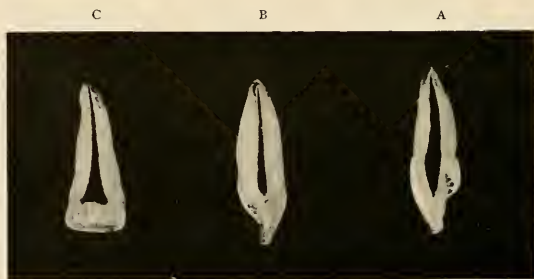


FIG. 142.—PULP-CAVITY IN THE UPPER CENTRAL INCISOR.

condition of the pulp-cavity in the central incisor in advanced age, and shows a general reduction in the size of both chamber and canal. A further study of the pulp-chamber and canal may be made by a mesiodistal section made through the long axis of the tooth (Fig. 142, C). The outline of the cavity, viewed in this way, closely follows the outline of the crown and root of the tooth. There is no distinct division between the chamber and the canal, the former gradually blending into the latter. The outline of the entire cavity is that of a single cone, with its base directed toward the cutting-edge and its apex in the direction of the apical extremity of the root. The lower margin of the pulp-chamber, or that nearest the cutting-edge of the crown, is

broad from mesial to distal and thin from labial to lingual. This margin in the average adult tooth is about on a line with the center of the labial surface of the crown, and the lateral walls of the cavity as they pass upward converge slightly, and finally blend into the walls of the canal at a point somewhat beyond the cervical line. During the early life of the tooth the margin of the chamber nearest the cutting-edge presents three well-defined horns, corresponding to the three rudimentary lobes found upon the cutting-edge at this period. These horns rapidly disappear, and are seldom found after the fifteenth year. In certain tooth types, however, the mesial and distal horns may continue present until adult age, and even into middle life, but when this occurs it is not the result of the

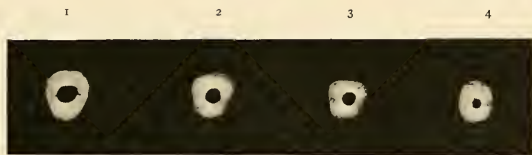


FIG. 143.—TRANSVERSE SECTIONS, ROOT OF UPPER CENTRAL INCISORS, SLIGHTLY ENLARGED.

temporary tooth form, but is occasioned by the permanent angular outline of the crown.

Figure 143 represents a number of transverse sections of an upper central incisor, showing the outline and relative size of the pulp-cavity in passing from the base of the crown toward the apex of the root. No. 1 shows the outline of the cavity at the cervical line; No. 2 represents the condition  $\frac{1}{8}$  of an inch nearer the apex of the root; No. 3 is from the center of the root length, while No. 4 is from the region of the apex.

**Upper Lateral Incisor.**—The pulp-cavity in the upper lateral incisor is so nearly identical with that of the central that it will only be necessary to call attention to one or two points which are at variance. Figure 144 shows the five stages as represented by the growth of the tooth. In general it will be observed that the cavity is much smaller than that of the central incisor, but this difference is to be accounted for in the

smaller proportions of the tooth. No. 1 shows the condition of the crown and pulp-cavity about the sixth year, the pulp-



FIG. 144.—PULP-CAVITY IN THE UPPER LATERAL INCISOR, FROM THE SIXTH TO THE TENTH YEAR.

cavity occupying a large portion of the partly calcified tooth-crown. No. 2 represents the conditions present at the seventh

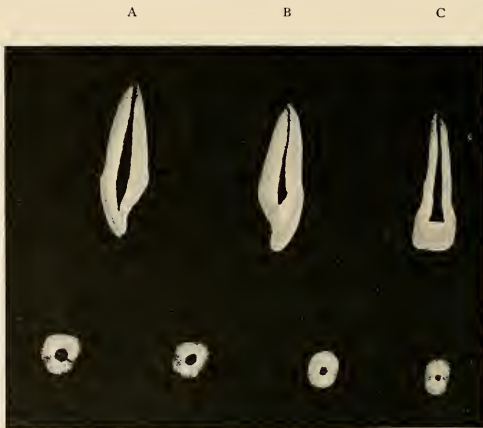


FIG. 145.

year, or about the time of the eruption of the tooth. The pulp-chamber at this age resembles a perfect cone, the base of which



reaches to the root-walls, and faintly outlines the beginning of the future pulp-canal. In No. 3, at eight years, the length of the root has increased about  $\frac{3}{16}$  of an inch, and the parallel sides of the walls of the pulp-canal have made their appearance. In No. 4, at nine years, by the growth of the root the canal has considerably increased in length and at the same time much decreased in diameter, while in No. 5, at ten years, the root is completely formed, the apical foramen established, and the maximum size of the entire pulp-cavity in the fully formed tooth shown.

Figure 145, A, shows the average condition of the pulp-cavity in the upper lateral incisor at adult age, while figure 145, B, represents the same tooth in old age. In a mesiodistal section—figure 145, C—a very close resemblance to the pulp-cavity in the central incisor will be noticed. While the pulp-cavity is smaller than that of the central incisor, it is usually a trifle larger in proportion to the size of the tooth. Owing to the marked constriction at the neck of this tooth, there is occasionally found a slight line of distinction between the pulp-chamber and canal, but in the majority of instances this is not to be observed. The horns of the pulp-chamber are in every respect similar to those of the central incisor, excepting when they exist permanently, in which case the mesial horn is usually the longest. By the transverse sections shown in figure 145, the gradual decrease in size and change in form in the root-canal are presented, the sections being similar to those made in the root of the central incisor.

**Upper Cuspid.**—The pulp-cavity of this tooth is in general similar to that of the incisors, excepting that the coronal extremity of the chamber is conic and inclined to a horn-like projection which penetrates the single cusp of the tooth-crown in the direction of its summit. Figure 146 represents a number of labiopalatal sections. No. 1 shows the condition of the pulp-cavity about the seventh year, or fully five years before the eruption of the tooth. The pulp-chamber partakes of the cone shape previously referred to, but the margins, instead of being straight lines, are somewhat bowed or concave, thus conforming more closely to the outline of the

crown. The central horn of the chamber is proportionately longer than that of the incisors, in correspondence with the cusp of the tooth. At this age the formative process has barely extended to the root-walls; therefore, the width of the cavity is about equal to its length. In No. 2, at eight years, an increase in the capacity of the chamber over that of the incisors is shown, this being the result of the greater bulk in the tooth-crown. The cone-like outline of the chamber is somewhat broken by an effort of its margins to follow the outline of the crown. In No. 3, at nine years, the principal change has taken place in the canal, which has lengthened fully  $\frac{3}{16}$  of an inch, and the funnel-shaped extremity, instead of joining with the



FIG. 146.—PULP-CAVITY IN THE UPPER CUSPID, FROM THE SEVENTH TO THE TWELFTH YEAR.

pulp-chamber direct, is continued below by two parallel walls to the true beginning of this cavity. At ten years, No. 4, a more marked transformation has taken place in both portions of the cavity. The diameter of the chamber at the cervical line has diminished, as has also the length of the cone. The increase in the length of the root, which has been proportionately greater than that of the preceding year, has extended the length of the canal about  $\frac{3}{8}$  of an inch. The walls of the canal are no longer parallel with each other, but are inclined to follow the root-outlines. The funnel-shaped opening is much reduced both in length and breadth. No. 5 represents the condition at the time of the eruption of the tooth, or about the twelfth year. The general outline of the pulp-cavity is

that of a double cone, with a common base at a point nearly corresponding to the cervical line. The diameter in both the chamber and canal has considerably decreased, while the central horn in the former has further receded. The calcification of the root externally is about complete and the foramen formed. In this particular the cuspid tooth differs from the incisors, and in fact from all other teeth, in having its root-calcification about completed and the apical foramen established at or soon after the

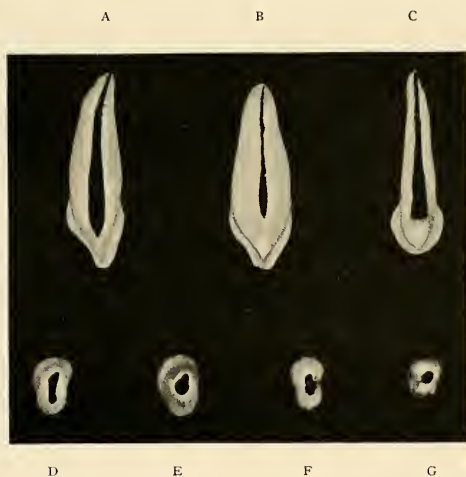


FIG. 147.

time of its eruption. Figure 147, A, gives an idea of the capacity of the pulp-cavity in the upper cuspid at maturity, while figure 146, B, shows the condition in advanced age. Figure 147, C, is a mediobuccal section of a matured upper cuspid. The coronal extremity of the pulp-chamber is square, and but little inclined to follow the outline of the mesial and distal cutting-edges. The chamber passes into the canal without a mark of separation, and the latter gradually diminishes in diameter as the apex of the root is approached. At its point of beginning the canal is sometimes inclined to flatness from mesial to distal, but in

passing toward the apex this tendency disappears, and it becomes more circular in outline. In figure 147, D, a transverse section through the tooth at the cervical line is shown, giving an idea of the proportionate size and form of the canal in the adult tooth, while E, F, and G represent transverse sections through the root of the same tooth at various points between the cervical line and the apex of the root.

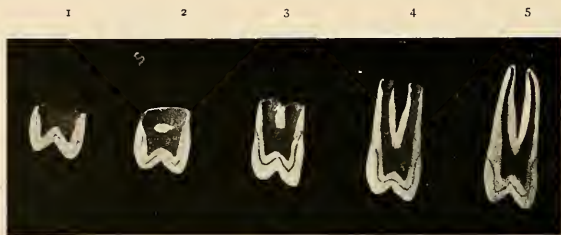


FIG. 148.—PULP-CAVITIES OF THE UPPER FIRST BICUSPID, FROM THE SEVENTH TO THE TWELFTH YEAR.

**Upper First Bicuspid.**—The study of the pulp-cavity in this tooth differs in many particulars from that of the incisors and cuspids. First, the line of distinction between the pulp-chamber and the root-canal or canals is, in most instances, definitely marked by the bifurcation of the roots and a corresponding branching of the pulp-cavity into two fine canals, one of which occupies the center of each root. This division of the cavity brings the center of the pulp-chamber almost on a level with the cervical line. In figure 148, No. 1 shows the partly calcified crown of the upper first bicuspid at the seventh year. A portion of the pulp-chamber alone may be studied at this period, and this is found to be somewhat irregular in outline, with a broadened, funnel-shaped opening above, and two small, cone-like projections below, pointing into either cusp of the crown. These latter projections are the horns of the pulp-chamber, and are named in accordance with the cusp which they occupy. In very young teeth it is not unusual to find these horns penetrating the dentin almost to the enamel-wall. No. 2, at eight years, shows the crown fully calcified and the outline of the base of the

roots established. The horns of the pulp-chamber have slightly receded, and the branching of the canals is made manifest by the central deposit of dentin. In No. 3, at nine years, the capacity of the pulp-chamber is much decreased, and appears to have receded bodily rootward. The roots are calcified to about one-third their full length, and the canals which traverse them are each provided with the funnel-shaped opening at their free calcifying extremities. In No. 4, at ten years, the decrease in the size of the pulp-chamber is not only caused by the deposit of dentin upon the occlusal and lateral walls, but from the direction of the roots as well. The diameter of the root canals is much less than at nine years, but the walls are as yet parallel. No. 5 shows the roots fully formed and the apical foramina established, which condition occurs about the twelfth year. The horns of the pulp-chamber have receded somewhat, and the center of this cavity is now almost on a level with the cervical line. The canals have assumed the form of the roots themselves, and their diameter is much diminished. The illustration shows the proportionate maximum size of the chamber and canals in this tooth after completion of surface calcification. It will be observed that the foramina are proportionately smaller than those of the incisors and cuspids at a corresponding period, this condition resulting from the lesser diameter of the roots.

Figure 149, A, illustrates the approximate size and form of the pulp-chamber and canals at adult age, and attention is called to the appearance of the horns of the pulp-chamber. It will be observed that the horn which penetrates the buccal cusp is larger and more pointed than that directed toward the lingual cusp; this condition is fully explained by the buccal cusp being proportionately larger and longer than the lingual. In the same figure, B represents the pulp-cavity in the first upper bicuspid at advanced age. The foregoing description applies only to the two-rooted bicuspids, but as many of these teeth have but one root, an additional description will be necessary. When a single root is present, many varieties in the outline of the pulp-cavity will be presented; this variation, however, seldom affects the capacity or form of the pulp-chamber. Two distinct canals may exist in the single root (Fig. 149, C), branching off from the

chamber, one from the buccal and one from the lingual portion. These canals gradually taper in the direction of the apex of the root, and may end in a single foramen, or in distinct foramina. Occasionally the canals will unite before reaching the root-apex, and continue as a single canal ending in a single foramen, or they may communicate at one point and again diverge and finally end in separate foramina. In some instances the pulp-canal appears to be a direct continuation of the pulp-chamber, extending throughout the length

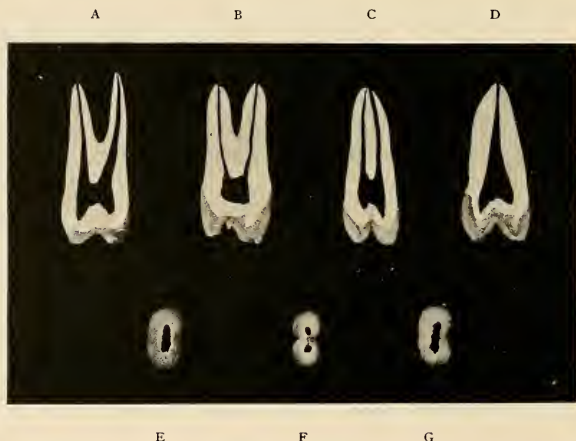


FIG. 149.—PULP-CAVITIES OF THE UPPER FIRST BICUSPID, ENLARGED ABOUT ONE-THIRD.

of the root in the form of a flattened canal, with its greatest diameter from buccal to lingual (Fig. 149, D). When two separate canals exist in the single root, the outward appearance of the root indicates a near approach to two roots; when the single flattened canal is present, the root is also flattened and shows no sign of bifurcation. Reference has been made to the horns of the pulp-chamber, and in this connection it will be well to speak of the extent to which they may exist. In that type of tooth provided with long penetrating cusps the horns will dip well down into the cusp occasionally to the full



depth of the dentin, and in rare instances may penetrate the enamel. In those teeth lacking in cusp-formation the length of the horns will be correspondingly reduced, and may be entirely wanting. In the two-rooted upper first bicuspid the floor of the pulp-chamber, or that part of the cavity directed rootward, is prominent and rounded in the center, from which point it gradually slopes toward the entrances to the canals, one of which arises from the extreme buccal margin, and the other from the extreme lingual margin. Figure 149, E, represents a transverse section of the two roots immediately below the point of bifurcation. F represents a section of the two roots midway between the cervical line and the apical extremity, while G is a transverse section of D at the cervical line.

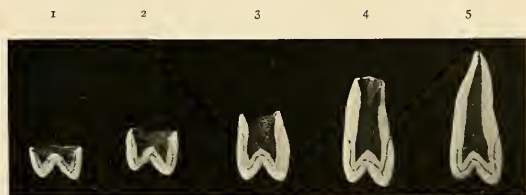


FIG. 150.—PULP-CAVITIES IN THE UPPER SECOND BICUSPID, FROM THE SEVENTH TO THE TWELFTH YEAR.

**Upper Second Bicuspid.**—The pulp-cavity of this tooth is in many respects similar to that of the first bicuspid, the principal variations being in the horns of the chamber, which are proportionately smaller in correspondence with the diminution in cusp-formation. There is usually no positive line of demarcation between the chamber and canal, the latter being quite large, and broad from buccal to lingual. The extent of the pulp-chamber is sometimes well defined by the presence of two root-canals, similar to those described in connection with the first bicuspid. In rare instances the tooth may possess two roots, each of which would be traversed by a canal. Figure 150 represents the various stages of the development of the pulp-cavity, as shown by a longitudinal section from buccal to lingual. No. 1 shows the condition at seven years, or at a time when a portion

of the crown only is calcified, in consequence of which the pulp-chamber alone can be studied at this period. The buccal and lingual horns of the chamber may be observed penetrating the dentin in the direction of their respective cusps. No. 2 shows the advance made in the formative process by the eighth year, or at a time immediately prior to the eruption of the tooth; the outline of the chamber is completed and the walls of the future pulp-canal faintly outlined. At this period there has been but little change in the horns of the pulp-cavity. No. 3 shows the condi-

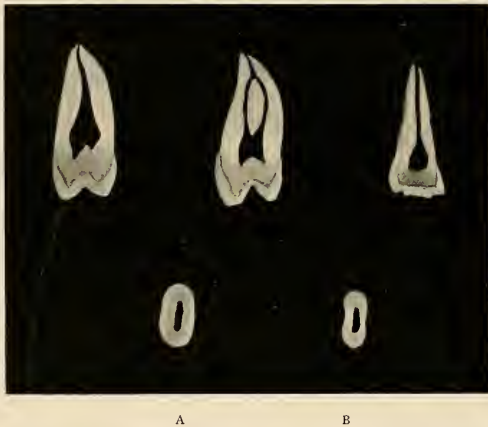


FIG. 151.—SECTION OF UPPER SECOND BICUSPID, SLIGHTLY ENLARGED.

tion of the tooth at the ninth year, or at the beginning of its eruptive period. The diameter of the chamber has somewhat decreased, the horns have slightly receded, the funnel-shaped extremity of the cavity has advanced beyond the cervical line, and is now confined to the canal alone. No. 4 represents the condition of the pulp-cavity about the tenth year. A gradual decrease in the diameter of both the chamber and canal is observed, and the horns of the pulp-cavity are growing less prominent. The length of the root having increased nearly one-quarter of an inch, we find a corresponding addition to the length of the canal. No. 5 shows the maximum size of the

pulp-cavity in the upper second bicuspid, which condition accompanies the completion of the external calcific action at the twelfth year. As previously stated, the cavity, in its entirety, presents no line of separation between the chamber and canal, but gradually tapers from its broadened base in the crown to its ending at the apex of the root. In this tooth, as well as in all those previously described, the apical foramen at the time of completion of root-calcification is comparatively large, and readily penetrated during operations upon it. Figure 151 illustrates a number of sections of an upper second bicuspid at maturity. The same figure also represents two transverse sections, A being at the cervical line, B midway between the cervical line and the apex of the root.

#### PULP CAVITIES OF THE UPPER MOLARS.

The inner anatomy of the molar teeth being much more complicated than any of those previously described, it will be found necessary to make a number of dissections in various directions in order to obtain a comprehensive idea of the location and form of the different parts of the pulp-cavity. The line of demarcation between the pulp-chamber and canals is always definite, the former occupying a central position in the crown and seldom extending beyond the cervical line, while the latter are given off from the floor of the chamber and penetrate the various roots, their entrances being marked by small funnel-shaped openings in the floor of the chamber. In the matured tooth the form of the chamber usually corresponds to that of the crown of the tooth. The lateral walls of the chamber are four in number, and are named according to their location—mesial, distal, buccal, and lingual. The average thickness of these walls at maturity is about equal to the diameter of the pulp-chamber. In that type of tooth common to the lymphatic temperament where there is but little constriction at the neck, resulting in the various sides of the tooth-crown being nearly parallel with each other, the pulp-chamber is nearly quadrilateral in form; but in those teeth marked by a decided constriction at the neck, most marked in the nervous temperament, the extent of surface cov-

ered by the floor of the chamber is much less than that occupied by the occlusal portion. In the former class, the entrances to the various canals are much farther apart than in the latter. The occluding wall is usually much thicker than the lateral walls, and is penetrated by the horns of the pulp-chamber, one of which extends into each cusp. As in the bicuspid, the extent to which the horns penetrate the cusps is controlled by the prominence of the latter. The floor of the pulp-chamber is irregularly rounded, being high in the corner and gradually falling away in the direction of the canals. The entrances to the root-canals, three in number, are placed in the form of an irregular triangle, called the molar triangle. The mesial side of the triangle is usually the longest, the distal next in length, and the buccal the shortest.



FIG. 152.

In young teeth the entrances to the canals are usually in the form of funnel-shaped openings, are comparatively easy of access, but after maturity may disappear and be but little larger than the canals themselves. To properly study the position occupied by the entrance to the canals on the floor of the pulp-chamber, a transverse section of the tooth should be made at a point somewhat above the cervical

line, at the same time preserving both the crown and the roots of the tooth for comparison. The entrance to the lingual canal, which is usually the largest and most readily accessible, may be located by a line drawn through the center of the occlusal surface of the crown (Fig. 152) from buccal to lingual, A, and by another line drawn from mesial to distal almost parallel with the linguomarginal ridge, passing through the summits of the mesiolingual and distolingual cusps, B; the point at which these two lines intersect will mark the approximate location of the lingual canal. The entrance to the mesiobuccal canal may be located by a line drawn from the inner side of the mesiobuccal angle to a corresponding position near the distobuccal angle, C. This

should be intersected by a line drawn from the summit of the mesiobuccal cusp to the summit of the mesiolingual cusp, D, the point at which these two lines cross marking the entrance to the mesiobuccal canal. The location of the entrance to the distobuccal canal is found by the line, C, which is intersected by another line, E, drawn from the summit of the distobuccal cusp to a corresponding point on the distolingual cusp. The nearer the tooth-crown approaches to the quadrilateral, the nearer will the molar triangle approach the equilateral.



FIG. 153.—PULP-CAVITY OF UPPER FIRST MOLAR, FROM THE FIFTH TO THE NINTH YEAR. LINGUAL AND MESIOBUCCAL CANALS.

**Upper First Molar.**—In the dissection of this tooth, the pulp-chamber and two of the root-canals only can be shown, but these will be sufficient to pursue the study with intelligence. Figure 153 shows a number of longitudinal sections, made in such a manner as to expose the lingual canal, usually the largest, and the mesiobuccal canal. No. 1 illustrates the approximate size and form of the pulp-chamber at the fifth year. At this period the chamber occupies a large proportion of the center of the tooth-crown. Two of the four horns are seen, one of which penetrates the mesiobuccal cusp, and one the mesiolingual cusp. In many instances the horns of the molar teeth are quite slender, penetrating the dentin to a greater depth than that shown in the illustration, in the form of minute hair-like projections, which in some instances reach almost to the enamel walls.

No. 2 illustrates the condition of the pulp-cavity at the sixth year, or at the time of eruption. The outline of the pulp-

chamber is completed, and the floor has begun to make its appearance by a central deposit of dentin. It will be observed that the lateral walls of the chamber are somewhat less in thickness than the occluding wall, a condition which will become more pronounced as the tooth develops. With the beginning of the formative process in the floor of the chamber we find the trifurcation of the roots established, and the beginning of the canals outlined. The canals at this period are quite similar to those of the bicuspid, being provided with a funnel-shaped extremity, which extends from the free calcifying margins of the roots to the floor of the chamber. No. 3 shows the change which has taken place at the seventh year. While the pulp-chamber is somewhat reduced in size, but little change is noticeable in its outline. By this time the floor of the chamber has become an important factor in the tooth development. By the constant lateral extension of this central deposit of dentin the floor of the chamber is gradually spread out, this alteration being at the expense of the entrances to the root-canals, which become reduced in diameter as the floor is extended. The horns of the chamber are slightly less prominent, but this part of the cavity has the appearance of having receded bodily rootward. The roots have advanced somewhat beyond the point of trifurcation, and a definite outline has been given to the canals. At this period the diameter of the root-wall is about equal to the diameter of the pulp-canal. Along with the gradual decrease in the diameter of the roots, there is observed a corresponding decrease in the width of the funnel-shaped extremities of the canals.

At the eighth year, No. 4, a gradual reduction in the capacity of both the chamber and canal is noted. Accompanying the above condition there is found a corresponding increase in the thickness of the surrounding walls. The horns of the pulp-chamber are much reduced in size, and the form of the chamber more closely resembles that of the general contour of the tooth-crown. The increase in the length of the roots is proportionately greater than that of previous years, in consequence of which the length of the canals is increased to a greater degree. In No. 5 the maximum size of the chamber and canals



is apparent, which condition takes place about the ninth year, or at a time when calcification of the tooth is completed externally. In some instances, owing to the additional length of the lingual root, the apical foramen may not be established before the tenth year. At this latter period it is safe to assume that all three canals have completed their longitudinal extent, and the foramina, although proportionately large, have been established, so that a more definite description of each canal may be given. The *lingual canal* (Fig. 154, A) is usually the

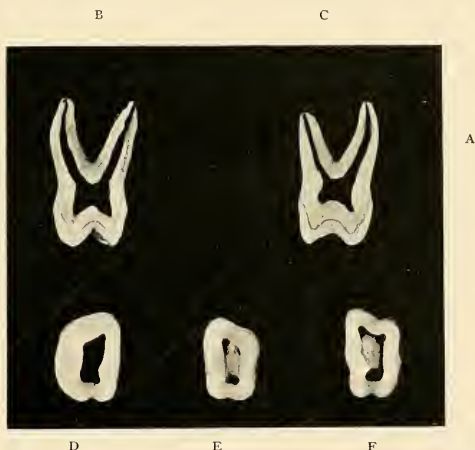


FIG. 154.—PULP-CAVITIES OF UPPER FIRST MOLAR, SLIGHTLY ENLARGED.

largest, and branches off from the floor of the chamber, near the mesiodistal center of the extreme lingual margin, the entrance in the average tooth being well defined by a circular, funnel-shaped opening. The direction of this canal is usually upward and slightly inward, until the apical extremity is approached, at which point it is inclined to the buccal. The circular form presented at the beginning of the canal is generally continued throughout its entire length, in this respect differing from the two buccal canals. The average length of the lingual canal is about  $\frac{1}{2}$  of an inch. The *mesiobuccal* canal (Fig. 154, B)

branches off from the floor of the chamber, at its extreme mesio-buccal angle, and the entrance, instead of being funnel-shaped and easy of access, is flattened from mesial to distal, and frequently difficult to enter. This flattened form continues throughout its course, which for the distance of  $\frac{1}{8}$  of an inch is in a buccal and mesial direction; beyond this point it is usually inclined to the buccal, until the upper third of the root is reached, where it turns rather abruptly to the distal. This canal is generally a trifle shorter than the lingual, averaging about  $\frac{3}{8}$  to  $\frac{7}{16}$  of an inch. The *distobuccal* canal (Fig. 154, C) branches off from the floor of the chamber at the extreme distobuccal angle. In those teeth which most nearly approach the quadrilateral form, the entrance to this canal will be farther from the center of the tooth, the molar triangle in this instance being almost an equilateral. It sometimes happens that the entrance to this canal is directly in the floor of the pulp-chamber, near to, but not against, its buccodistal angle. The entrance is usually abrupt, seldom being funnel-shaped, making it by far the most difficult of access. It is inclined to be circular in form, and more or less tortuous in its course. Immediately above the point of beginning it is inclined toward the buccal and distal; near its center it may incline slightly to the mesial; and finally, at its upper third, turns somewhat abruptly in a distobuccal direction. This canal is usually the shortest of the three, its average length being about  $\frac{3}{8}$  of an inch.

Figure 154 also illustrates a number of transverse sections of this tooth, D being made at the cervical line, looking toward the crown, E looking toward the roots, while F represents a transverse section at a point immediately above the floor of the pulp-chamber.

**Upper Second Molar.**—In many respects the pulp-chamber of this tooth is similar to that of the first molar, but there are a few variations which must be briefly described. First, the outline of the tooth-crown being much more flattened from mesial to distal, a corresponding variation is noted in the form of the pulp-chamber, increasing the length of the mesial side of the molar triangle, and decreasing the length of the buccal and distal sides. The chamber is more or less flattened

from mesial to distal, making it somewhat oblong from buccal to lingual. Second, on account of a reduction in the prominence of the cusps, the horns of the cavity are usually somewhat less pronounced than those of the first molar. Third, the floor of the cavity is less convex, and slopes more gradually toward the entrances of the various canals. In a general way, the rules given for ascertaining the approximate location of the entrances to the canals in the first molar apply to this tooth. The comparative size and form of the pulp-chamber and canals during the development of the tooth are shown in figure 155, extending from the ninth to the sixteenth or eighteenth year, at which latter period the crown and roots of the tooth are fully calcified externally.



9th year

11th year

13th year

15th year

18th year

FIG. 155.—PULP-CAVITIES IN THE UPPER SECOND MOLAR, FROM THE NINTH TO THE EIGHTEENTH YEAR.

**Upper Third Molar.**—In this tooth the conditions are so variable that a description of the pulp-cavity taken from a single tooth would be insufficient. In the majority of instances the outline of the tooth-crown approaches the triangular form, and in consequence the pulp-chamber is triangular rather than quadrilateral or oblong. The mesial border of the chamber is the longest, the distal next in length, and the buccal the shortest of the three. The horns are generally less in number and much less pronounced than those of either the first or second molars. The floor of the chamber may be broken by irregularities similar to those previously described, or it may be entirely absent, this latter condition occurring when the tooth has but a single root accompanied by a single canal. The various stages of development having been given in connection with the general

description of the tooth, no attempt will be made to describe this by longitudinal sections, the complications in root-form making such a proceeding impracticable. Instead of so doing, the space will be devoted to a brief description of the variety of pulp-canals found in this tooth. Probably the most frequent condition is that which resembles the first and second molars—*i. e.*, three canals branching off from the chamber in as many different roots, two to the buccal and one to the lingual. When the three canals exist, the entrances to them will be well beyond the cervical line, where they will be found clustered much closer together than those of the first and second molars, this difference in their location being so marked that the diagram previously given can not be depended upon in an attempt to locate them.

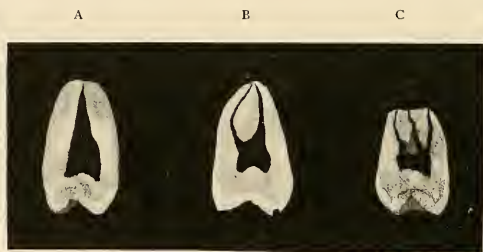


FIG. 156.—LONGITUDINAL SECTIONS, UPPER THIRD MOLAR, SLIGHTLY ENLARGED.

The usual course of these canals is first slightly mesial, then distal, and finally in a distolingual direction. On account of the pulp-chamber extending well beyond the cervical line, the canals are much shorter than those of the first or second molars, their average length being less than  $\frac{1}{2}$  of an inch. Another form frequently met with is that of the flattened single canal, occurring when the tooth has but a single root, which shows no signs of trifurcating (Fig. 156, A). In this instance the pulp-chamber gradually passes into the canal, and the chamber is without a floor. Such a canal is shaped like the chamber at its point of beginning; but as it passes toward the apex it becomes flattened in the direction of the smallest diameter of the root. But little difficulty is experienced

in entering such a canal, and usually it is readily followed to its apex. Another condition frequently met with in the single-rooted third molar is that of one or more canals branching off from the floor of the chamber, their course through the root-substance being without regard to the external contour of the root (Fig. 156, B). These canals, which may exist to the number of five or six, are usually very minute, and in some instances may pass from the floor of the chamber to the apex of the root almost in a direct line, and end in distinct foramina, or they may take a tortuous course, and when near the apex unite, ending in a single foramen. When the tooth is provided with four, five, or even six small roots, as sometimes occurs, each root will be traversed by a minute canal, the entrances to these being variously placed about the floor and lateral margins of the pulp-chamber (Fig. 156, C). In all operations upon this tooth it must be recalled that it is the last to be calcified, and consequently the canals and foramina are proportionately larger than in the other teeth; at the same time, it possesses one advantage over the others—*i. e.* (with the single exception of the cuspid), being fully calcified at or about the time of its eruption.

## PULP-CAVITIES OF THE LOWER TEETH.

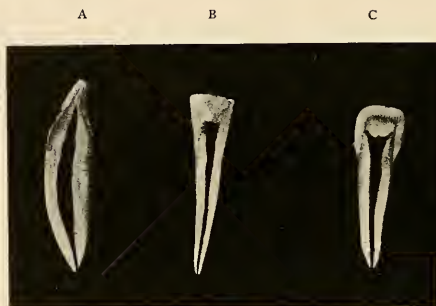


FIG. 157.—PULP-CAVITIES OF THE LOWER INCISOR.

The outline of the pulp-cavities of the lower teeth, like those of the upper, corresponds to the general tooth contour. The comparative size of the cavity at various stages of tooth development will not be repeated in this description, the conditions being similar to those in the upper teeth (see also Development of the Teeth).

**Lower Incisors.**—The pulp-cavities of the lower central and lateral incisors are so nearly alike that a single description will answer for both. Figure 156, A, represents a labiolingual section of a lower incisor, showing the most frequent form of the pulp-cavity. The tooth from which the section was prepared was one about middle life, the cavity in younger teeth being proportionately larger, while a gradual decrease in diameter would be noted with advancing age. There is no mark of distinction between the pulp-chamber and canal, so that an imaginary separation would have to be made at the cervical line, or slightly below that point. Taken in its entirety, the cavity presents the form of a double cone, the common base of which is slightly to rootward of the cervical line. The chamber penetrates the crown fully half-way to the cutting-edge, at which point it ends in a thin, fan-like margin (best observed in



mesiodistal section), while the canal gradually decreases in size until the apical foramen is reached. Although this is the most common form of the pulp-cavity in the lower incisors, it is by no means the constant condition. The tooth is not infrequently provided with a medium-sized pulp-chamber, which extends somewhat below the cervical line, beyond which point it branches into two fine canals, which are continued separately until the apical third of the root is approached, when they again unite, and finally end in a single foramen. Figure 157, C, represents a mesiodistal section of a young lower incisor, in which the three small horns of the pulp-chamber are apparent. At this period the fan-shaped extremity of the pulp-chamber occupies about one-half of the mesiodistal diameter of the crown, and the horn-like projections extend well toward the enamel cap. Figure 157, B, shows the average size and form of the pulp-cavity at maturity, by a mesiodistal section through the long axis of the tooth. In this it will be observed that the horns of the pulp-cavity have disappeared, and that the capacity of the cavity in general is much reduced.

**Lower Cuspid.**—The pulp-chamber and canal in this tooth, while usually conforming to the general contour of the tooth, are frequently found to vary greatly, both in outline and in size. The most common form, however, is that shown in figure 158, A, a labiolingual section of an adult tooth. The chamber and canal have no line of demarcation, and unite at a common base considerably below the cervical line, the former penetrating the crown of the tooth to a point about midway between the cervical line and the summit of the cusp, at which point it ends in a sharp, hair-like projection. Accompanying this common form there is much variation in size, even in teeth of the same age. Figure 158, B, shows another labiolingual section of an adult lower cuspid, in which the pulp-cavity fails to accurately follow the outline of the tooth, and its capacity is much less than that shown at A. The root of this tooth is in most instances circular, in which case the canal will be similarly formed; but occasionally the root will be much flattened from mesial to distal, and as a result of this the canal will also be much flattened. The canal of this tooth is seldom divided. In

figure 158, C, a mesiodistal section of a lower cuspid is shown, and it will be observed that the fan-shaped extremity of the chamber common to the incisors is absent, the cavity

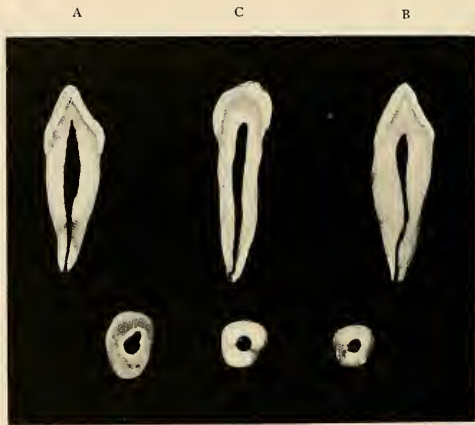


FIG. 158.—PULP-CAVITIES OF THE LOWER CUSPIDS.

ending rather abruptly, or by a fine line near the center of the crown. The same illustration also shows a number of transverse sections, which will give an idea of the form of the cavity at various parts of the tooth.

**Lower Bicuspid.**—The pulp-cavities of these teeth may be best described collectively, thus affording an opportunity for comparison. Unlike the upper bicuspid, it is seldom that the canals are definitely separated from the chambers. That part of the cavity within the crown, however, is usually quite wide from buccal to lingual, and unites with the canal by a long, funnel-shaped constriction. The center of the pulp-chamber may be considered as being about on a level with the cervical line. In the first bicuspid the pulp-cavity is provided with a single horn, which extends with more or less prominence in the direction of the buccal cusp. That part of the chamber facing the lingual cusp is usually rounded off. In the second bicuspid

the occlusal wall of the pulp-chamber generally presents a different form ; two well-defined horns are usually present, of which the buccal is the longest ; or the chamber may be prominently rounded at these points. The pulp-chamber of the second bicuspid is generally larger than that of the first. The canals of these teeth are usually circular throughout, and are readily penetrated until the apical third is reached, beyond which point they are extremely small. In some instances the canal divides near the center of the root, and is continued as two canals, ending in distinct foramina, or, after separating, they may again unite, and end in a single foramen. In figure 159 the aver-



FIG. 159.—SECTIONS OF LOWER BICUSPIDS.

age size and form of the canal in these teeth is shown by a number of mesiodistal and transverse sections.

**Lower Molars.**—The form of the pulp-chambers of the lower molars corresponds to the general outline of the crown, and the form of the root-canals is similar to the general contour of the roots. The pulp-chambers approach the quadrilateral form ; the buccal and lingual sides are somewhat the longest, the mesial next in length, and the distal, usually slightly rounded, is the shortest. The occluding wall is convex rootward, sloping in the direction of the various cusps, each of which is penetrated by a horn. Like the horns of the pulp-chambers in general, the

extent to which these penetrate the cusps is influenced by the age, type, and functional activity of the organ. The floor of the cavity is convex in the direction of the occlusal surface, but this convexity is principally from mesial to distal. From the summit of this convexity the floor slopes to the entrances of the canals, the opening into which is inclined to be funnel-shaped rather than abrupt. The lateral walls of the chamber are much inclined to follow the general contour of the crown. The horns of the pulp-chamber are usually more pronounced in the first than in the second molar, and still less clearly defined in the third than in

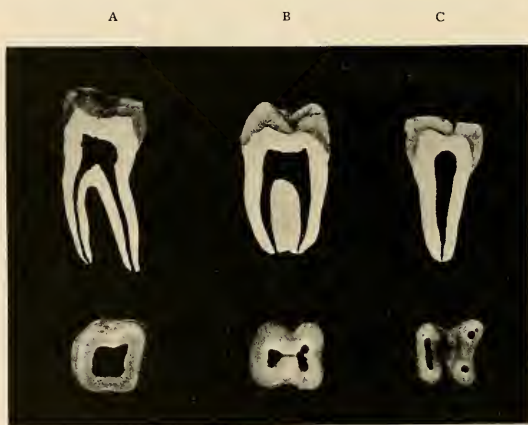


FIG. 160.—SECTIONS OF LOWER MOLARS, ENLARGED ABOUT ONE-THIRD.

the second. The roots of the first molar being somewhat further apart than those of the second, the floor of the chamber in the former is slightly more extensive than in the latter. To study the pulp-cavities of these teeth a longitudinal section should be made through the center of the tooth from mesial to distal. Figure 160, A, shows such a dissection through the first molar, and illustrates the average size and form of the chamber and canals at adult age. The canals join the chamber by a funnel-shaped opening, and but little difficulty will be found in effecting an entrance, but to follow them to their apices will be more per-

plexing. The roots of this tooth being much flattened from mesial to distal, the canals are also flattened in this direction, but broad from buccal to lingual. The entrances to these canals may be found at the extreme mesial and distal margins of the pulp-chamber, and usually extend from the buccal to the lingual walls of the cavity. It is not uncommon for the mesial canal to divide soon after leaving the chamber, and continue as two canals, ending in separate foramina (Fig. 160, B). This condition is seldom present in the distal canal, which is usually straight from its mouth to the apical foramen. The capacity of the pulp-chamber is usually a trifle less than that of the first molar, and the entrances to the canals are somewhat nearer together. In other respects the cavity is similar to that of the first molar. Figure 160 also shows a number of transverse sections through a lower molar, and gives an idea of the size of the canals at various parts of the roots. In some instances the roots of the second molar coalesce, in which case a single root-canal may be present. In the third molar the most common form of the pulp-cavity is one similar to that of the first, but both the chamber and canals are smaller. Unlike the pulp-cavity of the corresponding upper tooth, this tooth is not subject to so much variation, although it is sometimes found with a single root traversed by a single canal, which may be accompanied by a rather large pulp-chamber.

## CHAPTER XI.

THE DECIDUOUS TEETH, THEIR ARRANGEMENT, OCCLUSION, ETC.; THEIR CALCIFICATION, ERUPTION, DECALCIFICATION, SHEDDING PROCESS, AND AVERAGE MEASUREMENTS; THEIR SURFACES, GROOVES, FOSSÆ, RIDGES, SULCI, AND PULP-CAVITIES.

### THE DECIDUOUS TEETH.

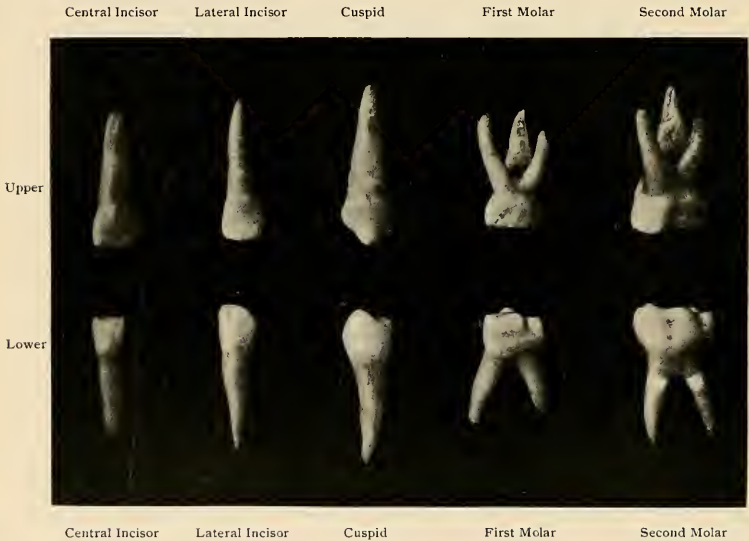


FIG. 161.—THE DECIDUOUS TEETH, UPPER AND LOWER, FROM THE LEFT SIDE OF THE MOUTH.

As implied by the term deciduous, these teeth are temporary in their nature, and, after subserving the purposes of early childhood, are thrown off by an operation of the economy to



give place to the permanent organs. The shedding process takes place in the incisors between the seventh and eighth years, in the molars from the tenth to the eleventh years, and in the cuspids about the twelfth year. This shedding process, however, does not indicate the period at which the degeneracy of the tooth begins, for, in a year or two after the roots are completely formed and the apical foramen established, decalcification begins at the apical ends and continues in the direction of the crown until absorption of the entire root has taken place and the crown is lost from lack of support. Decalcification in the incisors begins between the fourth and fifth years, in the molars from the seventh to the eighth years, and in the cuspids about the ninth year.

The deciduous teeth are *twenty in number*, ten in each jaw, and may be classified as follows: *Four incisors, two cuspids, and four molars.* The incisors, central and lateral, occupy the central portion of the arch, are placed two upon each side of the median line, and are succeeded by the four permanent incisors, which finally occupy the same position. The cuspids are located immediately to the distal of the lateral incisors, and are displaced by the permanent cuspids. The first and second molars come next in the arch, but, unlike the anterior teeth, are followed by permanent successors of another class, the first and second bicuspid, the permanent molars erupting posteriorly to these as the jaw increases in length.

In general the deciduous teeth resemble their permanent successors, yet there are a number of minor differences which will require a comparative description. Both the crowns and the roots are much smaller in every direction than those of the permanent teeth, but the diameter of the crowns is proportionately greater than that of the roots, while the roots are proportionately longer. The fact that the roots are smaller in proportion than the crowns is productive of a neck much more constricted. The roots of the deciduous teeth are the same in number as those of the corresponding permanent teeth, the incisors and cuspids being provided with one, the upper molars with three, and the lower molars with two.

## THE OCCLUSION OF THE DECIDUOUS TEETH.

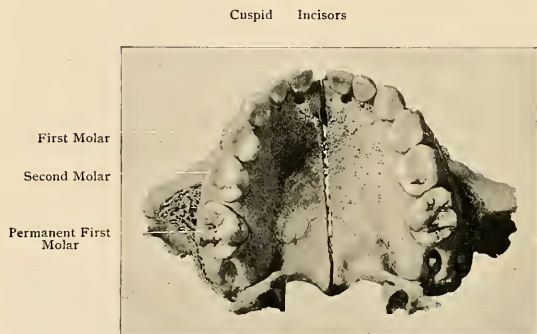


FIG. 162.—THE UPPER DENTAL ARCH ABOUT THE SEVENTH YEAR.

The arrangement of the deciduous teeth in the jaws is similar to that of the permanent organs, the upper teeth describing the segment of a larger circle than the lower, in consequence of which the upper teeth close over or outside of the lower. The character of the occlusion in the deciduous teeth is not subject to so much variation as that found in connection with the permanent set, this being accounted for by the more constant form in the crowns of the former. The relations existing between the upper and lower deciduous teeth when in contact is such that each tooth, with the exception of the lower central incisor and the upper second molar, occludes with two teeth of the opposite jaw, the upper central incisor being opposed by the entire cutting-edge of the lower central and the mesial third of the lower lateral; the upper lateral coming in contact with the remaining two-thirds of the lower lateral and a portion of the mesial half of the lower cuspid, this arrangement continuing throughout the series. The foregoing description of the occlusion of the deciduous teeth is applicable to but a small part of their transitory existence. By the time they are fully erupted and have

assumed their respective positions in the arch, the increase in the size of the bone is sufficient to create a slight space between the teeth, which condition is soon followed by a greater separation through the protrusion of the anterior teeth, caused by the growth and approach of the permanent teeth from behind.

The calcification of the deciduous teeth is similar to that of the permanent, the process in the incisors and cuspids beginning along the cutting-edges in three distinct lobes, while in the molars a center of calcification is provided for each cusp (see Development of the Teeth).

### THE DECIDUOUS TEETH IN DETAIL.

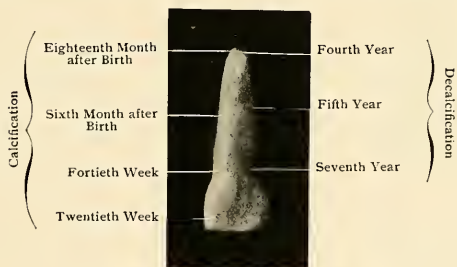


FIG. 163.

### UPPER CENTRAL INCISOR.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, ABOUT THE FOURTH FETAL MONTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, SEVENTEENTH TO EIGHTEENTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.  
ERUPTS, SIXTH TO EIGHTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

DECALCIFICATION BEGINS, ABOUT THE FOURTH YEAR.

SHEDDING PROCESS TAKES PLACE, ABOUT THE SEVENTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .23.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .39.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .62.

This tooth, as well as all of the deciduous teeth, presents for examination numerous surfaces, margins, and angles, these being the same in name and location as those of the permanent teeth.

**The Labial Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 164).—This surface is smooth and generally convex, but with an inclination to flatness near the incisive margin. The mesial margin is slightly convex in the direction of the length of the tooth, and rounded from labial to lingual. The distal margin is decidedly convex from the cutting-edge to the cervical line, in many instances forming almost a complete semicircle, which is usually at the expense of the distal angle of the crown. The cervical margin is deeply concave in the direction of the root, and the incisive margin is straight over its central portion and rounded or angular at its extremities. The labial grooves are seldom so well defined as those upon the permanent incisors.



FIG. 164.

**The Lingual Surface of the Crown.**—In some instances this surface is smooth and concave near the cutting-edge and convex over the cervical portion, with the marginal ridges well defined. In other cases it is concave from the cutting-edge to the cervical ridge being provided with a longitudinal ridge in the center, a slight depression upon either side, and marginal ridges poorly defined.

In the former instance the lingual fossa is present; in the latter it is absent. The *mesial* and *distal* surfaces of the crown are both smooth and convex, the former being inclined to flatness over its cervical third—a condition which is seldom present in the latter. The mesial angle is alone well defined, the cutting-edge passing into the distal surface with a long, gradual sweep, thus in a measure destroying the distal angle. The neck of the tooth is marked by a decided constriction, which is principally produced at the expense of the crown alone. The root of the tooth, when compared with the root of the permanent central incisor, is much longer in proportion to the length of the crown. In some instances it is flattened from mesial to distal, these two sides converging as they pass to the lingual; in others it is flattened from labial to lingual. Generally speaking, it is a straight root, but is occasionally provided

with a slight mesial curve near its apical third, and it is sometimes curved slightly from labial to lingual.

### UPPER LATERAL INCISOR.

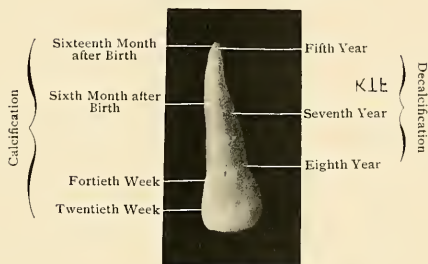


FIG. 165.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, ABOUT THE FOURTH FETAL MONTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, FOURTEENTH TO SIXTEENTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

ERUPTS, SEVENTH TO NINTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

DECALCIFICATION BEGINS, ABOUT THE FIFTH YEAR.

SHEDDING PROCESS TAKES PLACE, ABOUT THE EIGHTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .25.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .45.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .70.

The various surfaces of this tooth so closely resemble those of the central incisor that a separate description will be unnecessary; in a general way, however, there are a few minor points of difference. The tooth is smaller in every direction excepting in its length, which is generally equal to and frequently greater than that of the central incisor. The diameter of the root is but little less than that of the central, while the mesiodistal measurement of the crown is about one-third less, in consequence of which the neck of the tooth is not so well defined. The angles of the crown are more rounded than those of the central incisors.

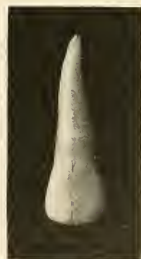


FIG. 166.—UPPER LATERAL INCISOR, LABIAL SURFACE.

## UPPER CUSPID.

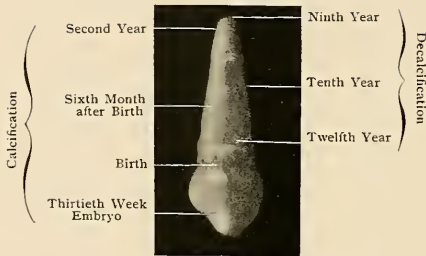


FIG. 167.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, ABOUT THE FIFTH FETAL MONTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, ABOUT TWO YEARS AFTER BIRTH.

ERUPTS, SEVENTEENTH TO EIGHTEENTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

DECALCIFICATION BEGINS, ABOUT THE NINTH YEAR.

SHEDDING PROCESS TAKES PLACE, ABOUT THE TWELFTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .25.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .53.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .78.

Like the permanent cuspid, the general contour of this tooth is that of a double cone, the lines of which are somewhat broken.

The greatest mesiodistal extent of the crown is from angle to angle, and this measurement about corresponds to the width of the crown of the central incisor.

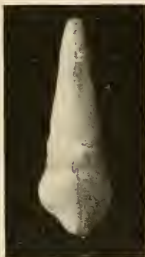


FIG. 168.—UPPER CUSPID,  
LABIAL SURFACE.

**The Labial Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 168).—This surface is strongly convex from mesial to distal, and slightly so from the cutting-edge to the cervical line. It is bounded by five margins: mesial, distal, cervical, mesio-incisive, and disto-incisive. The mesial and distal margins are rounded and smooth, the cervical well outlined by the cervical line and base of the cervical ridge,

while the two incisive margins are formed by the mesial and distal cutting-edges. The labial grooves are thrown well toward the lateral margins, and are usually more distinct than those upon the incisors. The labial ridge is prominent.



**The Lingual Surface of the Crown.**—This surface is generally divided into two portions by the lingual ridge, which extends from the summit of the cusp to the base of the cervical ridge. On either side of this ridge are the lingual grooves, but which appear more in the form of small fossæ. The marginal ridges are fairly well defined.

**The Mesial and Distal Surfaces of the Crown.**—The extent of these two surfaces is frequently much interfered with by the slope of the mesial and distal cutting-edges, which may be so long that the angles of the crown are forced well toward the cervical line, in some instances almost obliterating these two surfaces. When the cutting-edges are shorter, these surfaces present a marked general convexity. While the summit of the cusp will always be found to be in a direct line with the long axis of the tooth, there is in nearly every instance a difference in the length of the cutting-edges, and, unlike the cutting-edges of the permanent cuspid, the mesial is usually the longer. The neck of the tooth is much constricted and the root straight and conic.

## THE UPPER MOLARS.

### Upper First Molar.

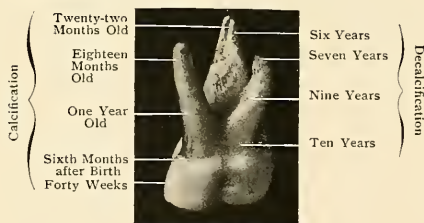


FIG. 169.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, ABOUT THE FIFTH FETAL MONTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, EIGHTEENTH TO TWENTIETH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

ERUPTS, FOURTEENTH TO FIFTEENTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

DECALCIFICATION BEGINS, SIXTH TO SEVENTH YEAR.

SHEDDING PROCESS TAKES PLACE, ABOUT THE TENTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .20.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .39.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .59.

The contour and lobate construction of the crown of this tooth

is peculiar to itself, being dissimilar to any other class of teeth in the mouth. Calcification takes place from three centers, two for the buccal and one for the lingual half of the crown. The general form of the crown may best be studied by an examination of the occlusal surface.

**The Occlusal Surface of the Crown.**—The outlines represented are those of an irregular quadrilateral, of which the buccal and mesial sides are the longest. The angles of the quadrilateral are somewhat variable, the mesiobuccal being acute, the mesiolingual obtuse, while the two distal angles are rounded right angles. The surface is surmounted by three cusps, a mesiobuccal, a distobuccal, and a lingual. These various cusps are separated from one another by three developmental grooves—the mesial, the distal, and the buccal. The marginal ridges are sharp and well defined, this being particularly true of the buccal and lingual, which resemble cutting-edges. The mesio-marginal ridge begins at the mesiobuccal angle, and, after making a long distal curve, ends in the mesial incline of the lingual cusp. The center of the surface is deeply and irregularly concave, producing the central fossa, and descending from the various ridges and cusps surrounding it are numerous supplemental grooves and ridges. The various developmental grooves are not inclined to cross the marginal ridges although in some instances one or two may be found to do so.

**The Buccal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 169).—This surface is generally smooth and convex, with an excessively developed cervical ridge, which is particularly prominent at its mesial extremity. The buccal groove is in the form of a slight depression, and the buccal ridges, common to all molars, are scarcely to be observed. The mesial, occlusal, and cervical margins are distinctly outlined, while the distal margin is obliterated by the gradual passing of this surface into the distal surface.

**The Lingual Surface of the Crown.**—This surface is circular in outline, decidedly convex and smooth, and is seldom broken by grooves and ridges. It is most prominent near the center, from which point it slopes in every direction. The cervical ridge is not so pronounced as that of the buccal

surface, but there is a sudden rounding of the surface in a cervical direction to meet the lingual root.

**The Mesial Surface of the Crown.**—This surface is probably more extensive than any of the others; it is inclined to flatness, with a slight conic convexity over its occlusal third, and a slight concavity near the cervix. The buccolingual measurement of the surface is nearly twice as great as that from the occlusal margin to the cervical line. It is much more prominent near the occlusal margin, so that a V-shaped space usually exists between it and the distal surface of the cuspid.

**The Distal Surface of the Crown.**—

The extent of this surface is much less than that of the mesial; it presents a general convexity, and is seldom broken by grooves or ridges, although occasionally the distal groove crosses its occlusal margin. Like the deciduous teeth previously described, the neck of the tooth is marked by a decided and abrupt constriction, this form appearing to arise from the heavy enamel folds which are present near the cervical line, rather than from any marked constriction in the base of the roots themselves.



FIG. 170.—OCCLUSAL SURFACES OF THE DECIDUOUS MOLARS.

**The roots of the tooth** are three in number—a mesio-buccal, a distobuccal, and a lingual; of these, the latter is usually the largest and longest. The two buccal roots are much flattened from mesial to distal, while the lingual is compressed in the opposite direction. The apical ends of the roots are much separated from one another, the triangle which these points form being almost twice the size of the triangle formed by the base of the roots. The apical ends are usually provided with a central curve.

## Upper Second Molar.

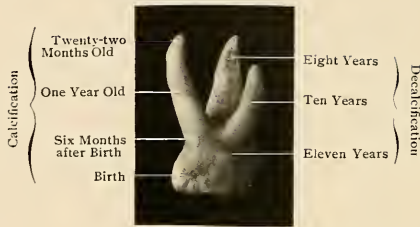


FIG. 171.

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, BETWEEN THE FIFTH AND SIXTH FETAL MONTHS.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, TWENTIETH TO TWENTY-SECOND MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

ERUPTED, EIGHTEENTH TO TWENTY-FOURTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

DECALCIFICATION BEGINS, SEVENTH TO EIGHTH YEAR.

SHEDDING PROCESS TAKES PLACE, ELEVENTH TO TWELFTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .22.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, 46.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .68.

The most remarkable feature about the crown of this tooth is its close resemblance to the crown of the upper permanent first molar. The various surfaces are almost identical, the developmental process, and consequently the cusp-formation, is the same, the marginal and other ridges common to the occlusal surface correspond, and both the central and distal fossæ are present, together with the various developmental grooves. A description of the crown will, therefore, be unnecessary; suffice it to say that it is much smaller in every direction and is somewhat more constricted at the neck. The roots are the same in name and number as those of the first permanent molar, but they are more widely separated at their apical extremities. In general form they are smaller than those of the upper first deciduous molar.



FIG. 172.—UPPER SECOND MOLAR, BUCCAL SURFACE.

## THE LOWER DECIDUOUS TEETH.

A description in detail of the lower incisors and cuspids would practically be a repetition of that given of the corresponding upper teeth, and for that reason will be passed with a limited reference to each. The lower molars being in many respects unlike the upper, they will require a separate description.

**Lower Central Incisor (Fig. 173).**

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, ABOUT THE FOURTH FETAL MONTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, SIXTEENTH TO EIGHTEENTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

ERUPTED, SIXTH TO EIGHTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

DECALCIFICATION BEGINS, ABOUT THE FOURTH YEAR.

SHEDDING PROCESS TAKES PLACE, ABOUT THE SEVENTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .19.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .35.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .54.

This is the smallest of the lower teeth, in this respect being at variance to the upper central, which is larger than the lateral. The mesio-distal diameter of the crown is but little less than that from the cutting-edge to the cervical line. The mesial and distal angles are similar, both being pointed and square. The cervical ridge is quite pronounced and the neck much constricted.

The root is usually straight and tapers gradually from base to apex. It is broader on the labial than on the lingual side, and the mesial and distal sides are but little flattened.



FIG. 173.—  
LOWER CENTRAL  
INCISOR, LABIAL  
SURFACE.

**Lower Lateral Incisor (Fig. 174).**

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, ABOUT THE FOURTH FETAL MONTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, TWELFTH TO FOURTEENTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

ERUPTED, SEVENTH TO NINTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

DECALCIFICATION BEGINS, ABOUT THE FIFTH YEAR.

SHEDDING PROCESS TAKES PLACE, ABOUT THE EIGHTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .19.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .39.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .58.

This tooth is larger than the central incisor, and closely resembles the upper lateral both in size and form. The crown is

more rounded in its nature than that of the central, forming a greater general convexity to the labial surface, and less concavity to the lingual. The mesial angle of the crown is fairly well defined, while the distal is usually much rounded by a long, circular sweep of the cutting-edge to meet the distal surface. The mesial surface of the crown is flattened and somewhat prominent at the angle, while the distal surface is strongly convex. The labial grooves are but slightly visible, while the corresponding lingual grooves are quite pronounced. The neck of the tooth is even more marked than that of the lower central incisor. The root is long and tapering, slightly flattened from mesial to distal, with a decided longitudinal groove on both the mesial and distal sides. The labial and lingual sides are rounded, and there is an inclination to crookedness, which is usually from mesial to distal.



FIG. 174.—  
LOWER LATERAL  
INCISOR, LABIAL  
SURFACE.

### Lower Cuspid (Fig. 175).

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, ABOUT THE FIFTH FETAL MONTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, ABOUT TWO YEARS AFTER BIRTH.

ERUPTED, SEVENTEENTH TO EIGHTEENTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

DECALCIFICATION BEGINS, ABOUT THE NINTH YEAR.

SHEDDING PROCESS TAKES PLACE, ABOUT THE TWELFTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .23.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .45.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .68.

The principal variations between this tooth and the upper cuspid are observed in the diminished mesiodistal measurement of the crown, together with it being somewhat less angular in outline. The ridges and grooves common to the various surfaces are not so marked as those of the upper cuspid, resulting in a smoothly formed crown throughout. The root is larger in proportion to the size of the crown than that of its upper opponent, thus producing a neck much less constricted. It is usually straight, or provided with a slight distal



FIG. 175.—  
LOWER CUSPID,  
LABIAL SURFACE.



inclination near its apical extremity, and much flattened from mesial to distal, these two sides converging to the lingual, forming a rounded triangular outline.

### Lower First Molar (Fig. 176).

CALCIFICATION BEGINS ABOUT THE FIFTH FETAL MONTH.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, EIGHTEENTH TO TWENTIETH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

ERUPTED, FOURTEENTH TO FIFTEENTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

DECALCIFICATION BEGINS, SIXTH TO SEVENTH YEAR.

SHEDDING PROCESS BEGINS, ABOUT THE TENTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .24.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .38.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .62.

Upon making an examination of the occlusal surface of this tooth it will be observed that the crown is made up of four irregularly formed lobes, separated from one another by four well-defined grooves. Each lobe is provided with a cusp, more or less prominently developed. Between the various cusps are two fossæ—one occupying the distal two-thirds of the surface (the distal fossa) and the other the remaining or mesial third (the mesial fossa). The outline of this surface, which represents the contour of the crown in general, is that of an oblong square, with its angles more or less rounded, and having a slight variation in its parallel lines. Each lobe denotes a separate center of calcification, and the four grooves the lines of union between the various parts.



FIG. 176. — LOWER FIRST MOLAR, BUCCAL SURFACE.

The **mesiobuccal lobe** is somewhat irregular in contour and is frequently the largest of the four. It assists in forming the mesiobuccal angle of the crown and the greater part of the mesial fossa. Descending from this cusp to the lingual is a pronounced triangular ridge, which is made continuous by uniting with a similar ridge from the corresponding lingual cusp. By this union a transverse ridge is established, separating the mesial from the distal fossa. The central boundary of this lobe is formed by the mesial groove, which arises from the distal fossa, passes over the transverse ridge to the mesial fossa, from

which it continues to the lingual, and by the buccal groove, which branches off from the mesial somewhat to the distal of the transverse ridge, passing over the buccomarginal ridge to the buccal surface.

**The Distobuccal Lobe.**—This cusp is generally smaller than the mesiobuccal, and is more pointed and more regular in outline. It assists in forming the distobuccal angle of the crown, and by its central incline forms about one-third of the distal fossa. Its boundaries are formed by the buccal, mesial, and distal grooves, the latter beginning in the distal fossa, and passing over the distomarginal ridge to the distal surface.

**The Mesiolingual Lobe.**—In the recently erupted tooth the summit of this cusp is long and pointed, and frequently remains the most pronounced of the four. It is triangular in outline, and, as above referred to, furnishes a triangular ridge, which, by uniting with a like ridge from the mesiobuccal cusp, forms the transverse ridge. By its central incline it assists in forming the mesial fossa. Its boundaries are formed by the mesial groove and the lingual groove, the latter arising near the center of the distal fossa, passing to, and sometimes crossing, the linguomarginal ridge.

**The Distolingual Lobe.**—This is usually the smallest of the four. It is inclined to be rounded, rather than angular, and in some instances is poorly developed. It assists in forming the distolingual angle of the crown, as well as a portion of the distal fossa. Its central boundaries are formed by the lingual and distal grooves.

The marginal ridges of the surface are abruptly but irregularly formed, ascending and descending the various cusps in a manner similar to those previously described.

**The Buccal Surface of the Crown** (Fig. 176).—This surface is smooth and generally convex, with a mesiodistal measurement about twice as great as that from the cervical line to the occlusal margin. The surface is most prominent over its cervical third, forming a well-rounded and bold cervical ridge, a feature strongly characteristic of this tooth. The distal center of the surface is broken by the buccal groove, which usually ends near the center in a shallow depression or pit.

**The Lingual Surface of the Crown.**—This surface is much less extensive than the buccal. It is smooth and convex throughout, and is broken near its distal center by the lingual groove, which gradually disappears as it passes rootward. The cervical ridge is not so prominent as that of the buccal surface.

**The Mesial and Distal Surfaces of the Crown.**—These are slightly convex in every direction, the former passing, by a gradual sweep, into the lingual surface, destroying the angularity of the crown at this point, while the latter passes more abruptly, forming an acute angle. These surfaces are both prominent near the occlusal margin, making the point of contact with adjoining teeth near that surface. The bold cervical ridge of the buccal surface is discontinued or greatly diminished upon these surfaces, both of which are inclined to pass very gradually into the base of the roots.

The **roots** of this tooth are the same in name, position, and number as those of the lower permanent molars. They are much flattened from mesial to distal, the center of their flattened sides being further compressed by a deep longitudinal groove, which extends from the base to the apex of each root. In passing from the base of the roots to their apices they become more widely separated, until these extremities are much wider apart, proportionately, than those of the permanent molars.

### Lower Second Molar (Fig. 177).

CALCIFICATION BEGINS, BETWEEN THE FIFTH AND SIXTH FETAL MONTHS.

CALCIFICATION COMPLETED, TWENTIETH TO TWENTY-SECOND MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

ERUPTED, EIGHTEENTH TO TWENTY-FOURTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

DECALCIFICATION BEGINS, SEVENTH TO EIGHTH YEAR.

SHEDDING PROCESS TAKES PLACE, ELEVENTH TO TWELFTH YEAR.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF CROWN, .21.

AVERAGE LENGTH OF ROOT, .44.

AVERAGE LENGTH OVER ALL, .65.

The anatomy of this tooth being almost identical to that of the lower first permanent molar, it will be unnecessary to enter into a description in detail. The lobes, and consequently the grooves, are the same in position, name, and number, and

a similar developmental process is recorded. The tooth is not characterized by a prominent cervical ridge, such as is found upon the lower first molar, the crown passing very gradually into the root-base with a neck moderately constricted.



FIG. 177.—LOWER SECOND MOLAR, BUCCAL SURFACE.

#### THE PULP-CHAMBERS AND CANALS OF THE DECIDUOUS TEETH.

A few general remarks in reference to these cavities, in connection with the information to be derived from the accompanying chart and its annexed description, will sufficiently instruct the reader, without the necessity of treating each tooth individually. The pulp-chambers and canals, like those of the permanent organs, assume the form of the external contour of the tooth,

the crown of the tooth being provided with a central cavity, the pulp-chamber, partaking of outlines closely resembling those of the crown, while the root is traversed by the pulp-canal, likewise conforming to the shape of the root. One very important distinction between the pulp-chambers and canals of the deciduous teeth and those of the permanent organs is that the former are proportionately larger. It must also be noted that the apical foramina in these teeth are so transitory in their nature that there remains but a very brief period during which the canals may be said to be fully formed. It will be recalled that in a very short time after the roots have become completely calcified, decalcification begins, and this process of degeneracy, beginning at the apical extremities of the roots, very early destroys the foramina, which have in a measure served as a protection to the surrounding parts during operations upon the canals.

With the canals proportionately larger than those which occupy the roots of the permanent teeth, the foramina during their very limited existence are also much larger, and much more readily penetrated. With these ever-changing conditions in the pulp-canals of the deciduous teeth, it is of importance that a definite

knowledge of what takes place should be acquired, and it is for this purpose that the accompanying chart has been prepared (Fig. 178).

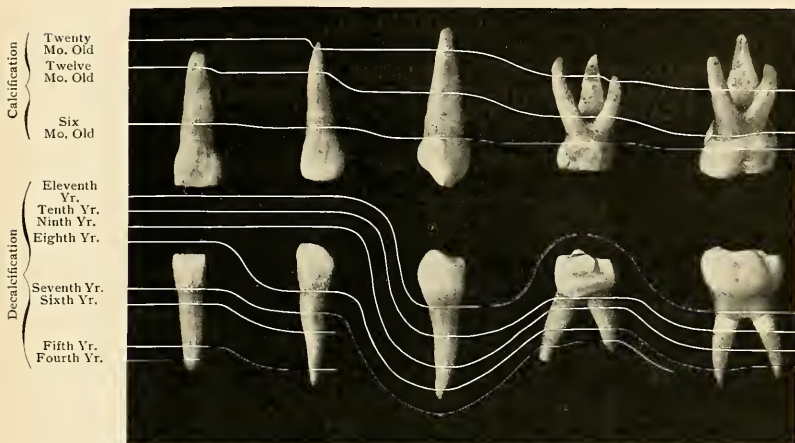


FIG. 178.—CHART SHOWING CALCIFICATION AND DECALCIFICATION OF THE DECIDUOUS TEETH AND THE CONSEQUENT LENGTH OF THE PULP-CANAL AT VARIOUS PERIODS.—(After Peirce.)

## CHAPTER XII.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE TEETH.—THE DENTAL GERMS, ENAMEL ORGAN, AND DENTIN ORGAN; THE DENTAL FOLLICLE; CALCIFICATION AND ERUPTION.

### DEVELOPMENT OF THE TEETH.

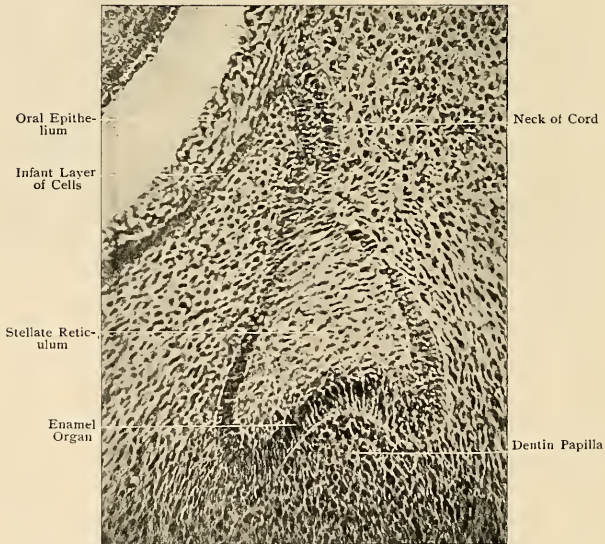


FIG. 179.—DEVELOPING TOOTH-GERM.  $\times 300$ .

In order that the student may obtain a general idea of the structural changes which take place at a very early period, and which eventually result in the formation of the teeth, the genesis of the subject will be briefly referred to. Preparation for the development of the teeth takes place as early as the middle of



the second fetal month, this preparatory alteration in the tissues beginning before the process of ossification in the bony structures which finally surround and give support to the organs. At this early period there will be found following the line of the future alveolar ridge a slight heaping up of the surface epithelium, while immediately beneath this proliferation of cells there appears a dipping in of the deep epithelial layer in the direction of the future alveolar walls. This epithelial reflection is known as the epithelial band or *tooth-band*. This so-called tooth-band is not, as might be supposed, a special inflection for each tooth-germ, but is continuous from one end of the future jaw to the other. It must be remembered that at this time the outline of the jaw has not been established, and the tooth-band, although not generally considered as essential to the developmental process, is principally instrumental in directing the position of the dental organs. The position and form of this epithelial band may best be studied in vertical transverse section. When first making its appearance it is somewhat broad and shallow, but as it passes more deeply into the parts it partakes of the outline of the letter V with its open end directed toward the surface. In penetrating the subjacent tissue, the free extremity of the band is inclined to the lingual, its external surface is slightly convex, and its internal surface correspondingly concave. Histologically considered, the tooth-band is composed of elements similar to those which serve to make up the epithelial layer of the oral mucous membrane. After the tooth-band has assumed certain proportions, there appears on its inner or concave surface a thin membranous plate, which is likewise a continuous structure, extending the full length of the epithelial band.

This lamina does not spring from the free margin of the tooth-band, but is given off at a point about midway between this border and the base of the band. The structure of this secondary band is so similar to that of the primary one that it should be considered as an inflexion from it rather than a new structure. We find then between the seventh and eighth week, the maxillary regions giving place to two bow-shaped bands (one for each

jaw), each of which is preparing to throw out from its secondary lamina ten little buds, which soon develop into the germs for the twenty deciduous teeth. When these buds make their appearance they are simple, rounded bodies, placed somewhat closely together, but they do not long retain this simple form. The first change which takes place is one in which they appear to lengthen out into slender cords, the extremities of which soon begin to extend laterally, and the primitive enamel organ is formed. Accompanying this lateral extension of the periphery,

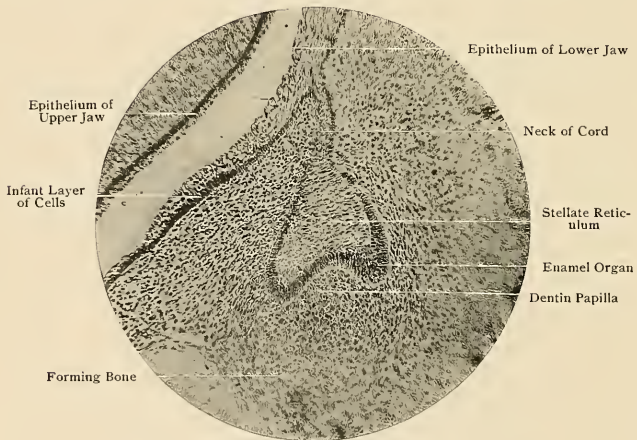


FIG. 180.—DEVELOPING TOOTH-GERM, TWELFTH WEEK,  $\times 40$ .

a bell-shaped outline is assumed, which phenomenon is rapidly increased by a specialization of the surrounding cellular tissue forcing into the concavity.

This bell-shaped proliferation of cells, given off directly from the tooth-band, to which it continues for a time attached, together with the specialized connective tissue crowding into its concavity, constitute the tooth-germs, the former being the *enamel organ*, and the latter the *dentin organ*. It will, therefore, be seen that the enamel is dependent upon the oral epithelium for its development (ectodermic), while the dentin springs from an en-

tirely different source—the connective tissue of the jaw (endermic). The enamel organ rapidly undergoes a cellular transformation: its concavity is increased, and the bell-shaped outline more strongly defined. Accompanying this change in form it gradually recedes from the surface, and its connection with the tooth-band becomes less secure. The connective-tissue cells, which have been rapidly filling in the concavity of the enamel organ, are also preparing to take upon themselves a special function, that of the formation of the dentin. Up to this period (tenth week) the enamel and dentin germs are not definitely separated from the surrounding cellular structure, but now a gradual transformation takes place, whereby the tooth-germs become enveloped in a sac-like covering—the *dental follicle*.

**Enamel Organ** (Figs. 179, 180, and 181).—This portion of the tooth-germ, as previously stated, is derived from the concave or lingual surface of the tooth-band, which in turn is derived from the surface epithelium. From the free extremity of its slender cord-like attachment it spreads out and forms a hood-like covering to the dentin germ. The surface of the organ contiguous to the dentin germ, or dentin papilla, as it is frequently called, is concave in the direction of the oral surface, being thickest over the center of its concavity, thinning down as its periphery is approached. Externally, the enamel organ is covered by an epithelial layer, which is reflected upon its inner surface or that in contact with the dentin papilla. These two layers are named according to their location, the external and internal epithelium of the enamel organ. Placed between these two layers, and constituting the bulk of the organ, are numerous stellate bodies which penetrate a layer of rounded cells, the *stratum intermedium*, and finally reach the internal epithelial layer known as the *enamel cells* or *ameloblasts*. It is from this internal layer of epithelial cells that the enamel is calcified, and they are, therefore, the essential cells of the enamel organ. In the fully developed enamel organ, there are to be found, therefore, four distinct layers of cells, the *external epithelium*, *stellate reticulum*, *stratum intermedium*, and *internal epithelium*, or *ameloblasts*. As its name implies, the function of the enamel organ is principally that of enamel calcification, but in the opinion of many writers its pri-

mary activity is that of molding the tooth-form as represented by the dentin papilla, and it is not until this latter organ has assumed the form and extent of the future tooth-crown that dentin calcification begins.

The life of the enamel organ may properly be considered as beginning when the bulbous extremity of the specialized cells given off from the lingual face of the tooth-band become invaginated, and from this by a rapid proliferation of its cells it passes



FIG. 181.—DEVELOPING TOOTH-GERMS, ENAMEL ORGAN, AND DENTIN PAPILLA. \*

on by successive stages assuming the various forms common to it. This proliferation and differentiation of cells continues up to the time of beginning of calcification, but with the advent of this phenomenon certain parts of the organ begin to degenerate. This degeneration may or may not be classed as an atrophy of the cells interested, but the fact that a new tissue is generating, and gradually occupying the space previously taken up by the formative cells, calls forth a demand for the removal of the latter by the former. The cells which first undergo this change are those



of the internal epithelium and stratum intermedium, the individuality of these two layers evidently being kept up by migratory cells from the stellate reticulum. It is argued by some writers that the external epithelium begins to atrophy at this period; by others this change is not recorded until the enamel cuticle has been deposited to effectually seal the young tissue and protect it until well desiccated. While there appears to be a decided disposition upon the part of this outer layer of cells to change,

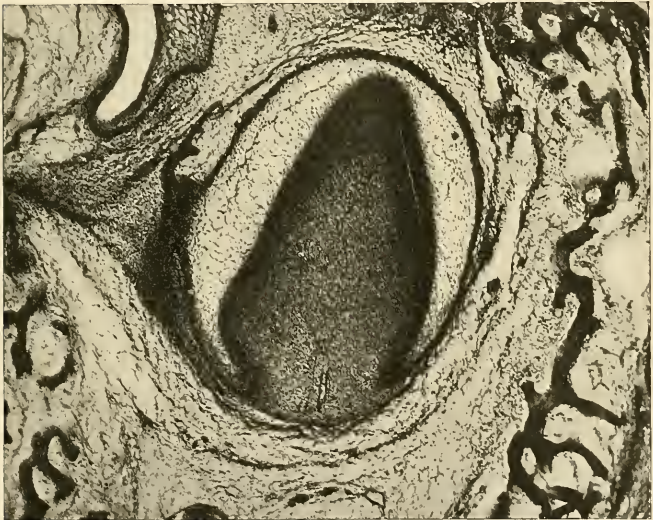


FIG. 182.—DEVELOPING TOOTH-GERMS. LONGITUDINAL SECTIONS FROM BUCCAL TO LINGUAL.

they do not disappear, and the alteration is not one which affects the shape of the cells, for they remain flattened or prismatic with their long axis placed parallel with the anlage of the crown. The stellate cells making up the bulk of the organ are, in common with those which inclose them, continually undergoing a degenerative change, at least this is true of those cells closely associated with the stratum intermedium, for in this location

they rapidly proliferate, shed their many processes, and gradually take on the characteristics common to this layer of which they eventually become a part. A careful examination of no less than one hundred enamel organs in all stages of development, and by section cut transversely, obliquely, longitudinally, etc., fully justifies the statement that the real life of the enamel organ begins as previously stated, and continues until the structural arrangement of the enamel is completed.



FIG. 183.—DEVELOPING TOOTH-GERMS. LONGITUDINAL SECTION FROM MESIAL TO DISTAL.

The question of form in the enamel organ—that is, its external epithelium—is one which may be advantageously used in the consideration of the life and function of its different cell layers. It has been said that the apparently extravagant area taken up by the enamel organ subserves the purpose of reserving space for the growing tooth-crown, but there are many reasons why this theory cannot be accepted. In the first place,



the extent of the organ or the space existing between the dentin papilla and the outer enamel epithelium does not in very many instances correspond to the bulk of enamel when this tissue is completed at a given point. In the developed tooth we find the enamel thickest over the cutting-edges of the anterior teeth and about the summits of the cusps of the cuspidate teeth, while these same parts are represented during the cellular stage of development by the external layer of cells closely associated with the surface of the papilla.

Again, in very many instances the outline of the tooth is definitely represented by the cells making up the dentin papilla (Figs. 181 and 182), but the surrounding epithelial cells are characterized by an unbroken semicircular margin describing the extent and form of the enamel organ. Exception may be taken to this hypothesis from the standpoint of generative changes, and these in a great measure have much to do with the relative outlines assumed by the two organs, but by studying very many sections representing nearly every stage of the process, and all of them in a measure showing the same characteristics, nothing but a definite opinion can result.

Of the many changes in general form which the enamel organ undergoes, none are so pronounced and positive in character as those described by the inner tunic, and first recorded when the bulbous end of the specialized cells becomes invaginated by the mesodermic connective-tissue cells forcing themselves into it. This is an alteration which is gradual and continuous up to the time of beginning of calcification, and while the cells forming the dentin papilla are generally accorded the power of "pushing" or "forcing" their way into those derived from the epiblast, the latter have always been recognized as having a controlling influence over the former. In this connection a reasonable doubt presents itself covering the theory so long accepted that the early function of the enamel organ is one which in a measure superintends the contouring of the tooth-crown as first represented in the dentin papilla. When the character of the two embryonal tissues making up the two germs is compared, we find the dentin germ possessing all the characteristics favorable to a rapid proliferation of its cells resulting in a highly

vascular, compact tissue. On the other hand, the bulk of the enamel organ is a gelatinous-like mass, one that would readily succumb to the pressure exerted by those active connective-tissue cells within its borders. When thus considered, the evidence is almost sufficiently convincing to reverse the generally accepted theory, placing the general form of the enamel organ as subservient to the dentin papilla.

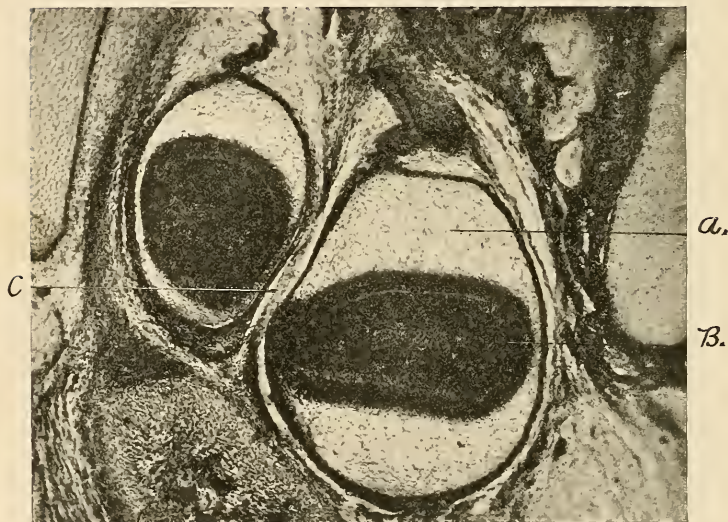


FIG. 184.—DEVELOPING TOOTH-GERMS IN TRANSVERSE SECTION.

A, Stellate reticulum. B, Papilla. C, Cartilage cells.

Figures 181, 182, and 183 illustrate some of the variations common to the general form of the enamel organ, and afford a good idea of the relationship existing between the enamel organ and the dentin papilla, in teeth both of the simple and complex class. These were taken from sections which represent a period just prior to the generation of the ameloblasts and odontoblasts, at which time the external and internal epithelial layers of the enamel organ most closely resemble one another in general out-

line. It is from this aspect and from sections cut longitudinally that most of the information given by the older writers has been derived. Few attempts have been made to show this organ in section transverse to the long axis of the tooth anlage. In figure 184 the germs of two teeth are shown by a section made in this direction. One striking feature here illustrated is the relationship existing between the inner and the outer tunic of

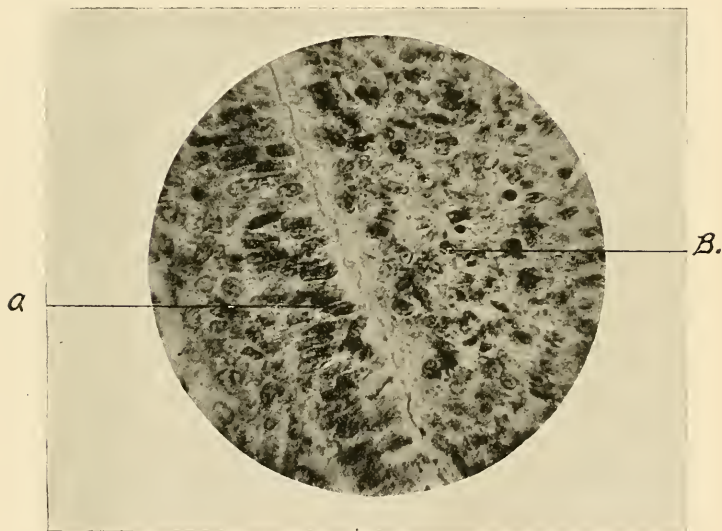


FIG. 185.

A, Inner tunic of enamel organ. B, Cells of dentin papilla.

the enamel organ, and attention is called to the apparent coalescence of these two layers at those points which represent the mesial and distal surfaces of the developing crowns. This condition is apparently brought about by the cartilage cells forcing the peripheral cells of the enamel organ into direct contact with the inner tunic, completely obliterating the stellate reticulum in these localities. As a result of this lateral pressure the outer epithelial cells representing the labial and lingual surfaces

have become widely separated, but with no perceptible alteration in the character of the cells composing the stellate reticulum. The relationship existing between the tooth-germs and the surrounding parts is one that will continue throughout the generation of the organs, and makes questionable the theory that the stellate reticulum performs the function of reinforcing or providing the ameloblasts with nutrient or calcific material.

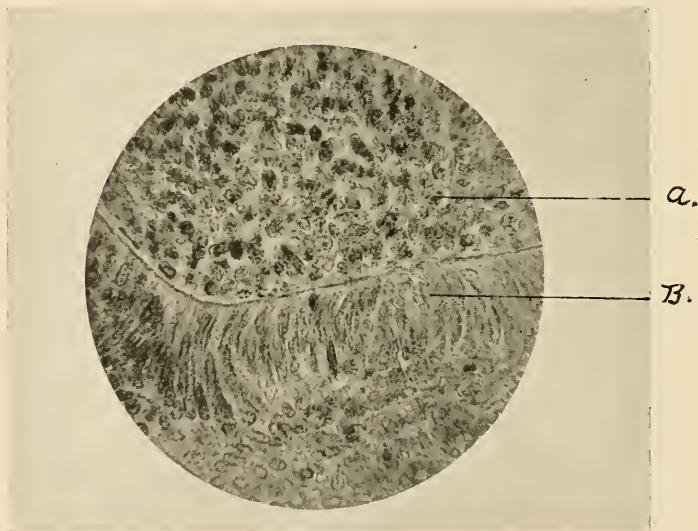


FIG. 186.

A, Cells of dentin papilla. B, Elongated cells of inner tunic.

If these same germs were examined, as they usually are, in longitudinal section (see Figs. 181, 182, and 183), the investigator would at once arrive at the conclusion that there was an equal distribution of the stellate cells about all sides of the dentin papilla. In their very early life they apparently establish an equal bulk about all sides of the dentin germ, but with the preparation for the growth of the alveolar walls they may assume the proportions shown in figure 184. At a period correspond-

ing to the complete envelopment of the dental germs by the dental follicle the development of the buccal and lingual walls is well under way, but as yet no provision has been made for the septa between the teeth, and it is undoubtedly to the approach of this latter phenomenon that a definite lateral pressure is brought to bear upon the approaching walls of the follicles.

Now let us pass to a consideration of some of the characteristics of the various cell layers composing the enamel organ. These are designated according to their location, so far as three of the four layers are concerned; in fact, the remaining cells, or those which receive their name from their form, can scarcely be classified as a distinct layer, these stellate cells not being of uniform thickness in all parts of the organ. The first layer of cells, or those making up the inner tunic, will be traced from their primary spherical condition to their final generation into ameloblasts. Figure 185 shows the character of these cells at a very early period, corresponding to the sixteenth week in the human fetus. They are for the most part spherical or slightly oblong multinucleated cells, and are more or less closely associated. They partake very much of the nature of the connective-tissue cells surrounding them, being differentiated from these principally by a transparent zone not unlike the specialized matrix immediately surrounding cartilage cells. About the first change recorded in these cells (see Fig. 186) is one in which they become markedly elongated or cylindrical, but during this process of differentiation some of the cells apparently recede, while others advance in the direction of the papilla, lining up in a single layer to become the early enamel cells, the cells which have been thus forced to the rear subsequently developing into ameloblasts as the older cells atrophy. At this period the stratum intermedium also asserts itself in the form of a distinct layer of rounded cells, to be described later on. When first observed, these cylindrical cells are devoid of processes, but are provided with rounded extremities, with little or no variation between the end directed toward the papilla and that looking in the opposite direction. This form is one which persists in all of the cells included in this layer until a definite body of cells is



formed contiguous to the dentin papilla, these latter cells becoming more markedly elongated and further differentiated by the addition of processes, while the remaining cells, or those nearest the stratum intermedium, continue for a time unchanged. The next alteration in the character of the inner tunic is one well illustrated in figure 186, in which the body of the generat-



FIG. 187.

A, Stellate reticulum. B, Stratum intermedium. C, Ameloblasts. D, Forming enamel.  
E, Calcified dentin. F, Odontoblasts.

ing ameloblastic cells rapidly recede from the surface of the papilla, while the elongating processes reach out to this latter point, all of this occurring before the appearance of the odontoblasts. Soon after this latter change in the cells of this layer the odontoblasts are developed and form the periphery of the dentinal tissue. All of these changes are of course first re-



corded about the free extremity of the tooth-crown, becoming less noticeable as the union of the outer and inner tunics is approached.

A study into the special characteristics of the fully developed ameloblasts shows that these active cells are the result of a gradual change in the character of the columnar epithelia com-

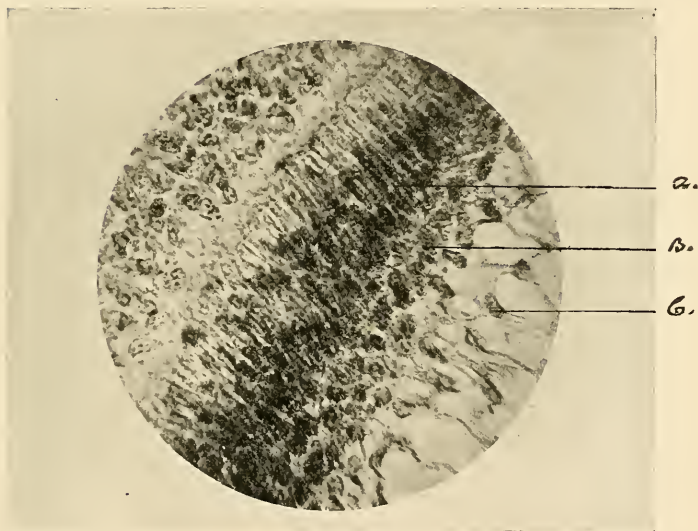


FIG. 188.

A, Generating ameloblasts. B, Rounded cells of stratum intermedium. C, Stellate reticulum.

mon to both the external and internal epithelial layers in the primitive enamel organ.

Next in importance to the internal epithelial layer are those closely associated cells making up the stratum intermedium (Fig. 188). Primarily oval or spheroidal in form, we find these cells gradually assuming a columnar outline and occupying a position parallel to the long axis of the crown. It may be said that the general character of these cells is intermediate between those

destined to become the proper enamel cells and those stellate cells making up the bulk of the organ. There appears to be much confusion, at least considerable doubt, in regard to the office of the cells of the stratum intermedium. It is most likely that these cells are not only intermediate in character, but are also intermediate in function to those cells upon either side of them, recruiting the ameloblasts as they fall, while in turn they themselves are supplied with nutriment from the enamel pulp or stellate reticulum. No stronger proof that these cells are secondary in importance to the ameloblasts need be mentioned than reference to the fact that they are always more generously supplied to those parts about to undergo calcification. Nor is their increase in numbers the only reason for believing that they are thus employed, for at the same time those cells most closely associated with the developing ameloblasts take upon themselves a decided change in outline. This alteration may be brought about by the conditions which influence the shapes of all cells, *i. e.*, by the pressure of surrounding cells or by their preparation for functional activity, or both. Some of the older writers speak of the cells of this layer as being branched, and in this way closely resembling those of the stellate reticulum. By strong amplification it is somewhat difficult to distinguish between the two layers, but most certainly if there are branched cells present they are confined to the intermediate zone, and should properly be classed with those of the stellate reticulum.

The cells of this layer do not long remain columnar with a general direction at right angles to the forming ameloblasts, but as these latter cells appear they become spheroidal and extremely closely associated in the deeper portion of the layer; in fact, cells corresponding to these in general appearance may be found in connection with the fully developed ameloblasts, being observed to best advantage by the aid of a high power objective and a full flood of light from a powerful sub-stage condenser. The cells thus found appear to be distributed at regular intervals about the ameloblastic layer, and are so closely allied to the cells of the stratum intermedium that they may be considered as migratory cells from this layer. In the earlier stages there appears to be no definite line of demarcation between the cells of

the inner tunic and those composing the stratum intermedium, but soon after the establishment of the ameloblasts the two layers are strongly differentiated by the interposition of a highly transparent membrane covering the outer extremities of the ameloblasts. After they are thus definitely separated from the enamel-forming cells, a most radical change takes place in their character; they become markedly elongated, and by anastomosing form a series of continuous chain-like belts about the ameloblastic layer, the number and further character of which are dependent upon the extent to which the ameloblasts have performed their function. If at any time there is a similarity between the cells of the stratum intermedium and the stellate reticulum it is at this period, because the former cells begin to lose their individuality, although under low power they still appear as a distinct layer (Fig. 187).

There is probably no body of cells directly interested in the development of the tooth tissues so widely discussed as those making up the so-called stellate reticulum, and while the chief basis for argument has been with reference to their function, the general character and form of the cells have received but little consideration. Ever since the first description of this portion of the enamel organ the cells therein have been characterized as "star-shaped," and while this stellate form is the most common, it is by no means a universal condition. The form of the cells in common with the other cells composing the organ appears to be much influenced by the position which they occupy, and by the age of the organ, those cells in the region of the inner tunic partaking of the globular form characteristic of this layer (see C, Fig. 188), while those closely associated with the outer tunic are inclined to be columnar or somewhat elongated. While the bodies of the cells in these respective locations are more or less influenced by their environments, they still retain to a certain extent the stellate feature by their many processes. But it is in the center of this myxomatous epithelial product that the most perfect stellate cells are located. We find, therefore, where this part of the organ is of the greatest width, that the true stellate cells are the most numerous, while at the summit of the crown and at the base of the organ, at both of which points the outer

and inner epithelial layers are closely associated, the star-shaped cells are almost wanting. In the study of this layer very much depends upon the thickness of the section, only the thinnest possible sections affording an opportunity for a correct conception. This is, of course, true of all parts of the organ, but the peculiar character of the stellate reticulum makes it especially necessary that great care be bestowed upon the preparation of the section. In transverse section the cells present no characteristic differences from those shown when the section is made longitudinally. One very pronounced feature about the cells of the stellate reticulum is the granular appearance of their protoplasm, resembling very closely the flattened squamous cells from the epithelium of the mouth, and it is no doubt this special feature which furnishes the ground for the opinion of many writers that it is a peculiarly modified epithelium. One peculiarity in connection with this tissue which is contrary to the generally accepted character of epithelial cells is the abundance of intercellular cement substance; but when the many minute spines or processes are considered as a part of the individual cell, the proportionate quantity of cellular and intercellular substance is somewhat decreased. The connecting processes are quite similar to those described by Stöhr as connecting bridges of protoplasm, while the cells themselves may be otherwise described as prickly-cells. The change in the form of the cells of this layer is not due to the presence of neighboring cells, as is the case with most epithelial cells, but, being soft and extremely plastic, it is more than likely that their form is strongly influenced by the tension of their connecting filaments. One of the most marked alterations in the general character of this part of the enamel organ is that which takes place at a time corresponding to the beginning of amelification, and is no doubt attributable to this phenomena. The cells which up to this period have remained widely separated now become more closely associated, not so much by a change of position as by what appears to be an increase in the size of the cell body with a corresponding decrease in the length of the anastomosing processes.

It is a fact admitted by most histologists that the peculiar star-like nature of the cells of the stellate reticulum is one princi-

pally brought about by postmortem changes, and that in reality they are polygonal cells filling up a greater part of the tissue with but little intercellular substance. That some shrinkage and distortion does take place may be proven by the examination of a section which has accidentally or otherwise become for a moment dry during its preparation, in which case little can be seen but the connecting processes, and even these are much shrunken. All the cells contained within the organ are more or less affected by this procedure, but none of them exhibit such a marked change in the outline as those of the stellate reticulum.

The layer of cells which is usually considered of least importance is that which makes up the outer tunic. In the young enamel organ the cells partake very much of the nature of those forming the inner tunic, but the older the organ becomes, the more dissimilar are the two layers. Primarily this layer is constructed of a single row of elongated cells, placed with remarkable regularity, upon the inner side of which are a number of similarly formed cells variously disposed, but with a common direction at right angles to those previously referred to. Like the internal epithelial layer, the cells of the outer tunic partake more or less of the nature of the stellate cells in passing from the single row of well-defined cells toward the stellate reticulum. While in the beginning the external epithelial layer is strongly differentiated from the surrounding cells, this is of but short duration. The atrophy of this layer begins with the appearance of the fully developed ameloblasts, by which the regular arrangement of the cells is greatly disturbed by an apparent breaking up of the entire layer. Many reputable writers claim that the external epithelial layer is of little or no interest, save, as Tomes puts it, "as a matter of controversy." This admission upon the part of so eminent an authority practically opens up a new field for research, especially so when we consider that various other writers (Waldeyer, Kolliger, and Magitot) have expressed conflicting opinions in regard to it. After carefully following the changes which occur in this layer from its earliest inception up to an advanced stage of calcification, it would appear that while marked changes occur in the character of the individual cells as well as in the general appearance of the layer, it is nevertheless



persistent, and in some way is essential to the process of amelification, even to a more marked degree than are the cells of the stellate reticulum. One important reason for this belief is based upon the fact that in the cuspidate teeth there appears at a time corresponding to the beginning of amelification, a decided disposition in the cells of this layer to dip down and completely divide the stellate reticulum between the forming cusps. That this alteration is one instrumental or essential to the calcifying process receives additional proof by referring to figure 181,

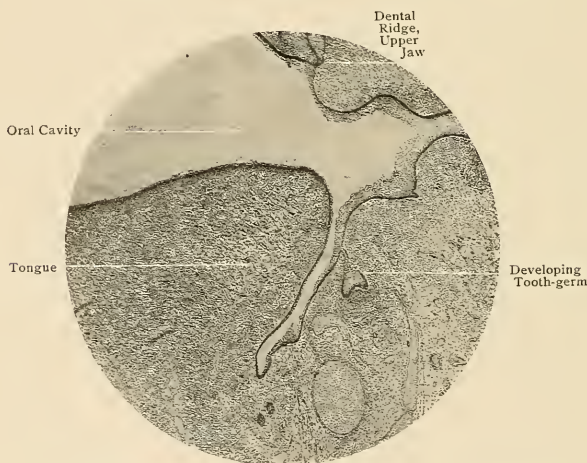


FIG. 189.—SECTION THROUGH THE FLOOR OF THE MOUTH OF HUMAN EMBRYO. TWELFTH WEEK.  $\times 30$ .

which shows the fully developed enamel organ with the exception of the actual appearance of the ameloblasts, and the lack of any attempt upon the part of the external epithelial layer to penetrate between the cusps.

**Dentin Organ** (Fig. 180).—This part of the tooth-germ, formed from the connective tissue of the primitive jaw, occupies the concavity of the enamel organ, and at an early period begins to assume the form of the future tooth-crown. Thus, primarily, the papillæ for the incisors will have their cutting-edges outlined by three small lobes, each of which



represents a separate point of calcification, while the papillæ for the molars will be molded according to the number of cusps of the future tooth, a small tubercle making its appearance for each cusp. In its inception the dentin papilla is composed of cellular tissue identical with that of the surrounding parts. The growth of the papilla is in the direction of the surface; at the same time the enamel organ forces itself more deeply into the substance of the parts, not only overhanging the coronal extremity of the papilla, but extending about and inclosing its lateral walls. Accompanying the growth of the papilla is a rapid change in its structure, becoming more vascular throughout, and its peripheral cells, differentiating, form the essential dentin cells—the *odontoblasts*. This layer of cells is in close relation to the enamel cells of the enamel organ, the combined activity of the two finally resulting in the calcification of the tooth-crown. The dentin papilla, which eventually becomes the tooth-pulp, decreases in size as calcification proceeds in the dentin, all additions to the calcifying surface taking place from within; while the enamel organ may be said to increase in size, the calcific action in the enamel progressing from within outward.

**The Cells of the Dentin Papilla.**—In the early life of the dentin germ, the cells are all simple embryonal connective-tissue cells. After differentiation takes place they are widely scattered and are of four varieties: spindle-shaped, round, stellate, and the elongated or club-shaped odontoblasts. None of these are constant in location except the layer of odontoblasts, which, as has been said, are arranged in a single row on the surface of the periphery of the organ, this zone being classed by the older writers as the *membrana eboris*. Like the ameloblasts of the enamel organ, the odontoblasts do not make their appearance until the papilla has assumed certain proportions, this about corresponding to the size and form of the dentin of the future tooth. Immediately beneath the layer of odontoblasts appears a zone almost devoid of cells. This is followed by a district in which the cells are quite numerous, and finally when the central portion of the papilla is reached the cells are again few in number and widely scattered. For the most part the cells in the interior of the

papilla are spindle-shaped or stellate, having rounded nuclei about which there is a small amount of protoplasm which penetrates the intercellular substance by numerous hair-like processes.

**The Odontoblasts.**—These are club-shaped or flask-shaped cells, each provided with a large nucleus which usually assumes the outline of the enlarged end of the cell which is directed toward the interior of the papilla. From the opposite end of the cell, or that directed toward the enamel organ, and in close proximity to its concave surface, one or more protoplasmic processes are given off. These persist and are finally encapsuled within the calcified dentin, forming the dentinal fibers. These cells are very closely associated, so much so, in fact, that their enlarged extremities are almost or quite in actual contact, more or less space existing between the constricted portion of the cells as they pass toward the surface.

**Germes for Permanent Molars.**—Reference has been made to the fact that the enamel organs for the deciduous teeth are given off from the tooth-band at a point somewhat distant from its free margin, so that the tooth-band is continued beyond the primitive enamel germ, this free margin of the band afterward generating the enamel organ for the succedaneous tooth. As the twelve permanent molars are not succedaneous teeth, some other means must be provided for their development.

Opinions of various writers upon this subject are somewhat conflicting. The theory is advanced by some that as the jaw increases in length the tooth-band and lamina primarily provided for the deciduous teeth are extended backward, first giving off a bud for the first permanent molar; at a somewhat later period, and with the increase in the growth of the jaw, an additional bud is generated for the second molar, the third molar being provided for in a like manner. Another theory, and one generally accepted as correct, is that the cords for the permanent molars spring individually and directly from the subepithelium. There may be found an exception to this in the case of the first permanent molar, which sometimes appears to have its origin from the distal follicular wall of the second deciduous molar. Whatever theory be accepted in regard to the genesis of these permanent organs, the process of develop-

ment after the appearance of the primary bulb or enamel germ is identical with that of the deciduous teeth.

**The Dental Follicle, or Tooth-sac.**—During the early life of the tooth-germ, both the enamel organ and the dentin papilla are differentiated from the surrounding parts by dissimilarity of structure only, but as development proceeds, a more definite separation appears between the tooth-generating organs and the general tissues of the primitive jaw, this separating medium being known as the dental follicle. The term "follicle" is only one of a number applied to these parts, "dental saccu-



FIG. 190.—DEVELOPING TOOTH ABOUT THE FOURTH FETAL MONTH. APPEARANCE OF THE TOOTH-FOLLICLE.

lus," "tooth-sac," and other appellations being employed with equal significance. By some writers it is customary to apply the term "follicle" up to the period of complete closure, the term "sac" or "sacculus" being employed after that time. There appears, however, to be little foundation for such a distinction, the terms being synonymous. Again, the follicle is frequently referred to as meaning the sac and its contents, but this usage is a misapplication of the term. There appears to be no well-founded reason why the follicular wall or sac should not be

referred to as such, regardless of the formative organs within. As to the development of the tooth-follicle, it appears to be a generally accepted theory that at a very early period there is developed from the base of the papilla cells which, differentiating, form the walls of the follicle. By this growth of cells the periphery of the papilla is first surrounded, and this step is soon followed by an extension of the cellular structure in the direction of the surface epithelium, to the deep layer of which the cells become firmly attached, and in so doing inclose the enamel organ, which hangs like a hood over the extremities of the

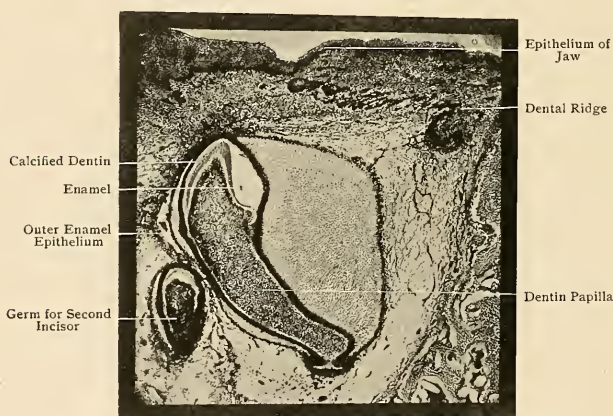


FIG. 191.—DEVELOPMENT OF DECIDUOUS INCISOR, FROM HUMAN FETUS.—  
(After Gysi.)

papilla. The tissue thus formed from the base of the dentin germ is continuous with and similar in its origin to the pulp-substance. The primitive tooth-germ, during the formation of the follicular wall, is found swinging in a membranous pocket, being supported by the epithelial band, which, in turn, is attached to the oral epithelium; but as the walls increase and completely inclose the germs, which is accomplished about the fourth fetal month, the epithelial band is broken and the second or saccular stage of tooth-development is reached. The walls of the follicles are made up of two layers; the outer layer

is dense and firm, and finally becomes the dental periosteum; the inner layer is thin, frail, and in the recent state somewhat transparent, and at an advanced period assists in the formation of the cementum.

Having thus briefly described the primary stage of tooth-development, the careful study of which can only be pursued with the aid of the microscope, we will now pass to the secondary or saccular stage. By the introduction of a number of illustrations, prepared from original dissections by the author, this phase of the subject will be readily comprehended.

Before continuing the subject of tooth-development, it will be eminently proper to briefly describe those parts directly concerned in the process. At a very early period of fetal life we

That Part of Cartilage not yet Ossified.



FIG. 192.—DEVELOPING MANDIBLE, THREE-MONTH FETUS.

find preparations are being made for the development of the maxillary bones. That these are about the first bones to be called into functional activity accounts in a measure for their very early development. The osteoblastic activity in the intercellular substance destined to become the inferior maxilla begins about the middle of the second month of fetal life, while at a somewhat later period a similar action takes place in the region of the superior maxilla. A detailed description of the body of these bones having been given on another page, it will not be repeated here, but to that portion which gives lodgment to the tooth-germs, and which in a measure is controlled by their presence, some attention must be given, and for this purpose the mandible will principally be used.

Figure 192 represents the lingual face of the lower jaw after removal from a three months' fetus. Attached to it is the remaining portion of Meckel's cartilage, which by this time is much wasted. It will be recalled that this cartilaginous band appears in the mandibular processes before the beginning of the second fetal month, being formed in two distinct halves, the free ends of which finally unite at the median line, forming a continuous support or framework, about which ossification takes place. At a corresponding period, and in a similar manner, two like processes are thrown out for the superior maxillæ, but, unlike Meckel's cartilage, these do not unite at the median line, but stop short of this, the space thus resulting being provided for by two additional processes, which shoot



FIG. 193.—EVOLUTION OF THE MANDIBLE FROM THE THIRD FETAL MONTH TO BIRTH, TWO-THIRDS ACTUAL SIZE.

down from the region of the forehead and provide for the development of the intermaxillary bones. About the middle of the second month a center of ossification appears in the neighborhood of the future mental foramen, quickly followed by others at the symphysis and at the angle. These secondary centers soon unite with the primary one, and by the end of the second fetal month the osseous contour of the primitive jaw is established. While ossification takes place in the membrane surrounding Meckel's

cartilage, the cartilage itself does not appear to be directly concerned in the process, and by the sixth or seventh fetal month the mandibular portion completely disappears, while that portion near the tympanum is ossified into the malleus. That portion of the bone which forms above Meckel's cartilage and the inferior dental nerve is that which finally gives support to the tooth-germs. This cartilage is not confined to the human species, but is the common heritage of reptiles, rodents, birds, and fishes, in all of which it gives support to the developing lower jaw.



Figure 193 represents the evolution of the mandible from the middle of the third fetal month to the time of birth. It will be observed that during this interval there is a gradual increase in the size of the bone, but little alteration in its contour. By a constant and gradual osseous deposit about the distal extremity of the bone its length is increased to accommodate the additional teeth as they make their appearance. While the external form of the bone shows but slight variation during this period, the internal structure, or that wherein the tooth-germs lie, is undergoing a complete transformation.

Figure 194 is illustrative of these changes; beginning with a simple groove, or gutter, into which the tooth-follicles hang, the follicles exerting a controlling influence over its form. Next comes the appearance of septa between the anterior follicles, which at this period are somewhat irregularly placed in the arch, followed in a few weeks by a well-defined partition between the cuspids and molars, until finally, at birth, each follicle is inclosed in its individual crypt, with the single exception of the second molar, in which the distal septum, or that which is to separate it from the permanent first molar, has not yet made its appearance. As the tooth-follicles increase in size, by the development of the teeth within, they become more perfectly inclosed in the bony vaults, the sides of the alveolar walls arching over and almost completely inclosing the developing teeth. Figure 195 shows the lower jaw of a seven-months-old child embodying the condition above referred to. No sooner have the crypts grown to this extent, than the resorptive action produced by, or provided for, the advancing crowns speedily results in their downfall, to be again built up with the evolution of the permanent teeth.

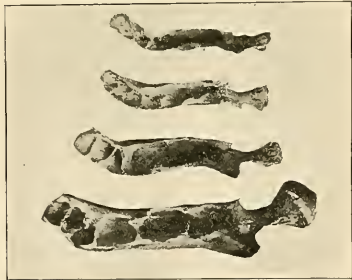


FIG. 194. — EVOLUTION OF THE MANDIBLE FROM THIRD FETAL MONTH TO THIRD MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

About the first visible sign of preparation for the development of the teeth, other than that made apparent by dissection, may be observed as early as the beginning of the third fetal month, when, upon opening the cavity of the mouth and looking

Mucous Membrane and Periosteum Lifted Up



FIG. 195.—INFERIOR MAXILLA OF SEVEN-MONTHS-OLD CHILD.

upon the palate, a well-defined infolding of the epithelial eminence will be seen. In figure 196 this condition is shown by a dissection through the oral cavity of a four months' fetus, the outer fold being that of the cheeks and lips, while within are the hard palate and primitive alveolar ridge. The mouth at this

Labiodental Space

Labial Fold



Primitive Dental  
Groove, so called

FIG. 196.—SECTION THROUGH THE MOUTH OF FOUR-MONTH FETUS.

period has passed the rudimentary state, the transverse plates which contribute to the formation of the hard palate having approached each other until the oral and nasal cavities, heretofore existing as a single buccal cavity, have become separate

and distinct. The infolding of the oral epithelium, as outlined on the summit of the primitive alveolar ridge,—the primitive dental furrow, so called,—marks the position of the tooth-band, from which are given off the incipient tooth-bulbs. For the purpose of further investigation, a dissection of these parts was made and the maxillary bones removed, after which they were divested of their fibrous covering, including the periosteum. That portion which overlies the palatal processes was readily lifted in one sheet, while that upon the facial surface was separated at the median line and stripped independently of the other (Fig. 197). The removal of these tissues is readily accomplished until the margins of the partly formed alveoli are reached. Here the periosteum dips down into the various crypts, and serves as a lining membrane for them, and probably contributes fibres to the outer layer of the follicular walls. After advancing thus far, the detached tissues may be grasped, and by careful manipulation the tooth-follicles containing the formative organs removed from their respective vaults and turned over for examination.

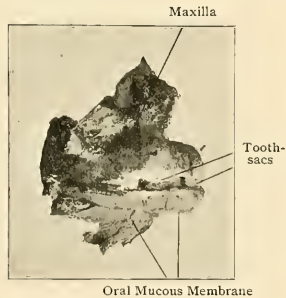


FIG. 197.—SUPERIOR FETAL MAXILLA, SHOWING MANNER OF DISSECTION TO EXPOSE TOOTH-SACS.

Figure 198 shows the result of such a dissection. On the left, the palatal plates and alveolar walls of the divested bones may be observed; on the right, is the fibrous covering, which has been turned completely over after removal from the bones, having firmly attached to it the ten tooth-follicles for the deciduous teeth. If this dissection be made without the precaution of lifting the periosteum, the follicles would not cling to the oral membrane with sufficient tenacity to permit of their ready removal. It may be of some interest to note that at this early period the position of the follicles containing the germs for the lateral incisors is that which the tooth is forced to occupy up to and frequently beyond the eruptive period, being crowded within the tooth-line by the central and cuspid follicles, in con-

sequence of which the lateral crypts are thrown well into the palatal plates.

Figure 199 represents the sacs broken down, exposing to view the dentin papillæ, or those structures destined to become

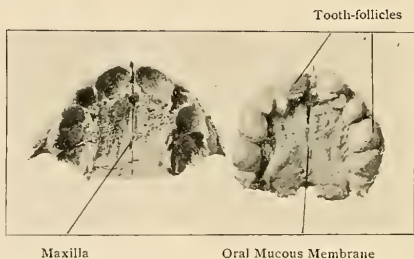
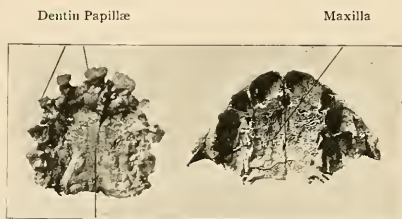


FIG. 198.—DISSECTION UPON SUPERIOR MAXILLA, FOURTH FETAL MONTH, EXPOSING TOOTH-FOLLICLES.

the tooth-pulps. The position which these occupy in the illustration is exactly the reverse from that which they assume when in position in the follicle, being thus reversed that a better idea of their shape may be obtained. Prior to the twelfth or thirteenth week of fetal life this incipient bulb or papilla is with-



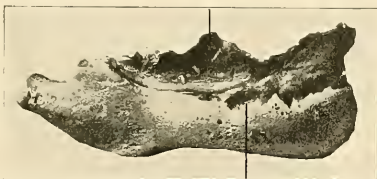
Oral Mucous Membrane, Turned Completely Over

FIG. 199.

out definite form ; but by the latter period each papilla begins to assume the contour of the future tooth-crown, as faintly outlined in the illustration, those of the incisors presenting the angular form of the future cutting-edge, the cuspids that of the

single cone, while the coronal extremities of the molars are represented by outlines corresponding to the future cusps and marginal ridges. Besides the dentin papilla, there is contained within the follicular walls the organ which later on is productive of the enamel, but which up to this time has been actively

Oral Mucous Membrane and Periosteum Dissected from Mandible



Attachment of Follicle to Oral Membrane (Enlarged One-third)

FIG. 200.—MANNER OF DISSECTION TO EXPOSE TOOTH-SACS.

engaged in molding the tooth-form as outlined by the papilla. To return to the tooth-follicle, the dissection in this instance being upon the lower jaw of a four months' fetus. Figure 200 shows the mandible removed and the dissection carried to the

Tooth-follicles Oral Membrane



Follicle for Permanent First Molar

FIG. 201.—TOOTH-FOLLICLES REMOVED FROM MANDIBLE, FOURTH FETAL MONTH.

point at which the follicles may be lifted from their bony encasements, this being accomplished by an incision along the base of the bone, followed by a stripping of the membrane first from the facial and then from the lingual side of the bone. When these two flaps reach the margin of the crypts, they are firmly

grasped and the follicles removed from their sockets, as illustrated in figure 201.

At the beginning of the saccular stage of development the form of the future tooth-crown is well outlined by the dentin papilla, which in figure 202 is brought into view by a dissection of the walls of the follicles shown in figure 201 without breaking the attachment existing between the two. As in the case of the follicle, much confusion of terms in regard to this structure exists, the "dentin bulb," the "pulp," "dentin germ," and the "papilla" being used *ad libitum*, without apparent regard for the structural changes which are continuously affecting the organ. It will, therefore, be proper to simplify this conglomeration of

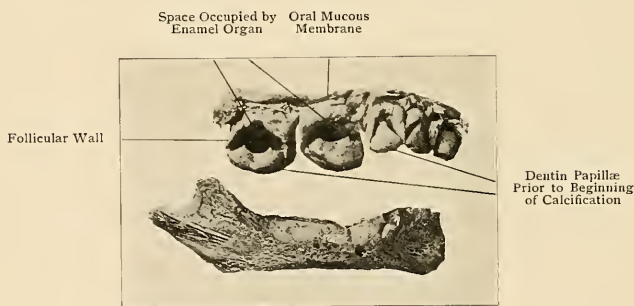


FIG. 202.—TOOTH-FOLLICLES SHOWN IN FIGURE 201 OPENED.

terms by a classification appropriate to the various stages of development. The term "dentin papilla" will best describe this part of the tooth-germ up to the time of beginning of calcification, subsequent to which the term "pulp" should be employed. As previously stated, the enamel organ, until this period, has been principally devoting its energies to the molding of the tooth-form, and it is not until this model, as represented in the papilla, is complete that the process of calcification begins. About the fourth fetal month preparations for the calcification of the deciduous teeth are begun by the development of the odontoblastic cells for the dentin, which first make their appearance on the periphery of the dentin papilla, the summits of the



various cusps in the molars and the future cutting-edges of the incisors being first affected. This phenomenon is soon followed by the appearance of the ameloblastic cells for the enamel, which establish themselves in the internal epithelial layer of the enamel organ.

Figure 203 is prepared from a dissection made in a manner similar to that shown in figure 199, but at a period about a month later, being from the superior maxilla of a five months' fetus. The dissection shows the extent of calcification at this period, which process also defines the position of the odontoblastic cells upon the extremity of the papillæ. In the incisors (one of which was lost in the preparation of the specimen) the

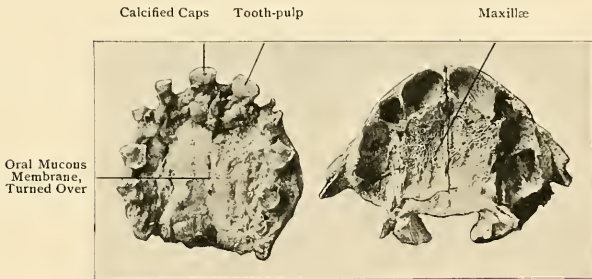


FIG. 203

dentin may be seen capping the cutting-edges. The cuspids in this subject have not yet begun to calcify, although it is not unusual to find the cusp of this tooth receiving its lime-salts at this early period. In the molars the summits of the various cusps, as well as a portion of the various ridges descending therefrom, are undergoing the change produced by the impregnation of the lime-salts. It is quite probable that these delicate caps are at this time composed of dentin alone, the calcoglobulin which precedes the enamel calcification forming somewhat later. From this time forward the pulp undergoes a gradual transformation as to size and form, and there is likewise a change in its cellular construction on those parts adjacent to the calcific action. While the outline of the pulp is gradually changing, its

original form is permanently recorded upon the periphery of the dentin cap, which, when once formed, is immutable, all additions taking place from within.

Figure 204 illustrates the result of a dissection upon the lower jaw of the same subject, disclosing practically the same condi-

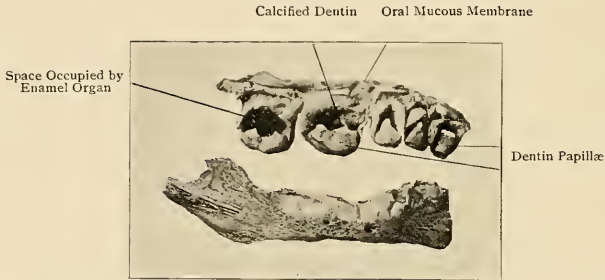


FIG. 204.—TOOTH-FOLLICLES OPENED, EXPOSING DENTIN PAPILLÆ AND BEGINNING OF CALCIFICATION, FIFTH FETAL MONTH.

tions, with the exception of the sac containing the developing cuspid, which was found with a slightly calcified cap of dentin. This slight variation between the development of the upper and lower teeth is one that is present in nearly every instance, the latter being somewhat in advance of the former.

In figure 205 the tooth-pulps, with their primitive cappings



FIG. 205.

of dentin, have been removed from the follicles, and a better opportunity of studying the relations between the two parts is presented. By the conversion of the coronal extremities of the dentin papilla into odontoblasts, and their active calcification, some positive union between the two parts might be expected.

On the contrary, the dentin caps are readily removed, leaving the pulp beneath without the slightest rupture, so that we find calcification is not a secretory or excretory metamorphosis, but that the change takes place within the substance of the papilla itself, whereby it is altered from an organic to an inorganic substance.

The next dissection was one upon the mandible of a six months' fetus. Figure 206 shows the tooth-follicles removed from the partially formed bony crypts in which they have been incased. At an early period of fetal life, and at a time prior to the completion of the tooth-follicles, there is deposited beneath the tooth-germs a thin layer of bone, which at once begins to assume the form of the partially developed follicular walls. As the growth of the follicle proceeds, there is a corre-



Lingual Surface of Mandible

FIG. 206.

sponding increase in the osseous deposit, the alveolar walls extending about and accommodating themselves to the membranous sacs. Thus we find in this portion of the maxillary bones a feature peculiar to itself—that of a continuous transformation from its earliest inception to the adult period, first developing about the temporary tooth-sacs and completely incasing them, which is speedily followed by complete resorption of the walls, again followed by a rebuilding during the evolution of the permanent teeth, and again swept away with the loss of these organs. Figure 207 illustrates the opposite side of the same jaw, with its outer or facial plate removed, together with the intervening septa. The follicles are opened, and the extent of calcification at this period (six months) made apparent. The

pulps and calcified caps are approximately as found when dissected, save a slight settling of all the parts. The incisors have calcified to about one-third their full coronal length; the unicuspoid contour of the cuspid has been established, as shown by the deposit of the lime-salts upon its summit, and the upbuilding of the mesial and distal cutting-edges. The first

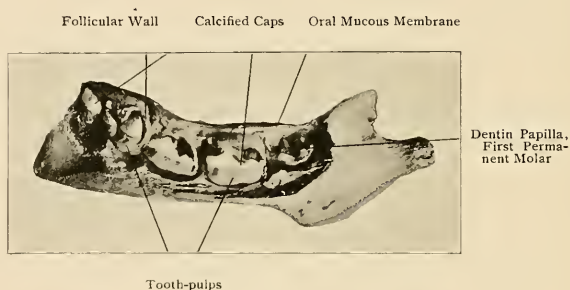


FIG. 207.

molar has about completed its occlusal surface, and, while the cusps of the second molar are nearing completion, there is a lack of union in the central and distal fossæ. Immediately posterior to the second deciduous molar, the sac containing the formative organs for the first permanent molar is shown opened, exposing to view the dental papilla, which at this early



FIG. 208.

period has assumed the form of the future tooth-crown, and calcification is about to begin. Figure 208 illustrates the extent of calcification in the deciduous teeth at the sixth fetal month. As the growth of the teeth proceeds, it will be observed that the angularity which originally accompanied the calcifying caps of the molars is gradually disappearing, as is also the tri-

tubercular form of the incisors and cuspids, this change being brought about by the deposition of enamel to the parts.

Figures 209 and 210 show the calcified caps removed from the pulps, and so arranged that both their external and internal anatomy may be studied. Prior to this time there has been but little alteration in the form of the dentin pulp, only a gradual decrease in its size being noted; but now we find it being divested of many of its angles, particularly those which origi-

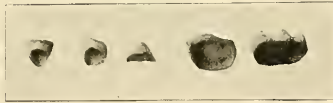


FIG. 209.

nally served as a basal form for the coronal extremities of the future tooth. With the disappearance of these the concavity within the cap is slowly assuming the form of the future pulp-chamber.

That a better understanding of the saccular stage of tooth-development might be had, a transverse section was made through the molar follicles, as shown in figure 211. In this the

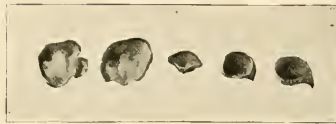


FIG. 210.

attachment of the follicular walls to the deep epithelial layer is visible, while within the walls is the enamel organ, the calcified dentin, and the tooth-pulp. As previously stated, the enamel organ is seen suspended above and forming a hood-like investment to the calcifying structure. This organ not only overhangs the occlusal surface of the tooth-crown, but completely envelops the sides of the calcified cap and dentin pulp. Previous to the beginning of calcification the enamel organ is in close

proximity to the dentin papilla, the original form of the latter being represented by the calcified dentin.

We have now arrived at that period of fetal existence when it is possible to study the macroscopic development of the perma-

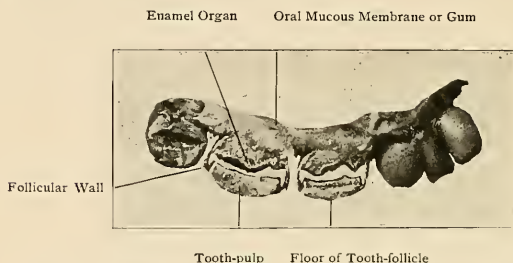


FIG. 211.—DISSECTION SHOWING PULP, CALCIFIED CAP, AND ENAMEL ORGAN.

nent first molar. Figure 212 represents a section of the lower jaw of a six months' fetus, and displays not only the sacs of the deciduous teeth, but also that of the permanent first molar. In most respects the evolution of this tooth is similar to that of the temporary organs, having its origin from the deep epithelial layer, either directly or by continuation of the tooth-band backward. Preparations for its growth are begun as early as the third fetal month, at which time the enamel organ is given off, and thereafter the developmental process is identical with that of the deciduous teeth.

Oral Mucous Membrane



FIG. 212.

There is one structure, however, intimately connected with the development of the permanent teeth not found in connection with the deciduous organs—the *gubernaculum*, or leading cord.

Figure 213 represents another section of a six months' fetal mandible, with the dentin papilla for the permanent first molar turned out from the follicle after being rolled from its bony incasement. Attached to the apex of the tooth-sac (which



has been turned back), and leading from it to the epithelium of the jaw, is the gubernaculum. This fibrous structure was at one time thought to be directly concerned in the development of the tooth. Although this is denied at present, little is said in regard to its function, but it undoubtedly serves the purpose of directing the tooth to that position which it should occupy in the jaw, and where the least resistance to its eruption is formed by the foramen which the cord has established. Each of the permanent teeth is provided with a similar membranous cord, an illustration and more complete description of which will follow later on.

We have now arrived at a period when the subject under

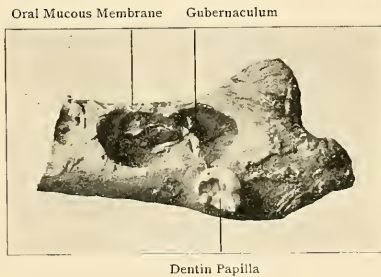


FIG. 213.

consideration naturally becomes of deeper interest. I refer to that time when the being changes from a complex dependent condition to one of self-providing independence. Previous to the time of birth the teeth appear to be but little disturbed by certain morbid conditions which might be present in the parent, and from their earliest inception up to this period their development proceeds with but little interruption and with much regularity. Figure 214 illustrates the condition of the deciduous teeth at birth; the central incisors are calcified externally to the cervical line, the lateral incisors to a point corresponding to the summit of the palatocervical ridge; the cuspids have advanced somewhat beyond the angles of the crown, while the molars have their crowns calcified to about one-half their completed length.

With all this progress as represented by the external contour of the tooth-crowns, the internal form appears to be somewhat slow in assuming the shape of the future pulp-chamber. From the beginning of the saccular stage of development up to the time of birth there is but little increase in the diameter of the tooth-sac, but there occurs a gradual increase in its length.



FIG. 214.—DECIDUOUS TEETH AT BIRTH. (Reflected picture.)

Figure 215 shows the mandible from a child one week old, with the greater part of the external or facial surface of the bone removed, exposing not only the sacs containing the developing deciduous teeth, but also that of the permanent first molar. The relation of the sacs to the inferior dental canal is apparent, as well as the firm attachment of the follicular walls to the oral membrane. In figure 216 the tooth-sacs have been dissected

Oral Mucous Membrane



FIG. 215.

and the pulps removed from the calcified caps, presenting an additional illustration of the amount of dentin deposit at this age. To further illustrate the size and form of the pulp as compared with the calcified cap at birth, a transverse incision was made through the left superior maxilla, at a point corresponding to the base of the pulp, as shown in figure 217. The calcified

parts remain in position resting against the remaining portion of the enamel organ, while the pulps are dislodged and may be observed resting upon the incised surface. In this illustration

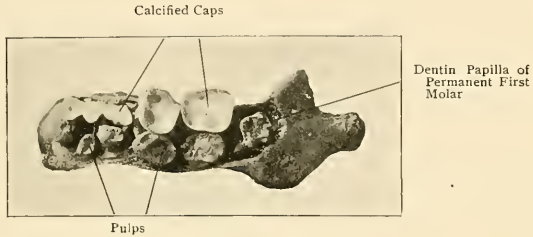


FIG. 216.

the dentin papilla for the first permanent molar is also seen, being supported by the walls of the follicle, which in turn are attached to the oral epithelium by the gubernaculum. It may

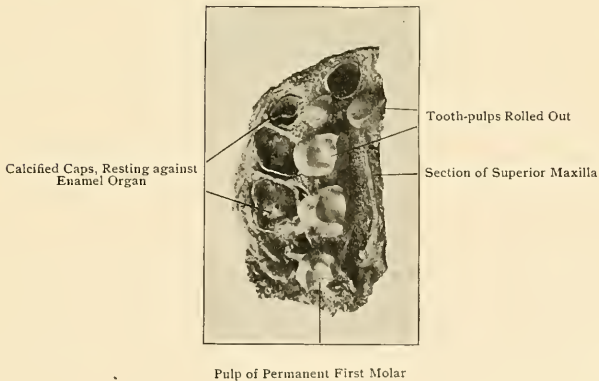


FIG. 217.

also be noted that those parts of the pulp corresponding to the cusps and marginal ridges show a decided convergence of the surface toward the center.

Reference has been made to the formation of the follicular walls by a differentiation of cells, which at an early period are given off from the base of the papillæ, and to the continuity of the two structures. Figure 218 was prepared for the purpose of showing these intimate relations. The sides of the sacs

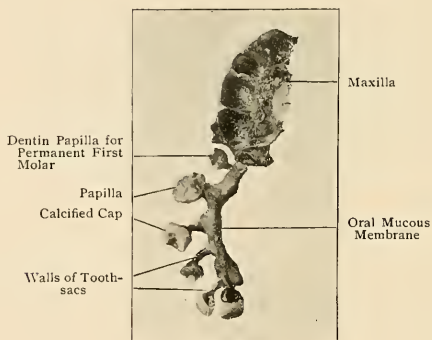


FIG. 218.

were opened and turned back ; the calcified tooth-caps with pulps in position were grasped and given several revolutions, thus twisting the remaining portion of the walls, the floor of which is seen as a continuous structure given off from the pulp and connecting it with the epithelium of the jaw.

#### PREPARATIONS FOR THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE PERMANENT TEETH.

A little before the time of birth sufficient advance has been made in the development of the permanent teeth to permit a study of their relations with the temporary organs. The early preparation for the growth of these teeth was for a long time a subject of much controversy, some writers advancing the theory that the buds for the permanent teeth were produced or given off from the sacs of the temporary teeth ; others contending that the cords were derived from the remnants of the

primitive cords immediately after their rupture. The theory now generally accepted is that the cord is given off from the primitive cord at a point in close proximity to its attachment to the deciduous enamel organ. This can only apply to those teeth which are succedaneous, and, therefore, does not include the permanent molars, as heretofore stated. Whatever theory be accepted in regard to the genesis of the permanent teeth, there can be no mistake in regard to that part of the process which we are permitted to ocularly investigate. I shall, therefore, proceed to describe the position and contents of the permanent tooth-sacs at birth. Figure 219 presents the result of a vertical dissection through the superior maxillary bones, the

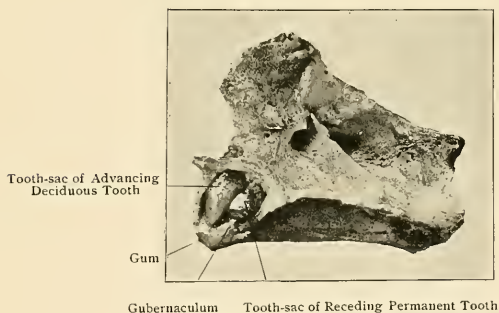


FIG. 219.—SECTION THROUGH SUPERIOR MAXILLÆ, SIXTH MONTH AFTER BIRTH.

inner surface of the right maxilla being exposed to view. Many of the frail processes, particularly those entering into the construction of the nasal cavities, were lost during the preparation of the specimen, the whole purpose of the dissection being to show the sac of the permanent incisor and its relationship to its predecessor. By this time calcification in the deciduous incisor has so far advanced that the contour of the tooth-crown may be plainly outlined through the walls of the sac. Resting against the palatal concavity of the crown of the temporary incisor is the sac containing the formative organs for its permanent successor. This permanent tooth-sac does not long remain in such close proximity to the deciduous tooth-

crown, for as the latter advances toward the surface of the gum the former recedes and is soon inclosed in a separate crypt, which, were it not for the gubernacular foramen, would completely inclose it. Figure 220 represents a section of the left superior maxilla, introduced at this point for the purpose of showing the position of the foramina for the gubernacula. These may be observed immediately posterior to the incisor and cuspid teeth. At birth these foramina do not exist as such, the partially formed vaults containing the sacs for the permanent teeth appearing as an extension of the temporary crypts in a palatal direction ; but as the temporary teeth advance and the

Foramina for Gubernacula



FIG. 220.

permanent teeth recede, the roof of the crypt is completed, and the foramen established by the presence of the gubernaculum. This extension of the temporary crypts is more clearly demonstrated in figure 221, which represents one side of the lower jaw at birth with the partially calcified deciduous teeth in position in the bone. Suspended above this is the gum, which has been dissected from the bone, having attached to its under surface the sacs for the permanent teeth. Those for the incisors are particularly well defined and their place of lodgment in the bone readily noted. In the case of the cuspid, both



the deciduous tooth and the permanent tooth-sacs are in position in the crypt. The cords which support the incisors are somewhat lengthened from the weight of the sacs, the gubernacula not assuming this thread-like form until the permanent sacs have further receded.

Figure 222 shows the result of a dissection upon these

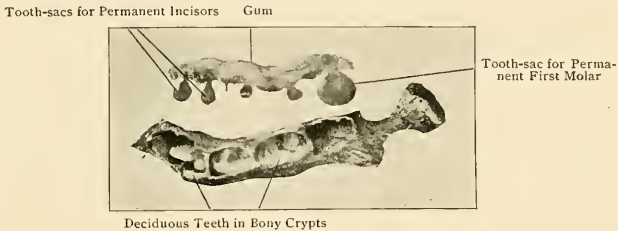


FIG. 221.

permanent tooth-follicles. The dentin papillæ of the various teeth are seen in a reversed position, with the follicular walls attached to their bases. At this period the papillæ for the permanent incisors may be compared to the tail of a fish, being perfectly transparent over its free extremity, which feature is

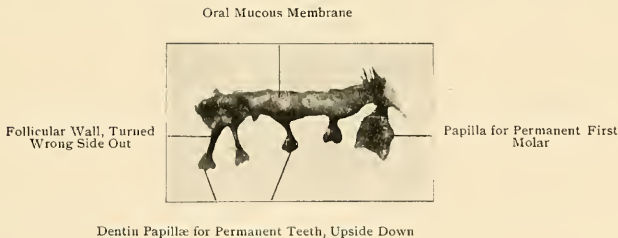
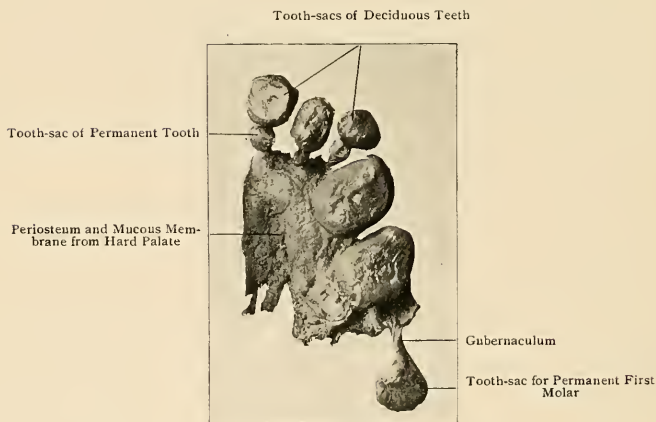
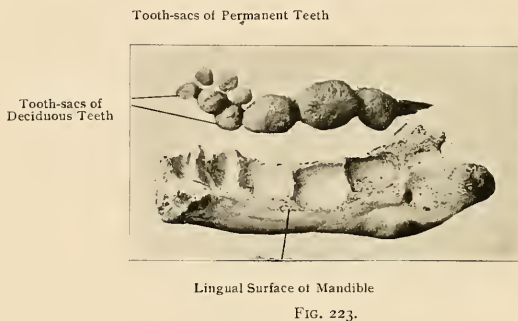


FIG. 222.

gradually lost as its thickened base is approached. The fish-tail appearance is further represented by the division of the free extremity into three distinct parts, each of which provides a separate point of calcification. The cuspid papilla is missing, and the bicuspid has advanced little beyond the form of the

primitive bulb. The first molar is shown with the full diameter of the crown represented by the pulpal mass, and the tips of the cusps are already beginning to take on the calcific action.



A further illustration of the progress of the development of the permanent teeth and their relation to the deciduous organs may be seen in figure 223, the dissection in this instance being

upon the lower jaw of a one-month-old child. The membrane has been lifted from the bone with the tooth-sacs attached to it. Immediately posterior to the sacs containing the crowns of the temporary incisors and cuspids are those for their corresponding successors, the papillæ of which have already assumed the tubercular outline of the future cutting-edge. While the permanent tooth-sacs are distinctively independent pouches, there appears, nevertheless, to be a well-established fibrous connection existing between the outer layer of the two follicular walls. This fibrous union is gradually broken as the permanent sacs recede and become incased in their own vaults.

While the permanent tooth-sacs are generally referred to as "receding," it is a question if this term is fully justified.

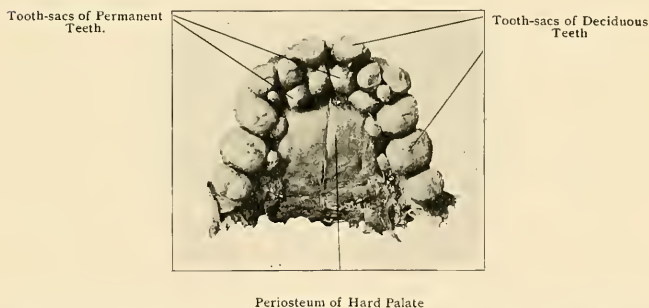


FIG. 225.—TOOTH-FOLLICLES FOR DECIDUOUS AND PERMANENT TEETH, THREE MONTHS AFTER BIRTH.

While the follicles do not remain in close relation with their predecessors, the change in the relative position of the two is principally brought about by the advance in the deciduous sacs, this forward movement being accompanied by a marked growth of the bone in the direction of the future alveolar ridge, thus leaving the permanent tooth-sacs well buried in the substance of the jaw.

Figure 225 represents the result of a dissection upon the superior maxillæ of a three-months-old child. The mucous membrane covering the hard palate, together with the periosteum,

has been dissected from the bones and turned over for examination. The tooth-follicles for all the deciduous teeth, as well as those of the succedaneous permanent organs, may be observed firmly attached to the fibrous tissue. The permanent incisor sacs at this age are almost equal in size to those of their predecessors, and the dentin papillæ within possess a mesio-distal diameter almost equal to those of the calcified temporary caps. The sacs containing the germs for the permanent cuspids and bicuspid are somewhat diminutive, but the enamel organs within are already molding the contour of the future tooth-crowns upon the dentin papillæ.

By the beginning of the second month after birth calcification in the crowns of all the deciduous teeth is about complete, and preparation for the growth of the roots is under way. While



FIG. 226.

at this period the tooth-crowns may be said to be almost completely calcified, this does not apply to the interior of the crowns, the deposit of dentin internally being a continuous process, resulting in a gradual reduction in the capacity of the pulp-cavity. It is also quite probable that the enamel organ is somewhat active up to the eruptive period, and, if this be true, the enamel covering of the crown is not complete until this time. Whatever be the condition in the crowns, the time for the formation of the roots has arrived, and it is principally through the activity of the tooth-pulp that they are generated. We have seen that the contour of the tooth-crown was first molded upon the dentin papilla; so it is with the tooth-root: by a gradual elongation of the sac, accommodations are afforded the tooth-pulp for a corresponding growth. As the pulp

lengthens out toward the future apex of the root, it is molded to the root-form, and calcification takes place by the generation of odontoblastic cells upon the periphery of this organic root-form.

While the process of root-formation in the single-rooted tooth may be readily comprehended, the bifurcation or trifurcation of the molar roots presents a complication which calls for special reference. Figure 226 will assist in explaining this phenomenon. In the illustration three deciduous molar crowns are shown, two of which are incased in their tooth-sacs, the third being stripped of this membrane. The view is directly upon the base of the tooth-sacs, immediately beneath which is the base of the pulp. Up to this period the odontoblastic cells have been generating about the occlusal surface and lateral walls of the crown only, but now an accumulation of these cells is to be found upon the base of the pulp, lining up in the position of the future root-walls. This structural change is faintly outlined in the illustration. By this inward extension of the odontoblastic cells from various points about the margins of the pulp, and their union near the center of the mass, provision is made for the calcification of the various roots, which process is considered separately by an extension and molding of the pulp into two or more divisions.

**Calcification of the Cementum.**—While the dentin of the root is derived from the tooth-pulp, the external covering of the root (the cementum) is generated from another source. In every respect cementum is closely allied to bone, and we find its development provided for in a similar manner. As stated in another part of this chapter, the tooth-sac is made up of an outer and an inner layer, both of which are rich in blood-vessels. These membranous walls continue to invest the roots of the teeth during their upbuilding. The outer layer of the sac remains as a permanent structure placed between the root and the alveolar walls, forming the alveolodental membrane, while upon the surface of the inner layer osteoblasts (cementoblasts) are developed, which are speedily converted into bone or cementum. In this process the tooth-root may be compared to one of the long bones of the body, and the development of the cementum con-

sidered under the head of Subperiosteal Ossification. The only variation to be observed between this and subperiosteal development of bone is in the presence of a single Haversian canal (as the pulp-cavity may be considered), and even this difference is sometimes overthrown by small canals running at right angles to the pulp. These small canals are generally found near the apex of the root, at which point the cementum is the thickest. Like the enamel cap of the tooth-crown, the cementum is deposited upon the surface of the dentin of the root, thus increasing its diameter.

**Eruption of the Teeth.**—Up to this time no reference has been made to that process by which the teeth burst forth from their bony incasements, and, penetrating the mucous membrane, make their appearance in the mouth. Attention has been called to the growth of the bone about the tooth-follicles,—first forming beneath them as an open gutter, next surrounding their lateral walls and inclosing each follicle in a separate compartment, and finally each tooth becoming more completely enveloped by an arching-over of the mouth of the bony vault. This condition in the maxillary bones is reached between the seventh and eighth month after birth, and, almost simultaneously with the completed incasement of the teeth by the bone, active resorption begins, that portion of the bone which was last in forming being gradually removed. The cause of the resorption of the bone may readily be attributed to the advancement of the tooth, but the forces which are responsible for this latter phenomenon do not appear to be clearly understood. In a general way, the advancement of the crown may be said to result from the elongation of the root by the addition of dentin to its free extremity. But, when it is taken into consideration that the cuspid teeth, both deciduous and permanent, have their roots fully or nearly calcified before they begin to advance toward the surface, an exception to the generally accepted theory is established. The eruptive process takes place first in the anterior teeth,\* and the bone overlying the labial surface is first removed.

This loss of the bony structure is continued until fully one-half

---

\* See Description of the Teeth in Detail, p. 136.



of the labial surface is uncovered, and, as the crowns continue to advance toward the surface, they assume a more prominent position in the arch, and thus their cutting-edges become bared. The palatal or lingual face of the crypt serves a double purpose, forming not only a covering to the deciduous tooth, but also serving the permanent tooth-sac in the same capacity. This part of the crypt remains unabsorbed, the tooth-crown glides by its margin, and, after penetrating the mucous membrane, makes its appearance in the mouth. Closely following the resorptive process comes a rebuilding of the parts, until, finally, when the tooth is fully erupted, it is firmly supported by the new bone filling in about the base of the root. Accompanying the eruption of the anterior teeth and their establishment in the arch is an increase in the depth of this portion of the jaw, and, as the molar teeth advance and assume their position, there is a corresponding increase in the depth of the jaw in this locality. At the beginning of the eruptive period the roots of the deciduous teeth are but partially calcified, but as the crowns advance the calcific action at the extremity of the roots is continued, and, in the majority of instances, by the time the crowns are fully erupted the roots are completely formed. During the period of eruption the transitory nature of the alveolar portion of the jaw-bone is made manifest, accommodating itself to the growth of the teeth as well as to their change of position. The free margins of the alveolar walls are taking on new structure, which advances with, and becomes adapted to, the base of the tooth-root. Coincident with this the deeper portion of the alveolar process is formed by a rapid filling-in about the root as the tooth travels onward to assume its final position in the jaw. The eruption of the teeth is usually by pairs, with a slight intermission between each class. The central incisors first make their appearance, followed by the laterals, after which the first molars are erupted. The cuspids usually follow the first molars, and, finally, the second molars take their place in the arch. While this brief description of the eruption of the teeth refers to the deciduous organs only, the process in the permanent teeth is almost identical with this. Further reference to the

eruption of the permanent teeth will be made in connection with the degeneracy of the temporary set.

To return to the subject of tooth-development, attention is called to figure 227, prepared from a dissection upon a nine-months-old child, the illustration representing the hard palate, or roof of the mouth, at this period. The four incisor teeth have made their appearance, the labial surfaces of the crowns being fully exposed, while those facing the palate are but slightly uncovered. The approach of the remaining deciduous teeth is plainly indicated by the fullness of the alveolar borders, and the margins of the crypts are now being removed by resorption.

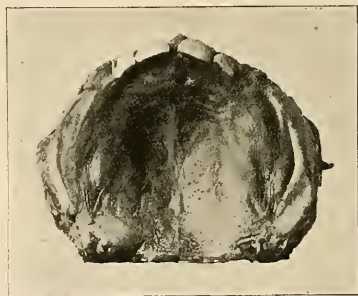


FIG. 227.—HARD PALATE FROM A NINE-MONTHS-OLD CHILD, ACTUAL SIZE.

If the mucous membrane should be removed, the crowns of the advancing teeth would be brought to view after the removal of the walls of the tooth-sacs, while the approaching cuspids and second molars yet remain partly covered by an arching over of the walls of the crypts; the resorptive process has also begun in these parts. It would also be observed that, while the walls of the crypts are molded to the outlines of the tooth-crowns, there exists a well-defined interspace between the two. During the growth of the tooth this interspace is filled by the walls of the tooth-sacs, and even after the teeth have passed the saccular stage of development, and assumed their positions in the mouth,

there yet remains between the roots and the alveolar walls a slight space which is occupied by the alveolodental membrane.

The next dissection is one upon the superior maxillæ of a two-year-old child (Fig. 228), representing the roof of the mouth of this subject. In this specimen it will be noticed that all of the deciduous teeth are erupted with the exception of the second molars. The lingual surfaces of the incisors are fully uncovered, while in the cuspids the labial surfaces are much more exposed than the lingual. In figure 229 the mucous membrane and sufficient of the bone have been removed to

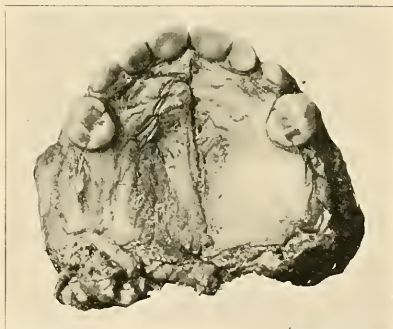
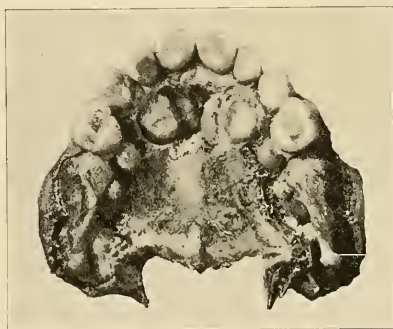


FIG. 228.—HARD PALATE FROM A TWO-YEAR-OLD CHILD, ACTUAL SIZE.

expose the tooth-sacs of the developing permanent teeth. The dissection furnishes no additional information over that obtained from figure 228, excepting that the primitive follicles for the permanent second molars make their appearance at this time.

At this early period the jaw has not lengthened sufficiently to permit of these follicles occupying their future position ; consequently they are found generating immediately over the tooth-sacs of the first permanent molars. As the first molars advance and the jaw lengthens backward, these follicles will be carried to the distal by the extension of the mucous membrane, to which they are firmly adherent. If these follicles were to be dissected

at this time, the papillæ would be without definite form, showing that the early function of the enamel organ has not yet begun. The tooth-sacs containing the permanent lateral incisors are found immediately beneath the palatal plates, and frequently during their earlier life they are not even protected by the bone, being in immediate contact with the mucous membrane. On account of the imperfect protection frequently afforded these sacs, the germs are sometimes injured and the teeth fail to make their appearance.



Sac for Permanent Second Molar

FIG. 229.—ROOF OF THE MOUTH OF A TWO-YEAR-OLD CHILD.

In figure 230 the walls of the sacs shown in figure 229 have been opened, and the relations existing between the first and second dentition at the end of the second year become apparent. The crowns of the permanent incisors are deeply set in the substance of the jaw, while the partially calcified crowns of the permanent laterals are in close proximity to the palatal surface. The partially formed crowns of the permanent cuspids are still more deeply seated in the substance of the jaw than those of the central incisors, and are not visible in the illustration. In this connection it will be well to again refer to the gubernaculum, and to its function—that of directing the tooth to its proper position in the arch. By reference to the illustration the crowns of the permanent teeth will be observed heading in various directions, and, while in this instance there appears to be a

general tendency for them to advance and assume their proper positions in the arch, in many cases they will be found directed at right angles to the point at which they should emerge from

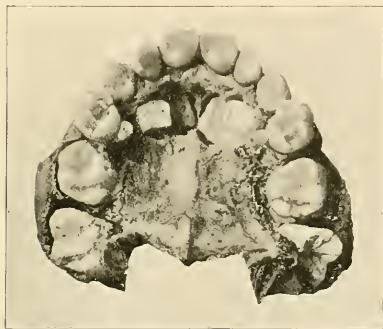
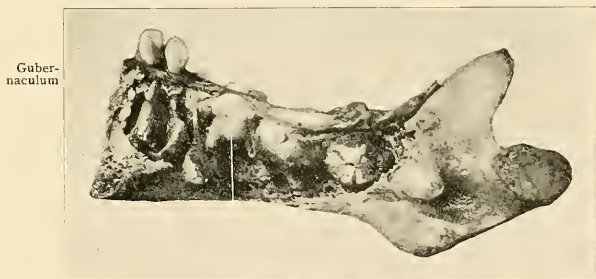


FIG. 230.—DEVELOPMENT OF THE TEETH ABOUT THE SECOND YEAR.

the bone. The gubernaculum, which appears to be nothing other than an elongation of the follicular walls, not only directs



Tooth-sac for First Bicuspid

FIG. 231.—DISSECTION OF LINGUAL FACE OF LOWER JAW, CHILD NINE MONTHS OLD.

the tooth by the tension of its fibers, but the foramen which its presence creates stimulates the resorptive action over the tract to be traveled by the tooth. Figure 231 was prepared

for the purpose of better showing the gubernacula, and the manner of connecting the tooth-sacs with the oral mucous membrane. This condition is well shown in the anterior teeth, the tooth-crowns having receded well toward the body of the



FIG. 232.—DECIDUOUS MOLARS WITH TOOTH-SACS FOR BICUSPIDS ATTACHED TO THE GINGIVAL TISSUE.

jaw. The follicle for the first bicuspid may be observed attached to the lingual face of the deciduous molar sac, and the leading cord is not yet an adjunct to the developmental process, but this structure will make its appearance as the follicle recedes from the surface.

In figure 232 the deciduous molars have been removed from the jaw and the relations existing between these teeth and the developing bicuspid is shown. The tooth-follicles for the succedaneous teeth are found immediately beneath the gingival margin, and apparently attached to the deep layer of the mucous membrane. This relationship between the per-

Deciduous Molars      Deciduous Incisors



FIG. 233.—SAME AS FIGURE 231, WITH TOOTH-SACS OPENED SHOWING DEVELOPING TEETH IN THE JAW.

manent and temporary organs is present about the eruptive period, but as the deciduous tooth advances and the permanent tooth-sac recedes, the two organs become more widely separated, and the permanent follicle is connected to the surface



only by the elongated follicular fibers which form the gubernaculum.

**Decalcification of the Deciduous Teeth.**—By the close of the second year the twenty deciduous teeth have taken their place in the dental arch, their roots have become fully calcified, and the apical foramina established; it is only for a short

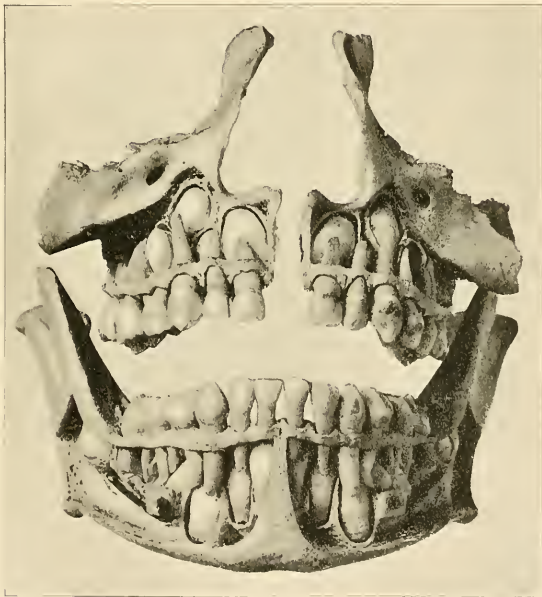


FIG. 234.—DEVELOPMENT OF THE TEETH ABOUT THE SIXTH YEAR.

period, however, that they remain thus perfect, the process of decalcification beginning about the fourth year. This resorptive action begins at the apical extremities of the roots and gradually progresses in the direction of the crowns. Commencing about the fourth year with the central incisor, decalcification takes place in the teeth in the order of their eruption, the lateral incisor following the central, the first molar following the

lateral, etc. By reference to figure 234 an approximate idea of the progress of decalcification may be obtained, and it will be observed that about three years elapse from the beginning of this rather obscure process to its completion, and the final casting-off or shedding of the tooth-crowns. In reference to the causation of this dissolution of the deciduous teeth, but little appears to be known. It has been said to result from the presence and pressure of the advancing permanent teeth, but there is no question but that it occurs absolutely independent of these organs, decalcification frequently taking place when from some obscure reason, one or more of the successional teeth are absent. During the entire period of root decalcification, the pulp of the tooth, which is also involved in the destruction, retains its vitality, but with the loss of vitality in the pulp resorption of the root ceases; so that the gradual removal of the root-substance must be considered as a purely physiologic action.

Figure 234 shows a dissection upon the jaws of a six-year-old child, by a careful study of which, a fair knowledge of the extent of resorption in the deciduous teeth at this period may be obtained.

**Advance of the Permanent Teeth.**—By referring to figure 234, the relations existing between the deciduous and the permanent teeth at about the sixth year may be noted. While the crowns of the deciduous teeth remain in position, a part of the space formerly occupied by their roots is taken up by the advancing crowns of the permanent teeth, the latter being calcified but little beyond their cervical lines. Between the seventh and eighth years the crowns of the deciduous incisors are cast off, and gradually the crowns of the permanent incisors force their way through the gum, the arch by this time having sufficiently increased in size to accommodate the additional width possessed by them. Previous to this time, or about the sixth year, by a backward extension of the jaws, the permanent first molars have erupted, assuming a position in the arch immediately posterior to the deciduous second molars. Between the tenth and eleventh years the crowns of the deciduous molars are lost, and the bicuspid advance to take their

places. Usually by the twelfth year there has been sufficient increase in the length of the jaws to permit of an additional tooth, and the permanent second molar gradually takes its position immediately posterior to the first. Between the twelfth and thirteenth year the deciduous cuspids are lost by decalcification of their roots, and they are succeeded by the permanent cuspids. We therefore find, by the fifteenth year, fourteen



FIG. 235.—THE COMPLETED DENTITION.

fully developed teeth occupying the dental arch of each jaw, the full number, thirty-two, or sixteen in each jaw, not being present until the eruption of the third molar, which, like the other teeth of this class, is compelled to await accommodations by a further increase in the length of the maxillary bones. This tooth usually takes its place between the eighteenth and twenty-first years, and thus completes the dentition (Fig. 235).

## PART II.—HISTOLOGY.

---

### CHAPTER I.

#### GENERAL HISTOLOGY: THE TISSUES OF THE BODY: EPITHELIAL TISSUES; CONNECTIVE TISSUES; MUSCULAR TISSUES; NERVOUS TISSUES.

Part first of this work has been devoted to a gross description of the mouth, its structures, the macroscopic arrangement of the tissues composing the various parts, their relations to one another as made manifest by dissection, etc. The remaining chapters will be given up to the study of the intimate structure of the oral tissues according to their form and organization. The necessity and value of thus continuing the subject may be presented as follows: If any of the structures or organs of the mouth—such as the mucous membrane, the mucous glands, or the muscular fibers common to various parts—are taken and submitted to a minute dissection, it will be found that the component parts may be separated into smaller and smaller portions. Take, for example, the muscles of the tongue: these, to the unaided eye, are distinctly fibrous in appearance, and these fibers may be readily separated from one another by removal of the interposed substance. In like manner the oral mucous membrane is composed of a dense fibrous connective tissue, which may be separated and examined in a similar way. But the possibilities of investigation by this method are limited, as the parts thus dissected are similar to one another, and are soon reduced to microscopic proportions, and when thus examined certain definite anatomic forms present themselves which are no longer capable of being divided. The reduction of any structure to such definite proportions without artificial mutilation or disarrangement of its parts is productive of what is termed an *anatomic element*. It is only in very rare instances that a tissue is composed of a single anatomic element, but usually two or more kinds are mingled together, and the tissue thus formed derives its texture, quality, and appearance from

the variety and number of anatomic elements present. Again, taking the muscular tissues as an example, they are found to be composed principally of one anatomic element—muscular fiber, arranged in parallel bundles. In close relation with the fibers are numerous nerve-filaments and capillary vessels, the whole being surrounded by a thin layer of connective tissue. Numerous bundles of this nature unite to form larger bundles, with larger nerve-filaments and blood-vessels. In the hard structures the same conditions are present, so that a definite understanding may be obtained by a minute examination only.

Beyond the tissues and the anatomic elements is the *elementary organism*—the *cell*.

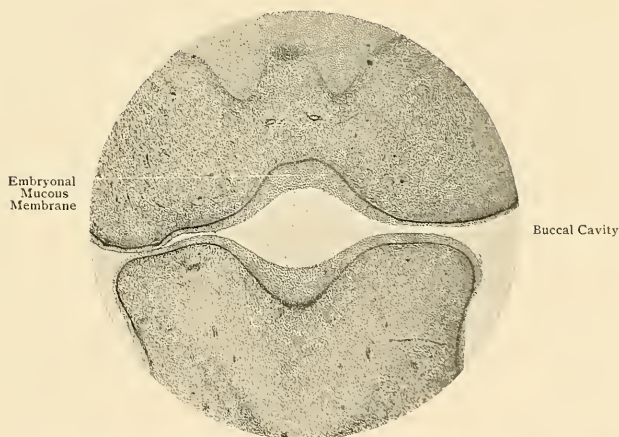


FIG. 236.—VERTICAL TRANSVERSE SECTION THROUGH HEAD OF HUMAN EMBRYO, ABOUT THE SIXTH WEEK, SHOWING SINGLE BUCCAL CAVITY.  $\times 30$ .

A *cell* is a structural element, primarily oval or spheroid in form, capable of self-nourishment, development, and reproduction. It is composed of two essential parts—the cell-substance, consisting principally of a soft albuminous matter, the *protoplasm*, and generally a well-defined central portion, the necessary part of a typical cell—the *nucleus*. The *nucleus* is usually round and situated near the center of the cell-substance. In many instances there is within the nucleus a small spheric body, the

*nucleolus*, which, although not having its function definitely established, undoubtedly is subordinate to the life activity of the cell. At the beginning of development the cells composing a part are all of the same general form, and similar in other respects; as development proceeds, the cells arrange themselves in germ-layers, and coincident to this change in relationship cease to resemble one another and become differentiated. By this aggregation of similar cells *tissues* are formed; and by a combination of different tissues, a structure of definite form and function, an *organ*, is generated.

The tissues of the body are divided into four grand divisions—namely, *epithelial tissue*, *connective tissue*, *muscular tissue*, and *nervous tissue*. During early life these tissues are composed of similar elements—of cells; but as growth proceeds, a twofold change takes place, in one of which the cells produce a special deposit, which accumulates between them and forms the *inter-cellular substance*; in the other the tissues of one kind become mixed with those of another.

**The Epithelial Tissues.**—The cells composing the epithelial tissues are known as epithelial cells; they are definite in outline, and consist of the cell-substance, protoplasm, and a nucleus. Two forms are most frequently met with—the flattened or squamous, and the columnar or prismatic. The *squamous* or pavement cells are flattened and scaly; in the former the nucleus is round, while in the latter it is flattened. The *columnar* cells present a greater variety in outline, being conic, club-shaped, or spindle-shaped, sometimes short and sometimes long. The nucleus is inclined to the form of the cell-substance, usually being more or less oval or oblong. In size the epithelial cells are quite variable, this difference occurring in cells of the same part as well as in those of distinct parts. By the arrangement of the cells the character of the epithelium is established; thus, if they are disposed in single layer, a *single-layered epithelium* is produced; or if stratified, forming several superposed layers, a *stratified epithelium* results. The consistency of the epithelial cells is such that they readily succumb to the pressure of neighboring cells, resulting in much variation in their outline. They are cemented to one another by an exceedingly thin layer of an



albuminous cement-substance, being in contact by their flattened sides or by irregularly formed processes, the result of force applied by adjacent cells.

A third class of epithelial cells are those columnar cells which are beset upon their free surfaces with numerous minute processes which during life are constantly vibrating; these are known as *ciliated* cells. Continuous masses of epithelial cells, "epithelia," are found covering the surface of the skin, and lining internal canals and organs. They are found in abundance, covering all parts of the mucous membrane of the mouth, and lining the numerous ducts which empty into that cavity. In some instances the epithelia are composed of a single stratum, in others of a number of strata, and the following varieties are to be observed: *simple squamous*, *simple columnar*, and *simple ciliated epithelium*, when a single stratum is present; and *stratified squamous*, *stratified columnar*, and *stratified ciliated epithelium*, when the several strata are present. The epithelium of the mouth is principally of the stratified squamous variety. Another classification is that known as glandular epithelium, composing the numerous glands and ducts (see Glands of the Mouth). In addition to this, one other variety exists, known as *neuro-epithelium*.

One of the special characteristics of epithelial tissue is the relatively small amount of intercellular substance as compared to the cells themselves.

**The Connective Tissues.**—In general this term is applied to all those tissues which support and connect other tissues. While the cells are numerous, they are proportionately less numerous than in the epithelial tissues. In the connective tissues the intercellular substance predominates where it is prominently developed and variously differentiated. The intercellular substance is characteristic of the connective-tissue group, and is especially interested in its function. By a variation in the quantity, nature, and disposition of the intercellular substance, three classifications are formed—namely, *fibrous connective tissue*, *cartilage*, and *bone* (including dentin and cementum). Each of these groups is subdivided into several varieties, but in all instances the intercellular substance is to be distinguished from the cells.

*Fibrous Connective Tissue.*—This tissue is present in the skin and mucous membrane, in the intermuscular tissues, in tendons, in fascia and aponeuroses, and in the tissues connecting various organs. It is composed of a meshwork of fine fibers of two kinds. The first, which makes up the greater part of the tissue, is formed of very fine, white, structureless fibers arranged closely in bundles and bands crossing and intersecting in all directions. The second variety, or the yellow, elastic fiber, has a much sharper and darker outline, not arranged in bundles, but is intimately mingled with the white fibers by twisting around and among its filaments. These are known as the elementary connective-tissue fibers. The size of the connective-tissue bundles depends upon the number of elementary fibers present, and by a variation in the arrangement of the bundles variety in the character of the fibroconnective tissue is produced in different localities. When the fibrous connective tissue is formed into an unbroken mass, as in mucous membrane, the minute bundles are collected into smaller or larger groups (the *trabeculæ*), and these are in turn associated into groups. In the skin and mucous and serous membranes, the trabeculæ of the connective-tissue bundles are separated, and, by crossing and recrossing one another, form a dense, fan-like structure. In other tissues, as the tendons and fascia, the bundles are arranged in parallel layers. In the submucous tissues the connective-tissue fibers are loosely woven, the fibers crossing and intermingling, with the intervening spaces unusually large, resulting in a loose, flabby tissue—*areolar tissue*. Three varieties of fibrous connective tissue are distinguished—namely, mucous connective tissue, fibrillar connective tissue, and reticular connective tissue. Mucous connective tissue consists of an abundance of undifferentiated intercellular substance in which are a few bundles of fine fibrils and a number of round or oval cells. Fibrillar connective tissue, or areolar tissue, consists of an abundance of intercellular substance differentiated into connective-tissue fibers and cells. Reticular connective tissue, as its name implies, is a network of slender bundles of connective tissue associated with flattened, nucleated cells.

The fibrous connective-tissue cells are few in number, of

several varieties, and variously shaped, being flattened, stellate, or apparently distorted by pressure from surrounding cells or fibrous bundles. In the mucous membrane the cells are oblong and somewhat flattened, having many branches which reach out and, uniting with like processes from neighboring cells, form a network. Other connective-tissue cells are comparatively larger, oval or rounded in form, granular in appearance, rich in protoplasm, and are known as *plasma-cells*. The body of connective-tissue cells, besides containing a nucleus, frequently contains pigment-granules; these are known as *pigment-cells*. These are seldom found in mucous or serous membranes, being principally confined to the integument. Fat-globules may also be found in fibrous connective tissue, and when of considerable size unite and form a rounded cell, called a *fat-cell*. Numerous fat-cells uniting, and well supplied with blood-vessels and nerves, form *adipose* tissue, or fat. Fat-cells are frequently found in areolar tissue as well. When fibrous connective tissue is immediately contiguous to epithelium, it becomes somewhat modified and a new membrane is formed, called the *basement membrane*, or *membrana propria*. This membrane is a thin, transparent, structureless layer, and, when in connection with those mucous membranes provided with a layer of vascular fibrocellular tissue, may appear as the formative substance out of which successive layers of epithelial cells are generated. In the ducts and glands—for example, the salivary glands—the basement membrane forms the proper walls of the tubes, and the cells here generated, and corresponding to the epithelial cells of the coarser mucous membranes, are known as *gland-cells*, rather than epithelial cells. This, however, is a distinction without a perceptible difference, the location and function as secreting cells being alike in each.

**Cartilage.**—Cartilage is a semi-opaque, non-vascular tissue, white in color, and composed of a matrix containing nucleated cells. The matrix is somewhat elastic and rather dense. The cells are simple in form, being spheric or slightly inclined to angularity. The variation in the character of cartilage is due rather to the difference in the character of the matrix than to the cellular structure, the principal variation in the

cells being in their size. The cells lie in the spaces or lacunæ of the matrix, which they completely fill. Investing the free surface of most cartilaginous tissue (articular cartilage excepted) is a thin but tough and firm fibrous membrane—the *perichondrium*. This membrane is well supplied with blood-vessels and nerves, and is essential to the growth and maintenance of the cartilage. There are three varieties of cartilage—namely, hyaline cartilage, elastic cartilage, and fibrocartilage.

*Hyaline cartilage* is of a faint pearly-blue color, slightly transparent, and is found investing the articular ends of the bones—for example, the condyles of the mandible; also forming the costal and nasal cartilages, as well as those of the trachea, bronchi, and a part of the larynx. Hyaline cartilage is distinguished by a granular or homogeneous matrix. The cells, which contain a nucleus with nucleoli, are usually grouped together in patches, and are somewhat irregular in outline, appearing flattened near the free surface of the tissue in which they are placed, and inclined to be perpendicular to the surface in the more deeply-seated portions. The matrix is dimly granular in appearance, resembling ground glass, and receiving its name from this fact. That part of the cartilage close to the perichondrium is supplied with cells much smaller than those occupying the lacunæ in the substance of the mass, and the growth of the cartilage is most active in this part. Lining each lacuna is a delicate membrane (the capsule), which primarily is but partly filled out, but as the cell or cells increase in size, this membrane is carried to the walls of the lacuna. Articular hyaline cartilage is non-vascular, being nourished by the blood-vessels of the bone beneath.

*Elastic cartilage* is of a dull-yellow color, and is sometimes called yellow cartilage. It is not present in the mouth, but occurs in the external ear, in the epiglottis, and in part of the larynx. Its structural composition is quite similar to hyaline cartilage, but may be distinguished from it by a network of fine elastic fibers which penetrate the matrix. The cells are rounded or oval, containing nuclei and nucleoli.

*Fibrocartilage* is yellowish or milky white in color, and is much more widely distributed throughout the body than the

elastic variety. It is present in the temporomandibular articulation. Like those previously described, it is composed of cells and a matrix, the latter being made up of fibrous connective tissue arranged in bundles, and for this reason it is scarcely deserving the name of cartilage, only that in other portions continuous with it cartilage-cells may be found in abundance. Between the strata of the fibrous bundles are numerous nucleated cells, which are oval and more or less flattened, and each enveloped in a delicate capsule.

Cartilage is further classified into two divisions,—*temporary* and *permanent*,—the former term being applied to that kind of cartilage which in the fetus and in youth is destined to be converted into bone (for example, Meckel's cartilage); the latter class including all those cartilages which are generated as such, and continue to serve in that capacity. Temporary cartilage closely resembles the hyaline variety, being formed of a matrix in the lacunæ of which the cells are located. These cells, however, are not grouped together as in hyaline cartilage, but are more uniformly distributed throughout the matrix.

**Bone.**—Bone is mainly composed of tricalcium phosphate and cartilage. The matrix of osseous tissue has a distinguishing feature produced by the blending of organic and inorganic substances, resulting in hardness, solidity, and elasticity. The combination of organic and inorganic elements in bone is of such a nature that either part may be removed without destroying the other. The matrix is composed of the salts of lime, especially calcium phosphate, and of slender fibrils united by a cement-substance into bundles of various sizes. The cement-substance is chiefly composed of insoluble lime-salts, principally carbonates and phosphates. These two kinds of structure are found to be present in different parts of the same bone, forming a dense or compact, and a spongy or cancellated tissue. The former occur in the shaft of long bones and in the outer layer of flat or irregularly formed bones. Cancellated bone-substance occurs in the extremities of the long bones and in the interior of flat and irregular bones. The irregularly formed maxillary bones give place to both kinds of bony structure; the external layer of the superior maxillæ and

the body and rami of the inferior maxilla are composed of compact tissue, while the interior of these bones and the condyloid processes of the mandible are spongy or cancellated in their nature. When examined by the microscope the bony substance is found occupied by numerous little spindle-shaped spaces—*lacunæ*. Branching out from these in various directions are minute canals—*canaliculi*—which anastomose with similar canals from neighboring *lacunæ*. In the maxillary bones no other canals than these may be visible, but if a transverse

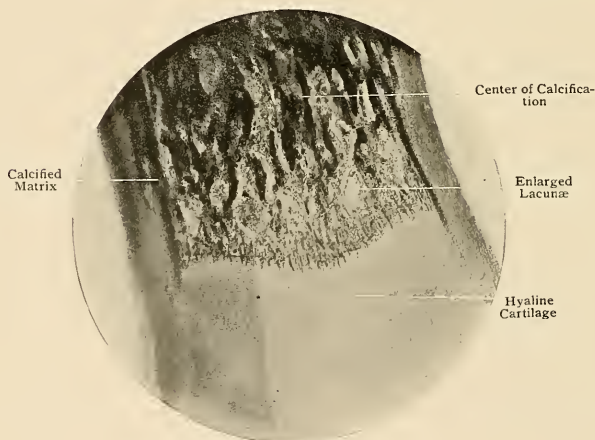


FIG. 237.—DEVELOPING BONE.  $\times 40$ .

section be cut through one of the long bones, an additional space makes its appearance (Fig. 238).

These spaces are known as the *Haversian* canals. They are circular in outline and appear as a center for a small, circular district mapped out by concentric layers, the *lacunæ* and *canaliculi* following the same concentric plan, and through each other communicating with the *Haversian* canals. The general direction of the *Haversian* canals is longitudinal with the long axis of the long bones, and in the flat or irregular-shaped bones they are somewhat irregular in formation and ramify in various directions. In the osseous matrix each *lacuna* contains a



bone-cell. These are nucleated, protoplasmic cells. In developing bone, these cells, which do not completely fill the lacunæ, are connected by numerous branches or processes passing through the canaliculi; in older bone very few processes are observed.

There are two processes by which bone may be prepared for histological examination, by one method which results in the destruction of the organic elements, or by another which removes the inorganic elements. In the former process the organic matter is removed by simply drying the structures, after

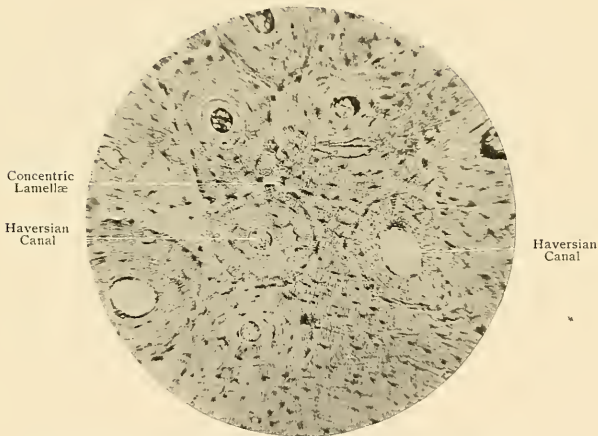


FIG. 238.—TRANSVERSE SECTION THROUGH SHAFT OF LONG BONE.  $\times 30$ .

which thin sections may be prepared and carefully examined under the microscope, when the Haversian canals, lacunæ, and canaliculi will be seen forming a complete concentric network. In the latter method the inorganic substance is removed by immersing a fresh bone in dilute picric acid,  $C_6H_2(NO_2)_3OH$ , which readily decalcifies it, and when properly prepared sections are placed under the microscope the organic contents of the lacunæ and canaliculi alone are visible.

The concentric laminæ of bone is riveted together by numer-

ous delicate rods or processes named *Sharpey's fibers*, these delicate fibers passing through the laminae to perform this office.

**Periosteum and Bone-marrow.**—The interstices of spongy bone are filled with a soft mass,—the bone-marrow,—and the external surface of the bone is covered by a fibrous membrane—the periosteum. This membrane is absent where bones are joined to each other by ligament or cartilage, and over articular surfaces. The periosteum is a compact connective-tissue membrane. It consists of two layers: an *outer*, fibrous layer rich in



FIG. 239.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF LONG BONE.  $\times 30$ .

blood-vessels, which forms the connection with adjacent structures; an *inner* or osteogenetic layer containing few blood-vessels, loose in texture, but rich in elastic fibers and spheric connective-tissue cells, with oval nuclei. These are the formative cells of bone and are called *osteoblasts*. These cells appear in the lower strata of the inner layer, or the layer in contact with the bone, and are especially numerous during the period of development. Through the blood-vessels of the bone the marrow, internally, is placed in communication with the periosteum externally; small branches given off from the numerous

arteries and veins of the periosteum enter the Haversian canals, upon which they pass to the canaliculi, thus communicating with the blood-vessels of the marrow. In like manner numerous nerves enter the substance of the bone, first passing into the Haversian canals, after which they become closely associated with the minute blood-vessels and are distributed to the periosteum and bone-marrow. The bone-marrow, besides filling the interstices of the spongy substance, is also found occupying the central cavity of long bones, and in the larger Haversian canals. The marrow is of two varieties, distinguished by its color, being either red or yellow. Red marrow is found in the flat bones (including the maxillæ), the vertebræ, and ribs, while yellow marrow occurs in the long bones of the extremities. Red marrow is composed of a delicate connective-tissue network supporting, besides the marrow-cells, a few fat-cells and giant-cells. In the long bones the yellow marrow is surrounded by a connective-tissue membrane lining the medullary canals. Marrow-cells and giant-cells are present in abundance. Marrow is very vascular and contains many osteoblasts.

**Dentin.**—This structure, as well as cementum, which in many particulars closely resembles bone, will be fully considered in connection with the histology of the tissues of the teeth.

**Muscular Tissues.**—The muscle-fibers, or the structural elements of the muscular tissues, are divided, according to the arrangement of their bundles, into two classes—non-striated and striated.

**Non-striated, Smooth, or Involuntary Muscular Tissue.**—This tissue consists of contractile fiber-cells, which are elongated, spindle-shaped, and cylindric, with exceedingly elongated extremities, which become shorter and thicker through contraction. They are quite variable in length ( $\frac{1}{10}$  to  $\frac{1}{450}$  of an inch), and are composed of a pale, homogeneous-looking protoplasm, each inclosing an elongated or rod-shaped nucleus, which is flattened if the cell is so formed. The muscular fibers are firmly bound together by a cement-substance, forming fasciculi, which in turn are collected into strata or membranes, which may be disposed parallel, or crossing and recrossing, forming an intricate network. The connective-tissue septa provide a

passageway for the larger blood-vessels, while the capillaries penetrate the fasciculi forming a complicated network with oblong meshes. Involuntary muscular tissue is not found in the mouth except in the ducts of the salivary glands.

**Striated or Voluntary Muscular Tissue.**—Striated muscular tissue is composed of long, cylindric fibers, which are regularly transversely striated. In most instances their extremities are attached to bones by means of tendons, as, for example, the cheek- and lip-muscles. The fibers are grouped together by fibrous connective tissue into various sized bundles, forming



FIG. 240.—TRANSVERSE SECTION OF STRIATED OR VOLUNTARY MUSCULAR TISSUE.  $\times 40$ .

*fasciculi*. There is much variation in the length of the fibers composing the fasciculi in different muscles. In most instances the fasciculi which serve to make up the bundles of a single muscle continue parallel with one another throughout their length. Surrounding the muscular fasciculi, and forming a covering or sheath for the individual bundles, is a layer of connective tissue called the *perimysium*, and passing from this into the substance of the bundle is a delicate connective tissue, the *endomysium*, which separates the individual fibers from one another. The

former structure carries the larger blood-vessels and nerve-fibers, while the latter supports the capillaries.

Each muscular bundle may again be divided into smaller bundles, which in turn are ensheathed in a similar manner and further divisible, so continuing until the primitive fasciculi, or so-called muscular fiber, is reached. Striped muscular fiber consists of a structureless, elastic sheath, the *sarcolemma*, which structure represents the cell-membrane, and closely invests a number of filaments or fibrillæ. Besides the fibrillæ, there is contained within this fine, structureless, transparent membrane the



FIG. 241.—STRIATED OR VOLUNTARY MUSCULAR TISSUE.  $\times 40$ .

*sarcoplasm*, a faintly granular substance resembling protoplasm, but not identical with it. This substance serves in the capacity of a matrix for the fibrillæ. The fibrillæ are arranged parallel to one another, being supported by the sarcoplasm. It will thus be seen that each fiber of a striated muscle comprises the sarcolemma, the muscle-nuclei, the fibrillæ, and, finally, the sarcoplasm, filling all the interstices, first between the fibrillæ of each muscle-column, between the columns of each group, and between the groups themselves. The disposition of the

sarcoplasm may be most favorably studied by a cross-section

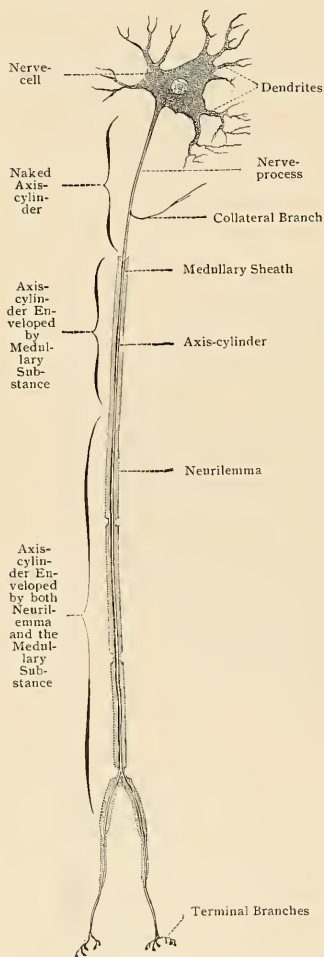


FIG. 242.—DIAGRAM OF A NEURON.—  
(From Stöhr's "Histology.")

through the fibers, appearing as a delicate but clear network, within the meshes of which are the muscle-columns. Striated muscular fibers are usually spindle-shaped, tapering off and becoming thinner toward their extremities. In rare instances they are branched at their ends. This condition is present in the tongue, the extremities of the fibers passing transversely into the oral mucous membrane, where they become further subdivided. The striated or voluntary muscles make up the muscular tissues of the lips, cheeks, tongue, and soft palate.

**Nervous Tissues.**—Until within recent times it has been stated that the nervous tissue consists of two histologic elements known as nerve-cell and nerve-fiber; that these two elements differed not only in their mode of origin, but in their structure and physiologic endowments. At the present time it is believed that the entire nervous system consists of an infinite number of definite independent morphologic units, which, though having a common origin and a similarity of structure, have, nevertheless, different functions in different parts of the body. This neurologic



unit has been termed the *neuron*, and, as represented schematically in figure 242, may be said to consist of: First, the nerve-cell, or neurocyte; second, nerve-process, or axon; third, the end-tufts, or terminal branches. Each of these three main portions of the neuron presents a variety of secondary features which are related to their functional activities.

*The Nerve-cell, or Neurocyte.*—The nerve-cells are found in the cortex of the brain, in the interior of the spinal cord, in the various ganglia of the cerebrospinal and sympathetic nervous systems, and in the organs of special sense. All neurocytes are the modified descendants of independent oval or pear-shaped



FIG. 243.—TRANSVERSE SECTION, BUNDLES OF NERVE-FIBERS, HUMAN MEDIAN NERVE.  
 $\times 30$ .

cells (the *neuroblasts*), originating from the epithelial cells which form the medullary tube. The neurocyte is at first smooth, devoid of processes, and endowed with ameboid movement. In the course of development the cells project a greater or less number of processes and assume a variety of shapes and sizes, in accordance with variations in functions; thus, the cells may be spheroid, pyramidal, spindle-shaped, stellate, etc. The body of the cell consists of a protoplasmic basis, more or less granular, containing a well-defined nucleus and nucleolus. A centrosoma has also been found in the nerve-cell in many

situations. There is no evidence, however, of the existence of a cell-membrane. From the body of the neurocyte there arises one or more protoplasmic processes, which, passing outward in various directions, divide and subdivide into a greater or less number of branches, which are collectively known as *dendrites* or *dendrons*. The ultimate subdivisions and terminations of a dendrite, though forming an intricate feltwork, always end free, never anastomosing with one another. Arising from the cell-body, the dendrites resemble in appearance and structure the cell-protoplasm, or cytoplasm. In the cortex of the cerebrum

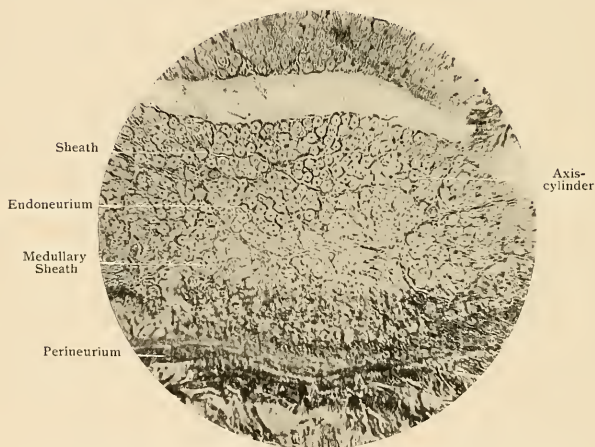


FIG. 244.—PORTION OF TRANSVERSE SECTION OF HUMAN MEDIAN NERVE.  $\times 200$ .

and in the cortex of the cerebellum the dendrites are characterized by short, lateral projections known as lateral buds or gemmules, which impart to the dendrite a feathery appearance.

*The Axon, or Nerve-process.*—The axon is the first outgrowth of the protoplasm of the neuroblast, but with the development of the neurocyte it becomes so differentiated from the dendrites that it can be readily distinguished from them. It usually arises from a cone-shaped projection of the cell-body, though occasionally it arises from a dendrite itself. It is characterized by a short, regular outline and a hyaline appearance. The majority

of the cells, especially in the mammalia, possess but one axon, though in the developing ganglion-cells of the spinal nerves two distinct axons are present. In their subsequent development the two axons appear to blend together to form but a single axon, which, at a short distance from the cell, again divides into two branches, which pursue opposite directions, one passing directly into the spinal cord, the other toward the periphery. The axon may continue as an individual structure for an indefinite distance, varying from a few millimeters to 100 cm. In the former instance the axon, at a distance of a few millimeters from the cell, breaks up into a number of branches, which form an intricate feltwork in the neighborhood of the cell. This type of cell is not widely distributed, being confined largely to the cerebellum. In its course the axon, more especially in the central nervous system, gives off a number of side-branches or collaterals, which do not differ from the axon itself, either in structure or appearance. The axon of the peripheral nerves, especially the spinal nerves, are devoid of collaterals throughout their extent, except, perhaps, in the immediate neighborhood of the cell. The more or less elongated axon becomes inclosed at a short distance from the cell with a thick layer of fatty material, forming a medulla or myelin, inclosed by a delicate cellular sheath (the neurilemma), and thus constitutes what is commonly known as a medullated nerve-fiber. In the central nervous system the neurilemma is frequently wanting. In the sympathetic system the myelin is wanting, though the axon is inclosed by a delicate sheath resembling the neurilemma, thus constituting a non-medullated nerve-fiber. The collateral branches are provided with similar investments.

**The End Tufts, or Arborizations.**—Each axon, as it approaches its final termination, breaks up into a number of branches, which vary in complexity and appearance in different regions. They are always free from any medullary investment, and appear to be formed by the splitting of the axon into a number of fine filaments, which remain independent of one another. In peripheral organs, as muscles, glands, and blood-vessels, the tufts are in direct organic connection. In the central nervous system the end-tufts are in more or less intimate relation with the dendrites of other neurons.

**Nerves.**—Nerves are to be regarded, therefore, as groups of axons, with their medullary investments connecting the peripheral organ with the central nervous system.

The nerves are arranged in two great systems—the cerebrospinal and the sympathetic. In the cerebrospinal nerves the conducting media—the nerve-fibers—are arranged in parallel or interlacing bundles, and these are further grouped into nerve-branches or nerve-trunks. The bundles are connected by intervening fibrous connective tissue (the *epineurium*), and through this tissue the principal blood-vessels ramify to supply the nerve-trunks, together with a plexus of lymphatics and numerous fat-cells and plasma-cells.

The size of the nerve-bundles, or *funiculi*, is regulated according to the size and number of nerve-fibers which they contain. Investing each funiculus, or primary bundle of nerve-fibers, is a connective-tissue sheath—the *perineurium*. The fibers composing this sheath are arranged in lamellæ, being separated from one another by lymph-spaces variable in size, through which communication is afforded the lymphatics of the epineurium. Within the bundles the nerve-fibers are held together by fibrous connective-tissue—the *endoneurium*. The epineurium holds together and envelops the several funiculi of the nerve-trunk, the perineurium investing each funiculus, or primary bundle of nerve-fibers, and the endoneurium extending among and around the individual fibers. Nerve-fibers are divided into two classes,—which classification is dependent upon the presence or absence of a medullary sheath or covering,—into the *medullated* or *white*, and the *non-medullated* or *gray*. The *medullary sheath*, or white substance of Schwann, is a bright, fatty substance (the myelin) surrounding the axon, or *axis-cylinder*, the conducting or central part of a nerve-fiber. Between the medullary sheath and the axis-cylinder there is present a small amount of albuminous fluid. Closely surrounding the medullary sheath, and forming the outer boundary of the nerve-fiber, is the *neurilemma*, or *sheath of Schwann*. Between this delicate, structureless membrane and the medulla there are placed at intervals oblong nuclei, surrounded by protoplasm; these are the *nerve-corpuscles*. Besides the division of nerve-fiber into medullated and non-

medullated, each division is susceptible of further subdivision, dependent upon the presence or absence of the neurilemma. Non-medullated nerve-fibers without a neurilemma are composed of an axis-cylinder only; they are cylindric or band-like in form, transparent, and show faint, longitudinal striations. Non-medullated nerve-fibers with a neurilemma are composed of an axis-cylinder surrounded by a neurilemma, and are homogeneous throughout their extent.

Medullated nerve-fibers are those which are partly, but never entirely, invested by a medullary sheath. They may or may not possess a neurilemma; in the former instance they consist of an axis-cylinder and a medullary sheath only. The axis-cylinder, or essential part of the nerve-fiber, is cylindric or band-like, occasionally exhibiting a delicate, longitudinal striation, which appearance is due to its being composed of a primitive fibrillæ.

The nerve-cells or ganglia-cells are found in the ganglia as well as along the course of the nerves. They are composed of granular or faintly striated protoplasm, inclosing a characteristic nucleus within which is a nucleolus. They differ greatly in form as well as in size, the spheric, spindle-shaped, and irregularly stellate forms being the most common. In the latter numerous processes are given off, forming the stellate outlines. The cells are variously named, according to the number of processes. If one process is present, the cell is termed a unipolar cell; if two, a bipolar; and if a number of processes exist, they are named multipolar. The processes are of two varieties—the axis-cylinder process and the branched protoplasmic process. The various forms are most readily distinguished in the multipolar cells. The axis-cylinder process is readily characterized by its hyaline appearance and unbroken outline. The protoplasmic processes are thicker, granular, and striated.

#### LITERATURE.

- Stöhr, "Text-book of Histology," 1896.  
 Sudduth, "American System of Dentistry," vol. 1, 1886.  
 Klein, "Elements of Histology," 1889.  
 Holden, "Human Osteology."  
 Stricker, "Human and Comparative Histology," vol. 1, 1870.  
 Morris, "Human Anatomy," 1896.  
 Lee, "The Microtometist's Vade Mecum," 1896.

## CHAPTER II.

THE MUCOUS MEMBRANE OF THE MOUTH; OF THE LIPS; OF THE CHEEKS; OF THE GUMS; OF THE ROOF OF THE MOUTH, HARD AND SOFT PALATE; OF THE FLOOR OF THE MOUTH; THE TONGUE.

### HISTOLOGY OF THE TISSUES OF THE MOUTH.

**Mucous Membrane of the Mouth.**—The mucous membrane lining the cavity of the mouth consists of two parts—the epithelium and the tunica propria; beneath the latter, and forming the deeper part of the mucous membrane, is the submucosa.

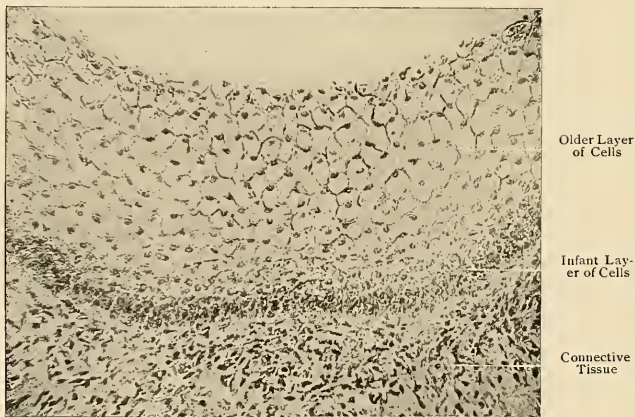


FIG. 245.—VERTICAL SECTION, MUCOUS MEMBRANE OF THE MOUTH, HUMAN EMBRYO.  
× 150.

*The epithelium* of the mouth is a thick, stratified, squamous epithelium, the most superficial cells being scale-like or horn-like. The cells are arranged similar to those in the epiderm, are columnar in form, and contain very little pigment.



*The tunica propria* is a somewhat dense feltwork of interlacing connective-tissue bundles, interspersed with elastic fibers. The tunica propria penetrates the epithelium in the form of cylindric or conic papillæ, which differ in length with the variation in the thickness of the epithelium. As the mucosa is usually thickest in the lips, gums, soft palate, and uvula, accordingly the papillæ are of the greatest length in these parts. The tunica propria passes into the submucosa so gradually that a positive line of demarcation can not be established.

*The submucosa* consists of a bundle of fibrous connective tissue with but few elastic fibers. This structure is somewhat loose in texture and is loosely attached to the underlying periosteum. Over the major portion of the gums and the entire hard palate the submucosa is attached to the bones of the mouth through the medium of their periosteal covering. It is in this loosely constructed tissue that the glands of the mucous membrane are situated. These are for the most part branched, tubular, mucous glands. Besides adipose tissue in the form of groups of fat-cells, striped muscular tissue is present in the submucosa. In some parts of the mouth this tissue forms a conspicuous portion—namely, in the sphincter muscle of the lips (*orbicularis oris*); also in the soft palate, uvula, and pillars of the fauces.

*The blood-supply to the mucous membrane of the mouth* is principally distributed in two systems, the larger vessels to the submucosa and the capillaries to the tunica propria. The larger vessels break up and send a dense network of capillaries through its substance and to the numerous papillæ which extend into the epithelium. Numerous veins ramify through the superficial part of the tunica propria. The lymphatics form two networks, the submucosa giving place to the coarser vessels, while the fine parts are distributed to the tunica propria.

*Nerve-supply to the Mucous Membrane of the Mouth.*—In the submucosa the medullated nerve-fibers form a wide-meshed reticulum, from which numerous primitive fibrillæ pass to the tunica propria, where they terminate or continue as non-medullated nerve-fibers, and penetrate the papillæ of the epithelium, forming networks.

**Mucous Membrane of the Lips.**—Beginning as a direct continuation of the integument or external covering of the lips, the labial covering, including the integument, may be divided into three parts—namely, a cutaneous portion (best described in this connection), a transitory portion, and a mucomembranous portion.

The *cutaneous* portion, covered by a thin epidermis, consists of a double layer of somewhat flattened epithelium. Immediately beneath this is a thin, cellular, mucous layer, the cells composing it being spheroid in form, and containing nuclei which are proportionately large. Subjacent to this is the cutis, composed of fasciculi of fibers intersecting and closely woven together, the principal fibers passing toward the free border of the mucous membrane covering the contiguous surface of the lip. These fibers are for the most part connective-tissue fibers, intermingled with elastic-tissue fibers. Numerous small, vascular papillæ are found upon the surface of the cutis; these are cylindric or conic in form, and project for some distance into the rete mucosa—the lower layers of living cells of the epidermis. Equally distributed at various depths in this tissue are numerous hair- and sebaceous follicles. The general direction of the hair-follicles in the upper lip is downward, while those occupying the lower lip are turned upward. Other than the distinction noted by the difference in color of the parts, the cutaneous portion may be distinguished from the transitional mucous membrane by the absence of hair-follicles and sebaceous glands in the latter.

The *transitional* portion of the mucous membrane of the lips is outlined externally by the outer border of the red portion of the lips, and internally by that prominent part of the labial convexity which comes in contact with the opposing labial fold, leaving the transitional portion exposed to view when the lips are in occlusion. The epithelial layer of this surface does not begin where the hair-follicles cease to exist, a slight interspace appearing upon the cutaneous portion which is devoid of these follicles. At its line of beginning the transitional portion of the labial mucous membrane is quite thin, but rapidly increases in thickness in passing toward the mucomembranous portion. Superficially the cells are much flattened, closely associated with

one another, and devoid of nuclei. The cells of the middle and deeper layers are oblong or spheric, and provided with irregularly shaped nuclei. The chief fibrous tissues of the transitional portion, which are thinnest at the point where the hair-follicles cease to exist, are united into flexiform fasciculi, which are separated at various points to give passage to numerous minute blood-vessels. The fibrous tissues increase in thickness as the mucomembranous portion is approached. Numerous thin and somewhat elongated papillæ are distributed over the surface of the transitional portion.

The *mucomembranous* portion of the mucous membrane of the lips includes all that portion covering the labial folds within the mouth, beginning at the line of occlusion on the contiguous surface and extending to the gums. The epithelium is much thicker than that previously described, and presents the characteristic layers common to stratified, squamous epithelium. Superficially the cells are flattened and tubular, provided with nuclei of similar form. In the middle layer the cells are flattened and oblong, followed in the deeper layer by irregularly formed nucleated cells. A variety of fibers make up the structure—one class fine in texture and united into fasciculi, intermingled with elastic fibers, together with another set of coarse, strongly looped fibers. Whenever the fibers of the tunica propria assume a definite general direction, they are horizontal, passing from right to left and encircling the oral aperture. The tunica propria is beset with numerous conic papillæ which project into the epithelium; these are longest where the epithelium is thickest. The mucous membrane forming the labial frena is covered by an epithelial layer which is much thinner than that distributed to other parts of the lips. The fibers in these are irregularly distributed, and the papillæ are small and not so numerous. The coronary arteries and their accompanying veins course through the lips near the junction of the transitional with the mucomembranous portion of the mucous membrane.

**Mucous Membrane of the Cheeks.**—The mucous membrane of the cheeks presents but little variation in its structure from that of the mucomembranous portion of the labial

mucous membrane. The buccal epithelium is the same in structure and thickness as that of the lips, excepting the disposition of cells in the middle layer, where they are greater in number and more closely associated, being somewhat distorted by contact. The papillæ, which project from the mucosa into the epithelium, are somewhat broad at their base, with elongated extremities, the height of which is quite variable, in some instances

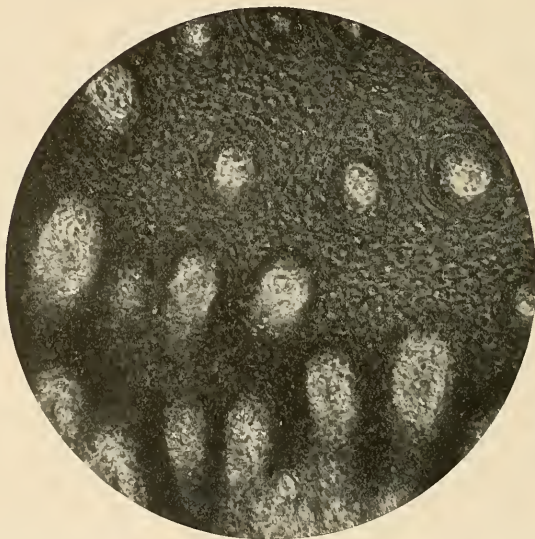


FIG. 246.—SECTION THROUGH THE MUCOUS MEMBRANE OF THE CHEEK, SHOWING THE PAPILLÆ OF THE MUCOSA IN TRANSVERSE SECTION.

penetrating well into the epithelium, at others merely entering its deeper layer. At the anterior portion of the cheek, or that in the region of the angle of the mouth, the mucous membrane, by its submucous portion, is in immediate contact with the fibers of the buccinator muscle, and throughout the entire surface of the cheek it is closely associated with this muscle. The membrana propria is dense immediately beneath the epithelium, but as the buccinator is approached it becomes much less so.

**Mucous Membrane of the Gums.**—The mucous membrane covering these parts is, on account of the numerous tendinous fasciculi which enter into its construction, extremely dense and tough, these characteristics being more strongly manifest here than in any other portion of the oral mucous membrane. These qualities are especially pronounced about the gingival margins and over the major portion of the alveolar walls, being

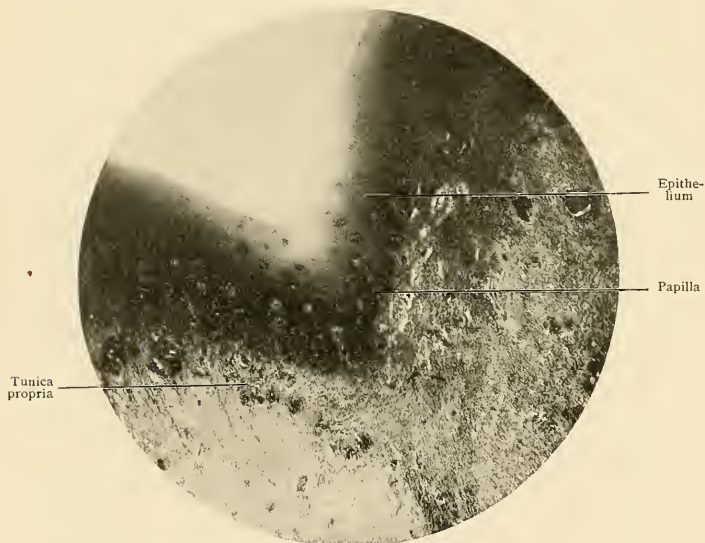


FIG. 247.—SECTION THROUGH THE GUMS, SHOWING EPITHELIUM AND BASEMENT MEMBRANE.

closely bound down to the bone by direct prolongations of the tendinous fasciculi of the periosteum which penetrate the membrane. As the gingival mucous membrane passes into that of the lips and cheeks it gradually becomes less dense. The epithelium of the mucous membrane of the gums is composed of lamina of tessellated and ribbed cells. The superficial cells are the flattened cells of pavement epithelium; subjacent to this they become thicker and deeply ribbed, while the deepest cells



are conic or cylindric with conic extremities. The tissue composing the tunica propria is made up of flattened fasciculi of connective tissue, the fibers of which run parallel with one another. Numerous elastic fibers are also present. Three sets of fibers are to be distinguished in the mucous membrane of the gums—those which run vertically, those which pass in a horizontal direction, and those which radiate or are distributed fan-like. Of the first named, the fibers extend from above downward; in the second class they pass from right to left parallel with the surface; the third class, including those fibers which are reflected from the alveolodental membrane, are distributed in fasciculi about the margins of the alveoli.

**Mucous Membrane of the Roof of the Mouth.**—*Hard Palate.*—The mucous membrane covering the hard palate is, in very many respects, dissimilar to that surrounding the necks of the teeth and forming the palatogingival margins. Like the mucous membrane of the gums, that overlying the hard palate is dense and tough. The papillæ of the tunica propria, which penetrate the epithelium, are not so numerous as those upon the gums. In the posterior third of the hard palate they are somewhat more numerous and generally a little more prominent than those in the anterior portion. In the median raphe and over the rugæ, the papillæ are especially sparingly distributed. The epithelium is of the pavement variety, somewhat thinner in front than behind, the cells being more freely distributed at some points than at others. The mucous membrane of the hard palate is less in thickness anteriorly than posteriorly. The distribution of the fibers is such that they radiate from the alveolar borders toward the center of the palate, the anterior fibers passing obliquely backward, while those from the lateral walls pass parallel with one another to the median line. For the most part the fibers are broad and form a plexus between the epithelium and the submucous tissue. The submucous tissue is sparingly distributed over the central portion of the hard palate, but laterally is somewhat more abundant, containing a few fat-cells.

*Soft Palate, Uvula, and Fauces.*—Passing backward from the posterior margin of the hard palate, the mucous membrane



overlies the fibrous aponeurosis of the soft palate and its median and lateral prolongations—the uvula and pillars of the fauces. The epithelium is of the laminated pavement variety, with the deeper cells larger than those placed superficially. The substance of the mucous membrane is composed of fasciculi of connective tissue, intermingled with a plexus of elastic fibers. The fibers are distributed in three principal directions—from side to side, or horizontally, longitudinally, and obliquely. The oblique fibers are instrumental in forming the submucous tissue of both the soft palate and uvula. Numerous conic papillæ project from the tunica propria into the epithelium; these are larger and more numerous on the uvula than on the soft palate. The tunica propria is somewhat variable in thickness to accommodate the glands, which are more or less numerous, and present in greater numbers in one instance than in another. In general the membrane as a whole is thinnest along the margin of the hard palate, gradually increasing in thickness as the free border is approached. The folds of mucous membrane forming the pillars of the fauces present no peculiarity differing from that of the soft palate, save a more generous supply of elastic fibers.

### **Mucous Membrane of the Floor of the Mouth.**

*The Tongue.*—The entire unattached surface of the tongue is covered by a reflection of the mucous membrane of the floor of the mouth. In this organ the general structure of the mucous membrane does not vary from that of other oral mucous membrane, being composed of an epithelium, a tunica propria, and a submucosa. The mucous membrane covering the dorsum of the tongue presents special characteristics, which differ from that of the under surface and the floor of the mouth in general. In the former location the papillary elevations of the tunica propria are conspicuously developed, and with their covering of stratified, scaly epithelium cause the peculiar furred appearance. Three classes of papillæ are distinguished, named, in accordance with their form, filiform papillæ, fungiform papillæ, and circumvallate papillæ.

*The filiform papillæ*, which are very numerous over the entire

dorsum and sides of the tongue, are conic and frequently prolonged into numerous horn-like processes, known as secondary

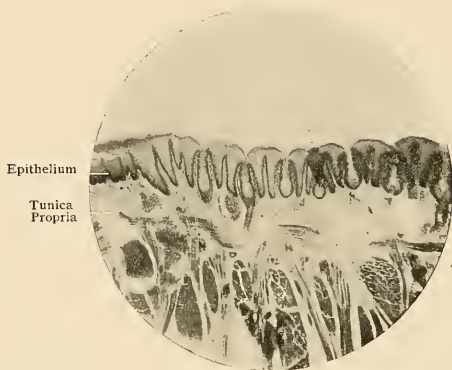


FIG. 248.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION THROUGH MUCOUS MEMBRANE OF THE HUMAN TONGUE.  $\times 20$ .

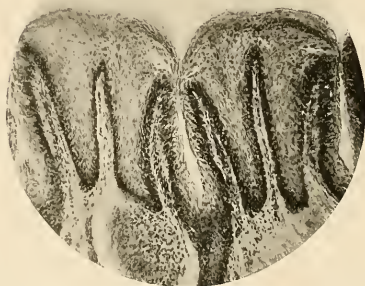


FIG. 249.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION OF THE MUCOUS MEMBRANE OF THE HUMAN TONGUE, SHOWING THE FUNGIFORM AND SECONDARY PAPILLÆ.  $\times 80$ .

papillæ. As elevations from the tunica propria they are composed of well-defined fibrillated tissue, intermingled with numerous elastic fibers. The pavement epithelial cells are found

overlapping one another, and provided with processes which project beyond the papillæ.

The *fungiform papillæ* are also distributed over the entire dorsum and sides of the tongue, but are somewhat less numerous than the filiform variety. They appear as well-defined elevations, and are connected with the tunica propria by a constricted portion or neck. The entire free or rounded surface of these papillæ is beset with secondary papillæ. The epithelium is slightly thinner than that over the filiform papillæ, this being the principal distinguishing feature. The numerous capillaries produce a rich red color, plainly observable through the transparent



FIG. 250.—SECTION THROUGH EPITHELIUM, NEAR THE TIP OF THE TONGUE.  $\times 40$ .

epithelium. Connective-tissue bundles make up the bulk of these papillæ, few elastic fibers being present.

The *circumvallate papillæ* are placed on the posterior portion of the dorsum of the tongue, and are few in number (eight to sixteen). They are much larger than those already described, and in general resemble modified fungiform papillæ. They are flattened and broad, and differ from the fungiform by having a circular furrow or wall surrounding them. Secondary papillæ are present on the free surface only, the sides, and in some instances the walls surrounding them, being occupied by the end organs of the special sense of taste—the taste-buds. Other

taste-buds are found upon the lateral margins of the tongue posteriorly, nestled in a group of parallel folds of mucous membrane—the papillæ foliata. The connective tissue within these papillæ is similar to that in the fungiform papillæ. On other parts of the tongue, or those portions not occupied by these specially constructed papillæ, the epithelium is similar to that in other parts of the mouth. The tunica propria is less in thickness in and about the tip of the tongue, and is intimately connected with the subjacent muscular structure. As the root of the organ is approached, the tunica propria becomes thicker and more dense. The submucosa is especially intimately connected with the underlying parts at the margins and tip of the tongue. The extreme portion of the root of the tongue has its mucous membrane particularly modified by a special aggregation of adenoid tissue—developed lymph-nodules. These are large and readily perceptible to the naked eye. They are provided with a central opening, which dips down into a well-defined vault or crypt, which is lined by a reflection of the stratified oral epithelium.

#### **Blood-supply to the Mucous Membrane of the Mouth.**

—The oral mucous membrane derives its supply of blood from numerous branches of the external carotid artery—namely, the superior and inferior coronary, buccal, lingual, transverse facial, pterygopalatine, and the alveolar. Entering the submucosa, the minute terminal branches of these arteries are distributed parallel to the surface, and by anastomosis form plexuses from which other minute branches are given off to supply the papillæ of the tunica propria. After coursing through the papillæ the blood is discharged into a similar venous plexus, and thus conveyed from the parts. In a like manner the mucous membrane and papillæ of the tongue are supplied, branches of the lingual artery conveying the blood to the parts. The dorsalis linguae supplies the mucous membrane of the dorsum of the tongue and pillars of the fauces, while the ranine artery by its minute branches supplies the remaining mucous membrane. Each papilla is entered by two or more arterial terminals, which divide, anastomose, and finally send off capillary branches to the secondary papillæ.

**Nerve-supply to the Mucous Membrane of the Mouth.**

—The distribution of the nerve-fibers to the oral mucous membrane is approximately similar in all parts. The fibers, which are of the medullated variety, are first distributed to the sub-mucosa, forming a wide-meshed reticulum. From this fibers are given off to the tunica propria, terminating in end-bulbs, or, after losing their medullary sheath, are distributed to the epithelium, where their free extremities lie between the epithelial cells. The nerves of the mucous membrane of the tongue (the glossopharyngeal and lingual branch of the fifth) may have their endings similar to those in other parts of the mouth, or they may be intimately associated with the taste-buds.

## LITERATURE.

Legros and Magitot, 1880.

Klein, "Structure of the Oral Lips," 1868.

Sebastian, "Anatomy and Physiology of the Labial Glands," 1842.

Kolliker, "Mikroskopische Anatomie."

Kirke, "Physiology."

Stricker, "Human and Comparative Histology."

Stöhr, "Text-book of Histology," 1896.

### CHAPTER III.

GLANDS AND DUCTS OF THE MOUTH; OF THE LIPS; OF THE CHEEKS  
OF THE HARD AND SOFT PALATES; OF THE TONGUE.—THE SALIVARY GLANDS.

#### GLANDS AND DUCTS.

**Glands of the Mouth.**—The glands of the mouth, like the glands of other parts of the body, are composed almost entirely of epithelium, and may, therefore, be classed with the epithelial tissues. Glands exist in two principal forms—tubular and saccular (alveolar). The former occur either singly or in groups, and are further subdivided into simple tubular and compound tubular glands. A like condition is present in the saccular glands and similar terms are employed to qualify them—simple saccular glands and compound saccular glands.

A *simple tubular gland* is one composed mainly of a simple tube-like structure; a *compound tubular gland* is one composed of a number of smaller tubes emptying into a single duct.

A *simple saccular gland* is one formed by a sacculation of serous or mucous membrane into a single, simple sac, or by branched saccules having an excretory duct (alveolar system); a *compound saccular gland* is composed of a combination of branched saccules.

In the larger glands a sheath is formed by the surrounding connective tissue, from which numerous septa are given off to the interior of the gland, dividing it into compartments varying in size. These are known as *gland-lobules*. The connective-tissue walls of the gland-lobules carry the larger blood-vessels and nerves. Most glands are divided into two essential parts,—the gland-follicle and the excretory duct,—the former being specialized for the secretory function, while the latter, by communicating with the surface, conveys the secreted substance to that point.

The *gland-follicles* are composed of a layer of gland-cells,



usually simple in character, surrounding the follicular walls. External to these is a specially modified connective tissue, forming the basement membrane, or *membrana propria*. The appearance of the gland-cells and their nuclei is continually changing, being thus influenced by their functional activity.

**The excretory ducts** consist of a wall of connective tissue and elastic fibers, lined by a columnar epithelium, either simple or stratified. In some instances the arrangement of the excretory



FIG. 251.—SECTION THROUGH THE GLANDULAR TISSUE OF THE TONGUE.  $\times 40$ .

ducts is much complicated, being divided into secretory tubes, which in turn are subdivided into smaller tubules—intercalated tubes.

**The Glands of the Lips (*Labial Glands*).**—The glands of the lips are situated in the submucosa, and are first observed immediately within the line of labial occlusion, at which point the thickness of the epithelium becomes somewhat definite and general. These glands are variable in size, but all are sufficiently large to be observed without the aid of the micro-

scope. They are of the compound tubular variety, and communicate with the surface through an excretory duct, which throughout the greater part of its extent is lined with stratified, scaly epithelium. In passing from the surface toward the gland-follicle, the main duct takes a spiral course obliquely through the tunica propria, and upon reaching the submucosa gives off numerous branches and twigs which terminate in the individual acini. The larger branches from the main duct are lined with stratified squamous epithelium, while the smaller twigs are provided with columnar epithelium. In many instances the main excretory duct, in its passage through the tunica propria, receives the principal duct from small accessory ducts. The framework of the labial glands is formed by the flexiform tissue composed of fasciculi of the fine connective-tissue fibers belonging to the submucous layer, together with delicate, coiled elastic fibers. This framework gives support to a minute system of capillaries and small nerve-fibers supplying the acini. The acini are so arranged that those belonging to a large duct are united into a lobule by the submucous connective-tissue fasciculi, and these in turn are formed into lobes. By a continuation of the same fasciculi and fibers which limit a lobe, and in the meshes of which the acini are situated, a sheath to the excretory duct is formed. Besides the branched, tubular, mucous glands of the lips, there are occasionally found, at the edges of the lips, sebaceous glands.

**The Glands of the Cheeks** (*Buccal Glands, Molar Glands*).

—The glands of the cheek are also situated in the submucous layer of the mucous membrane. They, like the labial glands, are of the compound tubular variety, and when microscopically examined are found to be similar in structure. They are somewhat larger than the labial glands and proportionately less numerous. The chief duct from each of these glands usually opens with a narrow mouth on the surface of the oral mucous membrane, and in its passage through the tunica propria takes a vertical or oblique direction. In the submucosa the chief duct branches into two or more smaller ducts, taking up alveoli. As the buccal glands are somewhat larger than the glands of the lips, they are composed of a greater number of ducts and alveoli.

**The Glands of the Hard and Soft Palate** (*Palatal Glands*).

—The mucous glands of the hard palate are situated in the sub-mucosa and closely associated with the periosteum. They are compound tubular glands, and in all essential particulars are similar to the labial and buccal glands. They are quite numerous (200 to 300), isolated in the anterior portion, but are grouped into a single row or into two rows posteriorly. The glands are freely distributed in each lateral half, but are absent at the median line.

In the soft palate the glands are of the same character, somewhat variable in size, the largest being found in the uvula. The excretory ducts from these glands vary in diameter, in the nature of their fibrous structure, and in the direction taken in passing to the surface. Over the surface of the soft palate the mouth of these ducts are represented by minute orifices slightly smaller than the body of the duct, but in the uvula the opposite condition is present, the mouth of the duct being wider than the body. The course taken by the excretory duct is seldom a direct one, but after receiving all tributary branches passes obliquely through the tunica propria, and before entering the epithelium turns at an abrupt angle, and so continues until the surface is reached. The ducts are lined by a simple columnar epithelium, which in some instances is ciliated; the walls of the tubes consist of gland-cells and a structureless membrana propria. In some instances the surface epithelium may be reflected for a short distance and partly serve in the capacity of a lining to the tubular walls.

**The Glands of the Tongue** (*Lingual Glands*).—In this organ two varieties of glands are found, occurring both in the mucous membrane and in the superficial muscular strata, being principally distinguished by the nature of their secretions. The gland-cells of the one set are mucigenous, secreting mucin; these are the mucous glands. The other set is productive of a serous fluid, thin, watery, and containing albumin; these are the serous glands.

*The mucous glands of the tongue* are found along the lateral margins and over the root of the organ, being most numerous in the latter situation. They are of the compound tubular variety,

and in most particulars are identical with the mucous glands of other parts of the oral cavity. The ducts are lined with ciliated columnar epithelium, and the walls of the duct consist of a homogeneous membrana propria and gland-cells. The glands occupying the root of the tongue are frequently found with their excretory ducts opening into the follicular crypts. The tubules consist of a structureless membrana propria and numerous gland-cells, the latter varying in appearance according to their function or functional activity. The crypts of the follicles constitute reservoirs for the acinous glands, and these



FIG. 252.—SECTION THROUGH BASE OF TONGUE, SHOWING SEROUS GLANDS.

receptacles frequently extend for some distance beneath the surface, receiving at various points the main excretory ducts from the mucous glands. These saccular-like reservoirs are lined by a well-defined capsule surrounded by a fibrous sheath, internal to which is an epithelial covering, a prolongation of the common epithelium of the mouth. Between these two layers are a number of minute, closed lymph-follicles placed in a single layer. The mucous glands on the lateral walls of the tongue are, for the most part, situated near the middle or

posterior portion. The ducts from these glands usually open directly toward the cheek, but in rare instances they pass obliquely downward and open near the proper floor of the mouth. At the tip of the tongue, buried beneath the mucous membrane and some of the muscular fibers, may be found a pair of mucous glands (Nuhn's) which open by free orifices on the under surface. At the root of the tongue, flat, lenticated elevations of the mucous membrane are present, beneath which is imbedded conglobate, glandular substance. These show a central orifice leading to a small pit lined with tessellated epithelium.

*The serous glands of the tongue* are compound tubular glands, and are found in the region of the circumvallate papillæ, closely associated with the taste-buds. The excretory ducts, lined with a simple or stratified columnar epithelium, the latter sometimes ciliated, open near the base of the papilla, or between the papilla and its wall. The tubules are similar to those in the mucous glands, consisting of a delicate, structureless membrana propria and gland-cells. The gland-cells are composed of a frail, transparent protoplasm, containing rounded nuclei.

**The Salivary Glands.**—The parotid, submaxillary, and sublingual glands each consists of an excretory duct, branching frequently in a tree-like manner into smaller ducts, lined throughout with a layer of epithelial cells. From the smaller ducts terminal branches are given off, which in turn are lined with epithelium. The other portions of the glands are invested by columnar epithelium, and arranged like grapes about the main excretory duct, and consequently belong to the group of racemose glands. The terminal branches or alveoli attached to the smaller excretory ducts are so numerous that they become much compressed from pressure, and the grape-like appearance is more or less destroyed, and but little space is left for interstitial tissue. Each gland is inclosed in a fibrous connective-tissue capsule, and from this numerous septa of fibrous trabeculæ pass to the interior and divide the glandular substance, first into lobes, these being subdivided into lobules, the lobules by further subdivision forming the alveoli. The glandular connective tissue is loose in texture, containing many elastic



fibers and lymphoid cells. Fine bundles of fibrous tissue, together with branched connective-tissue corpuscles, constitute the connective-tissue matrix between the alveoli.

*The Ducts.*—Entering the interior of the gland, the chief duct divides into a number of large branches, one of which passes to each lobe, each of these giving off several branches which connect with the several lobules. Upon close examination the central tube of each lobule is observed to throw off several small tubes—the intralobular tubes. Following these are the intermediate tubules, which continue into the terminal compartments. The chief excretory duct consists of a double layer of cylindric epithelium and fibro-elastic cartilage. Close beneath the epithelium is a compact membrana propria. The intralobular tubes are each provided with a distinct lumen. The walls are composed of a membrana propria lined by a layer of columnar epithelium, the cells of which contain a central round nucleus.

**The Parotid Gland.**—The distinguishing histologic feature in this gland is found in its excretory duct (Stenson's duct), which is provided with a membrana propria, especially broad and compact, placed immediately beneath the epithelium. The duct is composed of a double layer of cylindric epithelium and fibrous tissue, intermingled with elastic fibers. The main duct divides and passes into the intralobular tubes, beyond which are the intermediate tubules. The intralobular tubes are lined by columnar cells, while the intermediate tubules are lined by elongated, spindle-shaped cells. The salivary cells lining the acini are different in character from those in the submaxillary and sublingual glands. The parotid gland is a true salivary gland, and the serous gland-cells composing its epithelial lining are disposed in a single layer. The cells are columnar or pyramidal in form and composed of a dense protoplasm, containing a spheric nucleus.

**The Submaxillary Gland.**—The excretory duct (Wharton's duct), like the main duct of the parotid gland, is composed of a double layer of columnar epithelium, external to which is a layer of cellular connective tissue, the whole being surrounded by a thin stratum of muscular fibers placed longitudinally. The



intralobular tubes are lined by a specialized, elongated, cylindric epithelium, which, in the intermediate tubules, becomes clothed with cubic cells. The acini are lined either with serous gland-cells similar to those lining the acini of the parotid gland or with mucous gland-cells, the former being most constant in their presence. The two kinds of acini are uninterruptedly connected. In most instances there are but a few mucous acini present within the lobule, but occasionally they are found in abundance. The submaxillary is a mixed or mucosalivary gland.

**The Sublingual Gland.**—The excretory duct (Rivini's duct) is similar in structure to the chief excretory duct of the submaxillary gland. The intralobular tubes are lined with columnar epithelium. The intermediate tubules are not positively known to exist, and it is quite probable that the intralobular tubes pass directly into the terminal compartments. The acini are composed of a *membrana propria* and gland-cells, both mucous and serous. The former are much more numerous than in the acini of the submaxillary. The *membrana propria* is composed of stellate connective-tissue cells. This gland is also a mixed or mucosalivary gland.

**Blood-vessels and Lymphatics in the Salivary Glands.**—The lobules of the salivary glands are richly supplied with blood-vessels. The many arterial branches break up into numerous capillaries, which, forming a dense network, surround the acini, being supported by the interalveolar connective tissue. The lymphatic vessels accompanying the intralobular tubes are in communication with numerous lymph-spaces which exist between the interalveolar connective tissue and the walls of the acini. The substance of the gland is further supplied with blood by numerous plexuses of lymphatics which are carried or supported by the interlobular connective tissue.

**Nerve-supply to the Salivary Glands.**—The nerve-fibers distributed to the salivary glands are both of the medullated and non-medullated variety, and other nerve-tissue in the form of ganglion-cells is present. The medullated nerve-fibers are abundantly numerous, and are distributed to all parts of the gland. In many respects the fibers are peculiarly constructed. They are extremely delicate, made so by the frail nature

of their medullary sheath; they divide and give off so many branches as to almost give them a feathery fineness. This peculiarity is especially noticeable toward their extremities, where the fibers lie between the alveoli and give off minute branches in all directions. The nerve-fibers are placed in close relation to the tubes and tubules, which they freely encircle; they perforate the membrana propria and break up into finer subdivisions, from which they are distributed to the exterior of the epithelial cells. In the alveoli two kinds of nerve terminations are found. The primitive fibers branch between the alveoli and are distributed to the membrana propria, upon entering which numerous branches are thrown off which pass to the epithelial cells beneath. The non-medullated fibers, which are much less numerous, are composed of an extremely delicate fasciculi of transparent fibers resembling axis-cylinders, and invested by a sheath of connective-tissue cells containing nuclei. The distribution of these fibers is similar to the medullated fibers, encircling the tubes and penetrating the membrana propria, being similarly distributed to the alveoli.

## LITERATURE.

Stöhr, "Text-book of Histology," 1896.

Stricker, "Human and Comparative Histology," vol. 1, 1870.

Klein, "Elements of Histology," 1889.

Sebastian, "Recherches anatomique, physiologiques, pathologiques, les Glans Labiales," 1842.

Ward, "On Salivary Glands," Tood's "Cyclopedia of Anatomy and Physiology."

Klein and Vernon, Stricker's "Human and Comparative Anatomy," vol. 1, chap. xvi.

Sudduth, "Embryology and Dental Histology," "American System of Dentistry," vol. 1, part III.

Brubaker, "Transactions Odontological Society of Pennsylvania," 1889-'95.

Todd and Bowman, "Physiological Anatomy," vol. 1.

Szontagh, "Essays on Minute Anatomy of Hard Palate in Man," 1866.

## CHAPTER IV.

### MUSCULAR TISSUES OF THE MOUTH; OF THE LIPS; OF THE CHEEKS; OF THE SOFT PALATE; OF THE TONGUE.

#### MUSCULAR TISSUES OF THE MOUTH.

**Muscular Tissues of the Lips.**—The minute bundles forming the fasciculi of the oral sphincter muscle—the orbicularis oris—are distributed between the submucosa of the mucomembranous portion and the subcutaneous tissue of the cutaneous portion of the lips. The muscular fibers radiate in three principal directions upon either side of the median line: from the angle of the mouth toward the median line, and from the fleshy slips of the maxilla and mandible—the muscoli incisivi. As the fibers from the angle of the mouth pass to the substance of the lip, they are arranged in a laminated manner. When the median line is reached, one set of fibers terminate somewhat abruptly in the subcutaneous tissue, another set is continued beyond the median line and attached to the cutis of the opposite side, while a third set, without crossing the median line, is attached to the incisive fossæ of the maxilla and mandible. The numerous muscular fibers of the internal labial or mucomembranous portion, and the external, facial, or cuticular portion, penetrate the parts and terminate in close proximity to the epithelium or to the base of the papillæ. Delicate, hair-like fibers which are continuous with the sarcolemma slightly penetrate the cutis and membrana propria. A few of the fibers, which may be classed with the terminals of the out-running muscles from the lips, are arranged in a number of fasciculi in the subcutaneous portion, pass through the fasciculi of the orbicularis oris, reach the submucous tissue, where they cross and recross one another, and finally pass into the membrana propria, where they end in fan-like terminals. The fasciculi of the orbicularis differ somewhat in the upper and lower lips; in the former the bundles are strongly developed

toward the angle of the mouth, while in the latter the median bundles are the strongest. The labial muscular tissues are of the transversely striated variety. The fibers are cylindric in form, having rounded or pointed extremities in the interior, and broad or flattened ends where they come in contact with the periosteum. When examined with a high power each fiber shows alternately broad and narrow striæ, the former being dim, while the latter is bright in appearance. With a stronger power both the broad and narrow striæ are seen to be transversely striated.

**Muscular Tissues of the Cheeks.**—The muscles entering into the construction of the lateral walls of the mouth have already been described in part I, page 24, giving the relations existing between the individual muscles, together with the general disposition of the various fasciculi. Histologically considered, these muscles partake of all the characteristics of striated or voluntary muscular tissue. In the body of the buccinator and masseter muscles the fibers are cylindric and have definitely pointed or rounded ends. Near their termini, particularly in the latter muscle, the inner extremities of the terminal fibers are pointed, while the outer ends, or those by which the attachment is formed, are broad and rather flat.

**Muscular Tissues of the Soft Palate.**—The disposition of the striated muscular tissue of the soft palate is extremely complicated. The *azygos uvulæ*, the only true longitudinal muscle in the soft palate, has its origin from aponeurosis of the soft palate and from the nasal spine of the palate-bone, the fibers passing backward upon either side of the median line. This is a double muscle, and near its point of origin the two portions are distinct and separated by a definite space, but upon reaching the base of the uvula they become closely associated. The fasciculi do not continue to the apex of the uvula, but immediately beyond the center of its length are thrown out fan-like toward the sides, terminating in a manner similar to the fibers of the lips. In passing from before backward a number of small fasciculi are given off, which reach out laterally and traverse the glandular lobes, completely surrounding them, after which they again return to the principal fibers at the

median line. The palatopharyngeus muscle is divisible into two parts, the upper extremities of which lie partly in front and partly behind the levator muscles. The greater number of the fibers of one set, situated in front of the levators, form a curved, flattened aponeurosis. The fibrous border of the hard palate serves as an attachment for the convex border of this portion, while the other border, which is concave, is directed toward the arch of the levators. The fibers of the palatopharyngeus, situated behind the levators, form a number of loose fasciculi interspersed by fat-cells. In passing toward the free border of the soft palate the fibers become much more delicate, and, separating, some course in front and others behind this muscle. In this location the fibers become closely associated with the glands, and either end here or are continued to the submucosa, or even to the membrana propria of the mucous membrane. The fibers of the palatopharyngeus unite with the fibers of the levators, and an arch-like fasciculus is formed by this union which, subdividing, passes in front of the azygos uvulæ to the opposite side. All of these fibers run outward and downward, and unite with the extremities of the other palatal muscles, the fibers of which are somewhat more regularly distributed. Like the muscles of the lips and cheeks, the several fasciculi of the palatal muscles form a delicate plexus, and a quantity of fatty tissue is found between the various fasciculi.

**Muscular Tissues of the Tongue.**—The tongue is divided into two equal lateral portions by a median septum—the septum linguæ. This central septum, composed of a vertical layer of compact, fibrous, connective tissue, extends the entire length and depth of the lingual median line. Beginning at the hyoid bone, it gradually increases in prominence until the middle of the organ is reached, beyond which point it becomes less pronounced and finally disappears near the tip. The bundles of the muscular tissues are arranged longitudinally, transversely, and vertically. The former lie immediately beneath the mucous membrane, including the superior lingualis above and the inferior lingualis below, together with the greater part of the styloglossus. The superior lingualis extends from the base to

the tip of the organ, and by short fasciculi its fibers are attached to the overlying tissues. The fibers of this muscle are placed between the hyo- and styloglossi muscles of the opposite side, both of which overlap the fibers of the lingualis near the base of the tongue. The inferior lingualis also gives off several small fasciculi and fibers to the mucous membrane beneath, and is composed of two bands which reach from the base to the apex, each being placed between the hyoglossus and geniohyoglossus muscles. The transverse fibers, which are placed between the superior and inferior lingualis muscles, originate from the septum linguæ, and form the bulk of the organ. From their point of origin these fibers course outward and upward to the sides of the tongue. Those fibers which are vertically disposed decussate with the transverse fibers, and pass from the dorsum toward the under surface of the tongue, the fibers curving gracefully with their concavity directed toward the under surface. In most instances the ascending vertical fibers, as well as the transverse fasciculi, pass between those longitudinally disposed and connect with the submucosa.



## CHAPTER V.

TISSUES OF THE TEETH—ENAMEL; DENTIN; CEMENTUM; THE TOOTH-PULP.—THE ALVEOLODENTAL MEMBRANE.

### TISSUES OF THE TEETH.

**Enamel.**—The enamel, which forms a cap-like covering of varying thickness over the entire crown of the tooth, is a

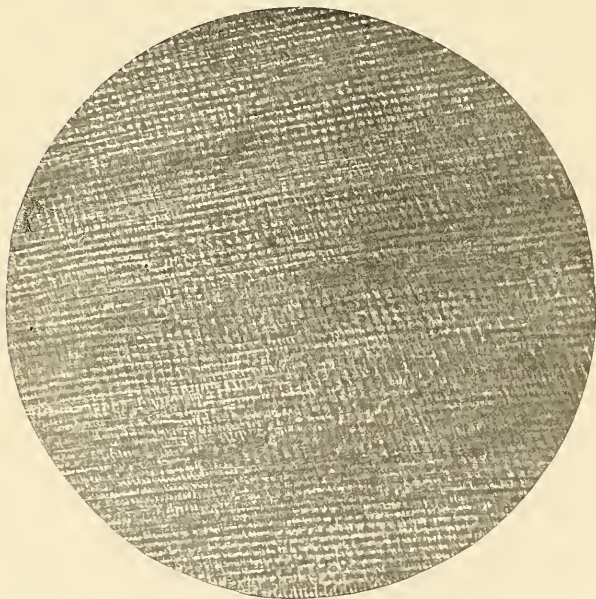


FIG. 253.—SECTION OF ENAMEL FROM HUMAN TOOTH (SPECIMEN BY J. HOWARD MUMMERY).  $\times 350$ .—(*After Williams.*)

vitreous, hyaline substance, containing but little, if any, organic matter. The thickness of the enamel cap appears to be strongly

influenced by the function of the different parts of the tooth-crown, being thickest over the cutting-edges of the anterior teeth, while in the cuspidate teeth, the entire occlusal surface is provided with the thickest enamel layer. It is about evenly distributed over the lateral walls of the crown, but as the cervical line is approached, its thickness is gradually diminished (Fig. 254). Chemically, enamel is composed of the salts of lime, calcium phosphate predominating. Calcium carbonate, magnesium phosphate, and calcium fluorid are present in smaller quantities. The proportionate quantity of lime-salts in enamel is not fixed, a slight variation in density occurring in the enamel of different individuals. These essential differences are regulated by the proportionate quantity of calcium phosphate and carbonate—a greater amount of the former being productive of additional hardness, while an increase in the latter beyond the minimum amount decreases this quality. As a general rule, the teeth of males contain a greater amount of calcium phosphate than the teeth of females, as shown by the following analysis by von Bibra :

	MAN.	WOMAN.
Calcium phosphate and fluorid, . . . . .	89.82	81.63
Calcium carbonate, . . . . .	4.37	8.88
Magnesium phosphate, . . . . .	1.34	3.55
Other salts, . . . . .	.88	.97
Cartilage, . . . . .	3.39	5.97
Fat, . . . . .	.20	a trace.
Total organic, . . . . .	3.59	5.97
Total inorganic, . . . . .	96.41	94.03

In general structure enamel is composed of numerous hexagonal prisms, with a common direction at right angles to the long axis of the tooth. These prisms are known as *enamel prisms*, *enamel fibers*, or *enamel rods*. While the general direction of the fibers is, as previously stated, nearly at right angles to the body of the tooth, they do not pursue a perfectly straight course in passing from the dentin to the surface, but are disposed in a tortuous or wave-like manner. The enamel prisms may be said to sit on end against the surface of the dentin, minute depressions in the latter receiving the extremities of the rods. The direction of the enamel prisms, as compared to the

body of the tooth-crown, varies according to the part of the crown which they occupy. Taking the entire crown of the tooth, they radiate in such a manner from the surface of the dentin that at the cutting-edge or occlusal surface of the tooth they are more or less vertical, while over the lateral surfaces they tend to the horizontal direction. An examination of the prisms when isolated and decalcified exhibits numerous evenly distributed varicosities, producing a transversely striated appearance to the rods. Tomes has pointed out that the enamel rods

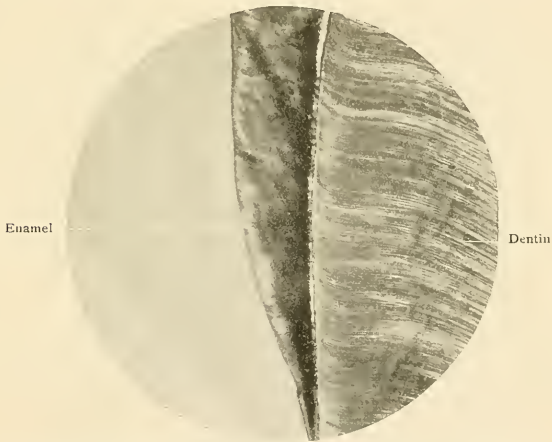


FIG. 254.—ENAMEL AND DENTIN FROM HUMAN TOOTH, SHOWING GRADUAL REDUCTION IN THE THICKNESS OF THE FORMER AS THE CERVIX IS APPROACHED.  $\times 30$ .

are variously disposed in that portion of the enamel most closely associated with the dentin. On the cusps of the teeth they are twisted and curved in various directions, while near the surface on the incisors they are uniform and straight. In general, the enamel rods, which begin on the surface of the dentin, are continuous through the entire thickness of the enamel. In passing from the interior to the exterior, the individual rod, to occupy a proportionate space in all parts, would have to increase in diameter; but this it does not do. In consequence of this arrange-

ment there exist numerous supplemental or peripheral rods, which extend but a short distance from the surface, filling in the interprismatic spaces formed by the longer rods. With the exception of the faint transverse striations, the enamel prisms appear to be structureless. A variety of opinions have been expressed in regard to the cause for the striated appearance of the enamel rods. It was claimed by Hertz to be attributable to a temporary arrest of calcification, but more recent investigation has shown the cause to be the presence of varicosities

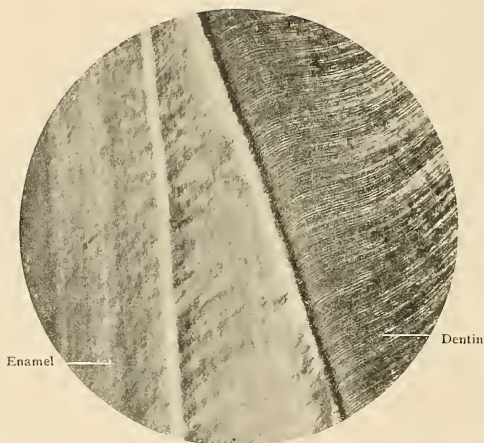


FIG. 255.—COMPARISON IN THE APPEARANCE OF THE ENAMEL AND DENTIN UNDER LOW POWER OF THE MICROSCOPE.  $\times 40$ .

in the individual fibers, precisely as the varicosities in the muscular fibers produce the striated appearance in that tissue. Bodecker asserts that fully developed normal enamel is non-striated, and Von Ebner practically makes the same statement, claiming that they are due to the preparation of the specimen, which usually being mounted in Canada balsam, suffers sufficiently from the slight acid reaction to produce the striated appearance. These statements Williams emphatically denies, saying that, while in some specimens the varicosities are ap-

parent in some parts, they are decided in others. If this be accepted, it would seem to entirely overthrow the theory of Von Ebner in regard to the action of the acid, which would be distributed to all parts alike.

According to Williams, the varicosities of one enamel prism are opposite those of the adjoining prisms, and by the coming together of the varicosities the prisms become united by means of processes which they send out. In like manner the varicosities upon the same rod are connected by processes running

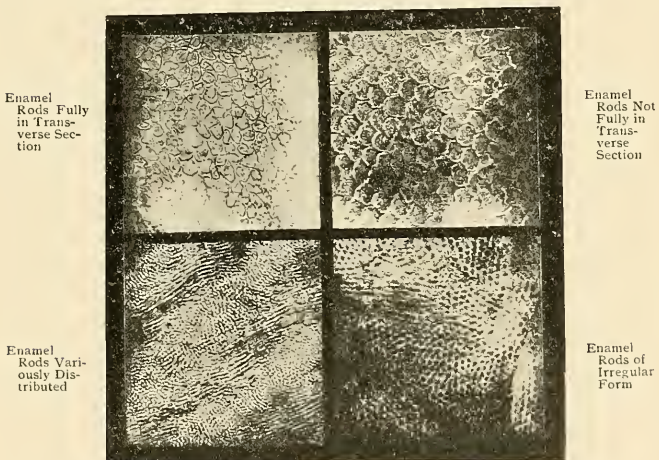


FIG. 256.—HUMAN ENAMEL. TRANSVERSE GROUND SECTIONS.—(After Gysi.)

parallel with the prism. According to Von Ebner, enamel is traversed by numerous minute canals, and Heitzmann claims to have found organic fibers in its substance. Williams, while admitting the enamel structure to be far more complex than past research has shown, appears to have fully demonstrated that neither canals nor organic fibers are present—in fact, he denies the presence of the least trace of organic matter in this structure. The interprismatic matrix, heretofore considered by most authorities to be an organic structure, now appears, by



the thorough methods employed by the last-named gentleman, as a transparent, inorganic substance. By numerous experiments he was enabled to secure a specimen in which the interprismatic spaces of one layer were not backed up by the rods of another layer. In some instances the specimen showed the rods well separated and the interspace closed by a perfectly transparent substance, in the interior of which might be seen connecting processes passing from one rod to another. That the enamel is practically of inorganic material, and therefore not capable of transmitting or receiving sensations, may be demonstrated by the simple experiment of immersing a thin section of this tissue in a weak solution of chromic acid, the result of which will be a speedy separation of the enamel prisms which have been liberated by the destruction of the interprismatic substance. What does this signify? Chromic acid is one of the best preservatives of organic tissue known, and if the cementing substances in enamel were organic or even partly so, the prisms by this test would not be freed, but instead would become more firmly cemented together. Therefore we infer from this that the interprismatic substance is even less highly organic than the prisms themselves, these not being acted upon until after the material which holds them together. In addition to the striated appearance formed by the varicosities of the individual prisms of fully developed enamel, other structures of a different character, and upon a much larger scale, are present and known as the "brown striæ of Retzius" (Fig. 257). These markings, readily seen with a low power, are of a brownish color, and run nearly parallel with the surface of the dentin or enamel. Those striæ nearest the surface of the dentin are inclined to follow the contour of that structure, extending in many instances the entire length of the crown. The lines nearest the surface are longest in the region of the cutting-edge, or occlusal surface of the crown, becoming shorter as the neck of the tooth is approached, being directed at an acute angle to the surface of the dentin at that point. A number of theories are advanced to account for the presence of the "brown striæ of Retzius." Tomes suggests that, coinciding as they do with the outer surface of what was at one time the



primitive enamel cap, they might be considered as in a measure outlining the stratifications of the primary deposit. Another theory, but one seemingly without foundation, is to the effect that the striæ are produced by an arrest in the calcifying process; while a third theory attributes the cause to a variation in the character of the nourishment taken by the mother during pregnancy. The acceptance of this latter theory would seem to indicate a set diet for all mothers and at stated intervals, the

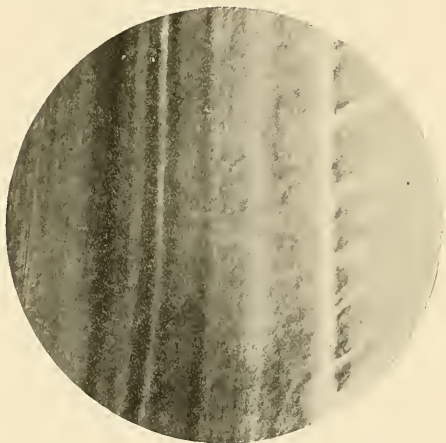


FIG. 257.—THICK SECTION OF ENAMEL OF HUMAN TOOTH, SHOWING BROWN STRIÆ OF RETZIUS.  $\times 40$ .

striæ always being present and somewhat regularly distributed throughout the tissue.

Still another set of lines or markings are to be observed in the substance of sections of enamel, these being known as the "lines of Schreger." Figure 258 shows these lines as they appear in the enamel by reflected light, the same being quite invisible by transmitted light. The presence of these lines is due to the various directions assumed by the contiguous groups of enamel rods. Beginning at the surface of the dentin they are well defined, but gradually become less marked as the ex-

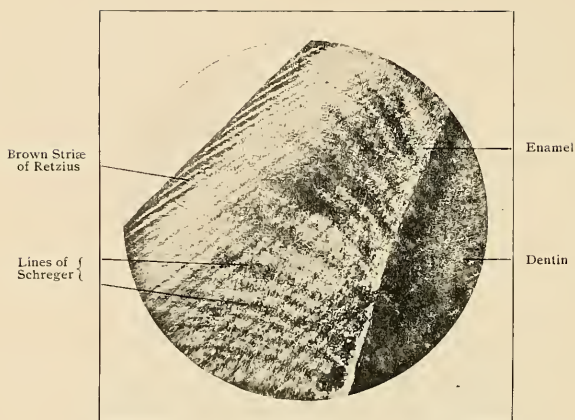


FIG. 258.—ENAMEL AND DENTIN, HUMAN TOOTH.—(After Gysi.)

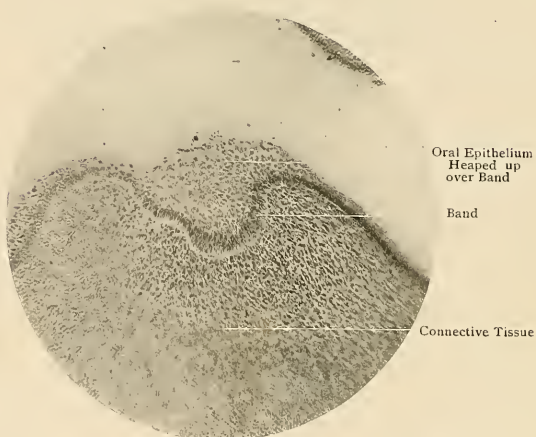


FIG. 259.—VERTICAL SECTION THROUGH JAW OF HUMAN EMBRYO. FORMATION OF TOOTH-BAND, ABOUT SIXTIETH DAY.  $\times 300$ .

terior of the enamel is approached. At the line of union between the enamel and dentin irregularly formed cavities are occasionally observed, into which the dentinal tubules may extend, and in rare instances individual tubules may pass beyond the boundary-line of the dentin and enter the enamel, but in all probability both of these conditions are pathologic. Such a state of affairs could hardly be considered normal when we take into consideration that the dentin and enamel calcify in opposite directions, and that the outer wall of the former is completed before enamel calcification begins.



FIG. 260.—VERTICAL SECTION, TOOTH-BAND, HUMAN EMBRYO. TENTH WEEK.  $\times 300$ .

*Development of Enamel.*—Preparations for the development of the enamel begin toward the close of the second fetal month, appearing first as a multiplication of the primitive epithelial cells in the form of a continuous linear projection extending somewhat obliquely into the subjacent connective tissue. From this crest, or tooth-band, the germs for the future enamel organs are given off. These primary dental bulbs, as they are called, number one for each tooth to be generated, and coincidently with their appearance an aggregation of closely associated

connective-tissue cells make their appearance in the surrounding submucous tissue. This papilla-like specialization of the submucous tissue is the primitive dentin germ, or dentin papilla. It will thus be observed that the enamel is a product of the surface epithelium, *ectodermic*, while the dentin is generated from the connective tissues, *endermic*. Soon after the appearance of this club-shaped thickening, or tooth-bulb, by further differentiation its form becomes bell-shaped, with the concavity directed toward the surface. The dentin papilla gradually pushes into the concavity of the forming enamel organ, and at a later period the

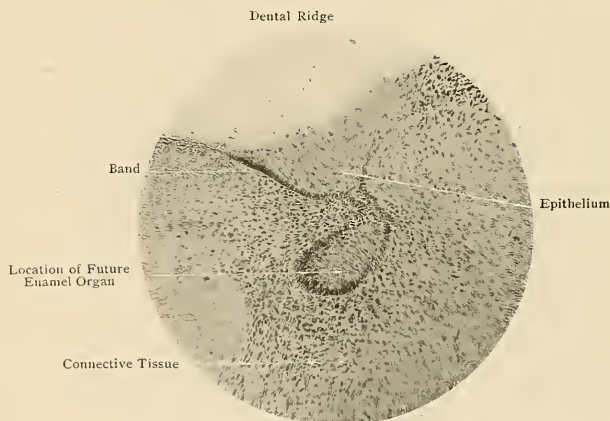


FIG. 261.—SAME AS FIGURE 260. ABOUT TWELFTH WEEK.  $\times 200$ .

odontoblastic cells are generated about the periphery of the papilla, closely followed by a surface calcification of the dentin. Soon after the forming of the external layers of dentin the ameloblasts or enamel-forming cells become active, and a deposition of enamel prisms takes place upon the exterior of the dentin cap.

Before taking up the subject of enamel calcification, brief reference will be made to the further development of the enamel organ. As the growth of this organ proceeds there is, as the result of a rapid proliferation of the cellular structure, a marked

tendency for the organ to become separated from the tooth-band. The peripheral cells or *external epithelium* are columnar or prismatic, and remain so, while those in the center, primarily polygonal, soon become transformed into a radiating network or *stellate reticulum*. The appearance of a stellate reticulum is first observed to take place in the cells occupying the central portion of the enamel-organ, this cellular transformation progressing from the center outward, but ceasing before reaching the columnar surface cells contiguous to the dentin papilla.

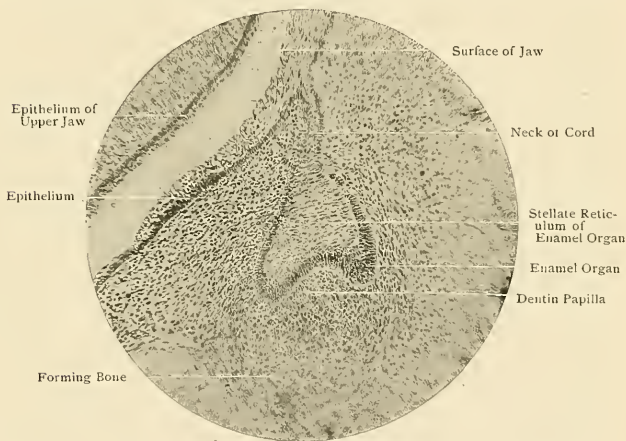


FIG. 262.—VERTICAL SECTION THROUGH TOOTH-BAND, CORD, DENTIN PAPILLA, AND ENAMEL ORGAN, ABOUT FIFTEENTH WEEK.  $\times 150$ .

Between the enamel cells and the stellate reticulum is a layer of unaltered cells—the *stratum intermedium*. In the earlier stages of the development of the enamel organ the peripheral cells are alike, being columnar or prismatic, but almost coincident with the appearance of the dentin papilla, the cells most closely related to it are observed to become elongated, and form the *internal epithelium* of the enamel organ. As the cells forming this internal epithelium become elongated, their nuclei, instead of occupying the center of the protoplasmic body, are carried to their extremities. It will thus be seen that the com-



pleted enamel organ consists of four divisions or layers of cells. Beginning with its convex surface is an external epithelium or outer tunic, successively followed, in passing toward the dentin papilla, by a stellate reticulum, stratum intermedium, and an internal epithelium or inner tunic. As the growth of the enamel organ proceeds, the tooth-band becomes smaller and smaller in size, until finally a complete rupture takes place. This rupture,

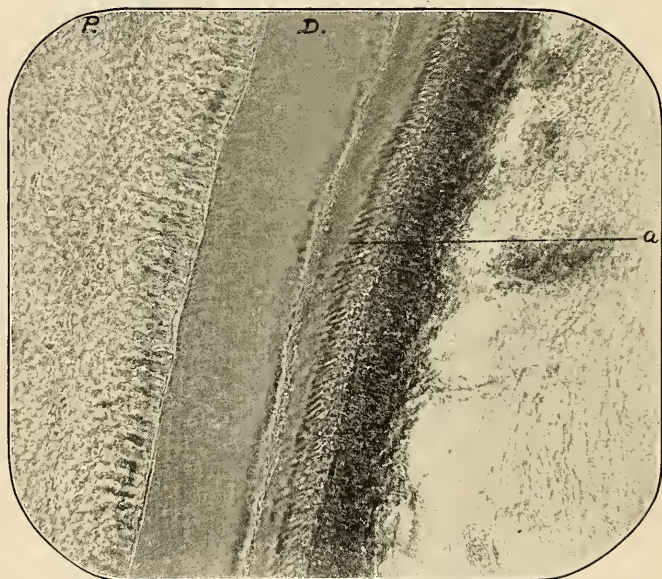


FIG. 263.—SECTION OF A DEVELOPING TOOTH OF LAMB.  $\times 600$ .  
*a*, Ameloblasts; *D*, dentin; *P*, dental pulp.

however, does not occur until the enamel organ has about or fully completed its development, and, after remaining so long under the influence of the oral epithelium, it must be considered, as before stated, an epithelial structure. It is through the agency of the internal epithelial cells of the enamel organ, the *enamel cells* or *ameloblasts*, that calcification of the enamel takes place, and that subject will next be considered.



*Amelification* (Fig. 263).—Two theories are advanced in regard to the calcification of the enamel. In one it is claimed that the ameloblasts or enamel cells become directly calcified or converted into enamel; in the other the ameloblasts are simply considered as controlling agents, by secreting or depositing the calcium salts which form the enamel prisms. In the latter theory it is generally believed that the enamel is secreted or shed out from the

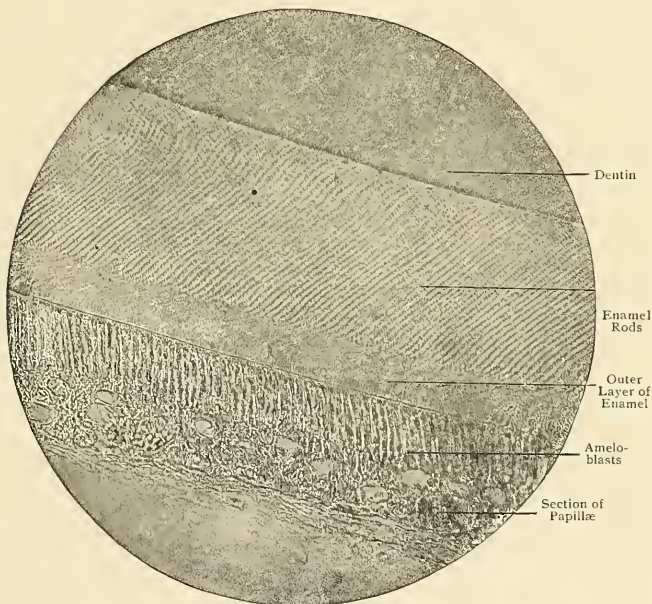


FIG. 264.—SECTION OF INCISOR OF RAT.  $\times 200$ .—(After Williams.)

extremities of the ameloblasts, thus being productive of enamel fibers corresponding in size and position to the secreting cells. By the direct calcification of the ameloblasts, it would be natural to expect the process to begin on the exterior of the cell and gradually pass into its interior, the central portion being the last to calcify. This would result in an enamel prism corresponding in size and form to the generating cell, and in a measure this

similarity between the calcified and uncalcified structure does exist and is one of the potent factors in the recognition of this theory, but it is hardly sufficiently convincing to warrant a general acceptance of the belief.

By examining figure 263 the importance of the secretory theory is favored. Here we note that the early formed enamel at *A* records what appears to be the definite action of the ameloblasts by prolongations of partly calcified tissue extending from the cells, these markings corresponding in number and location to the cells themselves. Between these prolongations and the ameloblasts are many highly refractive granular bodies which seem to be the actual lime deposit shed out from the free extremities of the cells, from which they pass into the substance of the then organic matrix beyond at *A* and form the enamel prisms. Williams takes exception to this latter view, substantiating his opinion by stating that while the ameloblasts of many animals are similar in shape and arrangement, the enamel produced from these similarly arranged cells varies greatly in structure. The same writer also states that, when such a similarity of arrangement exists between the ameloblasts and the enamel prisms, it occurs near the commencement of enamel calcification, and that at a later period the relative position of the ameloblasts and the prisms is always in longitudinal section. Dr. Williams calls attention to the fact of the enamel prisms or rods not extending through the entire distance between the enamel cells and the calcified dentin (Fig. 263). That part of the structure lying between the ameloblasts and the extremities of the enamel rods is made up of a double set of fibers, some of which are almost at right angles with the long axis of the ameloblasts. In figure 265 D the two sets of fibers previously mentioned are found to join and become closely interwoven.

The ameloblasts are connected with the cells of the stratum intermedium, and more recent investigation goes to prove that this latter structure is directly interested in furnishing to the ameloblasts the proper material for the calcifying process. The stratum intermedium can not, however, take part in the primary enamel calcification, as this process commences before the

stratum intermedium is fully developed. This being the case, it is generally supposed that the stellate reticulum furnishes the material for the upbuilding of the first enamel prisms.

Lying between the free extremities of the ameloblasts and the enamel in the course of formation is what has been generally considered as a structureless basement membrane or *membrana*

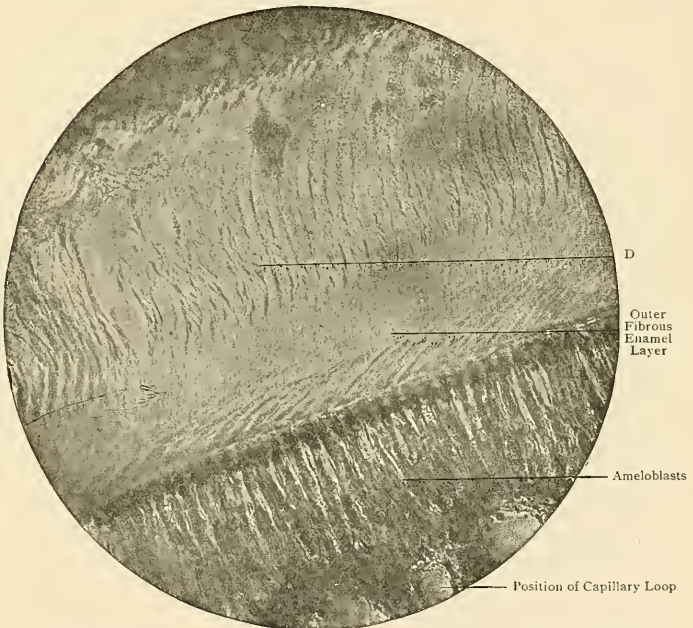


FIG. 265.—SECTION OF INCISOR OF RAT, SHOWING PARTIAL DECALCIFICATION OF ENAMEL  
 $\times 600$ .—(After Williams.)

*præformativa*. The existence, exact location and structure of this membrane has been and still remains a matter of conjecture. The generally accepted theory appears to be that given above, but Williams refers to it as a layer of newly formed enamel, and does not consider it as a structureless membrane. The structure is to be observed in figure 265, at either extremity

of the ameloblastic cells, this writer claiming that the so-called structureless membrane is present at both of these points.

As to the formation of the enamel rods, Dr. Andrews, in 1894, referring to the presence of calcoglobulin in the enamel cells considered these refractive bodies as calcospherites, which, after being taken up by the ameloblasts, were excreted by them, and after coalescing formed globules of larger size, from which the rods were built up. Williams partly agrees with this statement, but he is of the opinion that the calcospherites coalesce while in the ameloblasts, forming large, spheric bodies, but that the deposit of this substance is in no way productive of building the enamel rods. The theory of Tomes in regard to the forming of enamel rods was that the walls of the ameloblasts themselves became calcified, while the contents of the cells also became solidified, the first forming the interprismatic substance, while the second became the enamel rod. Whatever theory be accepted as to the formation of the enamel rods or prisms, there appears to be no question in regard to the general process of enamel calcification. In the first place, an organic matrix is formed, into which the first-formed layer of enamel is deposited. Gradually the organic matter disappears, leaving behind the inorganic elements closely resembling in appearance the organic matrix, which it has by atomic change supplanted. The question of an organic interprismatic cement-substance is also one upon which various writers disagree. Klein partly believes that such a substance does exist, basing his opinion upon the fact that the ameloblastic cells, in common with all epithelial cells, are separated from one another by a homogeneous intercellular substance, and that a certain proportion of this organic substance must remain between the enamel prisms after calcification. Dr. Sudduth, by a series of experiments made some years ago, appeared at that time to have furnished conclusive proof that an organic, interprismatic cement-substance does not exist between the enamel prisms of fully developed enamel. By the use of a dilute solution of chromic acid, the action of which is the preservation of organic substance, the prisms were liberated, which would not have been the result had they been cemented by an organic cement-sub-



stance. By substituting dilute muriatic acid, the action of which is the destruction of organized tissue, the prisms were not liberated, the acid acting evenly upon the whole mass of enamel, and finally resulting in its complete destruction, not leaving the slightest trace of an organic matrix behind. Dr. Williams claims that this transparent cement-substance is formed by the distribution

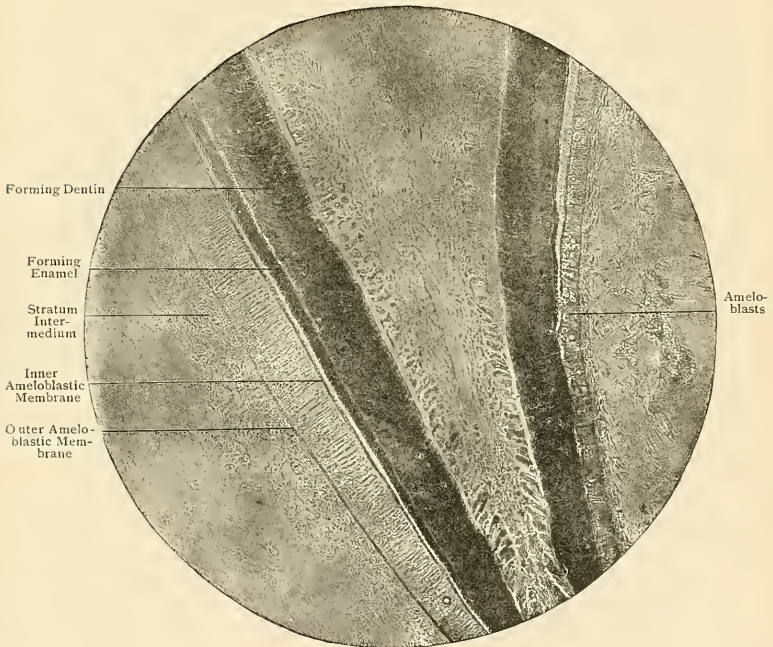


FIG. 266.—SECTION OF DEVELOPING TOOTH OF EMBRYO LAMB. 150.—(After Williams.)

of a translucent liquid substance about the previously formed pattern for the enamel rods. This pattern, generated through the activity of the enamel cells, is composed of a translucent material somewhat more solid than that structure which surrounds it. These two substances calcify together, the latter forming the enamel prisms, while the former creates the cement

or interprismatic substance. There is no better method by which to study the character or mode of development of a growing or matured tissue than by an artificial disassociation of its component parts. In enamel it matters but little in what part of the tissue or at what period of its growth the examination be made to learn of the action of the decalcifying agent; it will never be found to take place in a manner corresponding to the

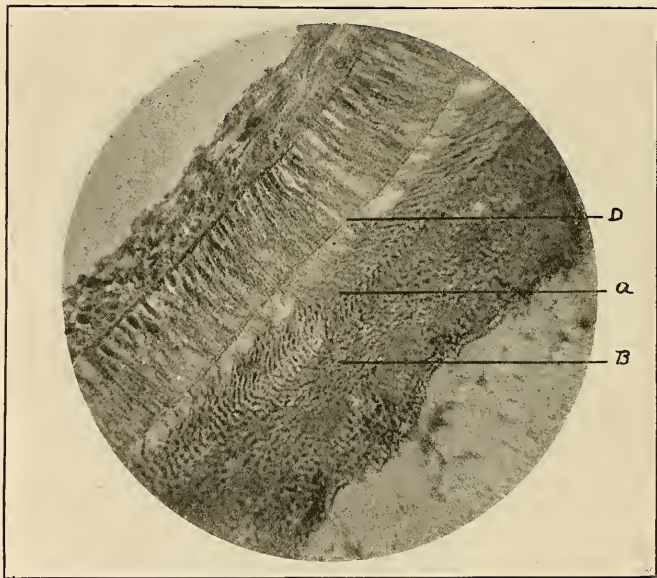


FIG. 267.

direction of the enamel fibers, but decalcification takes place in older enamel more in the form of a general breaking up of the structure, as shown at *A* in figure 267, while at *B*, which represents the newly formed tissue, the action is one which appears to indicate a breaking up of the interprismatic substance, favoring the theory of secretory amelification.

This distinction between the enamel cells and their product



possesses none of the characteristics to properly classify it as structureless. There is but little doubt as to its character, being the primary product of the ameloblasts, while the corresponding zone at the distal end of the enamel-forming cells results from the functional activity of the stratum intermedium.

Figure 268 shows a section near the point of the cusp of a

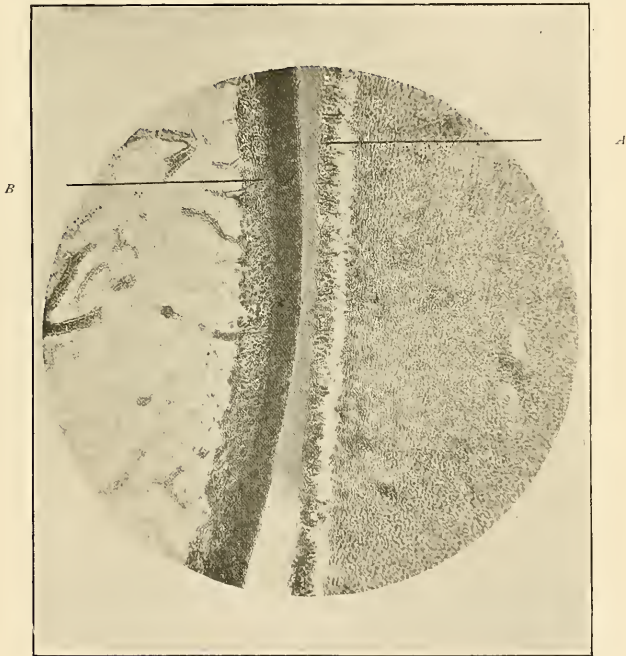


FIG. 268.

developing molar and exhibits a portion of the enamel organ at a time immediately prior to the beginning of enamel calcification. *A* is the uncalcified dentin, *B* the ameloblasts, now closely associated, and a very regular layer of elongated cells, and behind these another layer of cells, which undoubtedly serve as feeders to the ameloblasts, the stratum inter-

medium. This section is especially valuable in that it shows a number of capillaries distributed through the body of the stellate reticulum and actually penetrating the stratum intermedium, as seen at *B*.

When viewed with a low power, these minute blood-vessels appear to form a complete network, and in the district between the cusps pervade the entire structure, from the stratum intermedium on one side to the same cells on the other. The appearance of this animated vascular supply to the enamel is coincident with the process of calcification, for during the early life of the tooth-germ it is non-vascular. The growth of enamel, strata upon strata, from within outward is therefore by the direct calcification of the enamel cells or ameloblasts, and while this is going on, and as long as the crown of the tooth is incased in its epithelial cap, the enamel organ, the growth of the tissue is stimulated through the blood-vessels everywhere present in the stellate reticulum. The presence of this specialized blood supply to the central portion of the enamel organ was for a long time doubted, but at present it can be readily observed (Fig. 267). As soon, however, as the tooth passes through the surface tissue, carrying with it the external epithelium of the enamel organ as the enamel cuticle, the possibility of nourishment has been cut off, and after a little time it becomes a petrified dental epithelium, no longer nourished and absolutely non-vital.

**Dentin.**—This tissue, which constitutes the principal bulk of the hard part of the tooth, forms a complete cap-like investment over the pulp, from which it is generated. It is white or slightly yellowish-white in color, somewhat elastic, and a trifle harder than bone, which it resembles in many of its characteristics. In a perfectly developed tooth no part of the dentin appears upon the surface, that part within the crown being covered by the enamel, while that of the root is inclosed by the cementum. While the thickness of the dentin varies somewhat over the different parts of the tooth, there is a decided disposition to an equal distribution in every direction. Dentin, unlike enamel, consists of an organic matrix—a reticular tissue of fine fibrils richly impregnated with the salts of calcium,

in this resembling the matrix of bone. Traversing the matrix are long, fine canals or tubes (Fig. 270),—the *dentinal tubules*,—which pass from the margins of the pulp toward the surface. Immediately surrounding the dentinal tubules the matrix is especially dense, forming a lining or sheath to the tubes, known as the *dentinal sheaths*. Occupying the lumen of the dentinal tubules are solid elastic fibers—the *dentinal fibers*. Dentin, therefore, presents for examination, first, the matrix; second, the dentinal tubules; third, the dentinal sheaths; and fourth, the dentinal fibers.



FIG. 269.—SECTION THROUGH CROWN OF HUMAN CUSPID. 30.

*The Matrix.*—As previously stated, the matrix is composed of organic and inorganic substances, but the proportionate quantity of organic and inorganic constituents is so variable that it is impossible to furnish a definite chemic analysis. The relative quantity of organic and inorganic matter is not only variable in the teeth of different individuals, but is continually changing in the teeth of the same individual, the former being present in larger quantities during youth and gradually diminishing as age advances. From an examination of perfectly

dried dentin, the following approximate analysis has been obtained:

Organic matter (tooth-cartilage), . . . . .	27.61
Fat, . . . . .	0.40
Calcium phosphate and fluorid, . . . . .	66.72
Calcium carbonate, . . . . .	3.36
Magnesium phosphate, . . . . .	1.08
Other salts, . . . . .	0.83

The organic basis of the matrix appears to be structureless and transparent, and, although closely resembling the matrix of



FIG. 270.—SECTION THROUGH ROOT OF HUMAN INCISOR, SHOWING MANY DENTIN TUBULES IN TRANSVERSE SECTION.  $\times 200$ .

bone, is not identical with it. While the matrix is usually structureless, there are instances in which the presence at one time of connective-tissue fibers is indicated.

*The Dentinal Tubules* (Figs. 271, 272, 273).—Beginning by a free opening about the walls of the pulp-cavity, the dentinal tubules permeate the matrix in all directions. The tubules are generally disposed in a direction perpendicular to the surface, so that in different parts of the tooth they radiate in various directions. Beginning upon the surface of the pulp-cavity, at

which point they are of greatest diameter, they pass more or less in a spiral manner toward the surface (Fig. 273), before reaching which they become gradually reduced in size, as a result of the numerous branches which they give off (Fig. 272). The branches given off from the main tubes are quite variable in size, and anastomose with one another or with the branches from other tubules. In the region of the pulp the tubules are so closely associated that but little space is provided for the intertubular substance or matrix; but as the surface is approached they become more widely separated, and, in consequence, the matrix substance is present in greater abundance. While the general

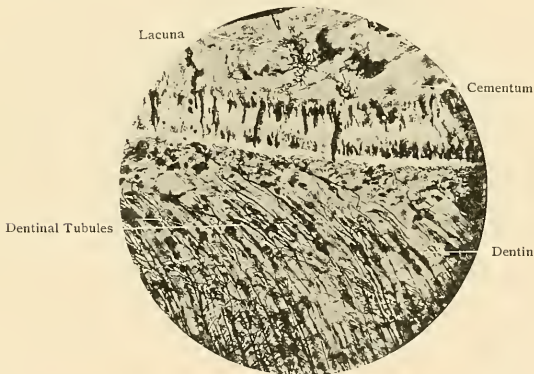


FIG. 271.—DENTIN AND CEMENTUM FROM ROOT OF HUMAN MOLAR.—(After Gysi.)

direction of the tubes is perpendicular, they do not pursue a direct course, but are more or less curved as they pass from within outward. The curvature of the tubuli may be divided into two classes,—long curves and short curves,—usually referred to as the primary and second curvatures of the dentinal tubules. The primary curvatures are few in number and are most prominent in the crown, while the secondary curvatures, principally found in the roots, are smaller and more numerous. The branches from the main tubes terminate in various ways, either by anastomosis, by gradually fading out into hair-like terminals, or by ending in hooks and loops. In rare

instances they are said to enter the substance of the enamel or cementum, but it is doubtful if they do so normally. The branches from a main tube are usually two in number, the latter being almost equal in diameter to the former, and from this first set of branches a number of minute branches are given off almost at right angles. In the crown this latter class of tubules are seldom observed, excepting near the enamel margin, but in the root they are everywhere noticed. Small varicosities are frequently present, but not in sufficient numbers to produce a striated appearance on the surface of the dentin.

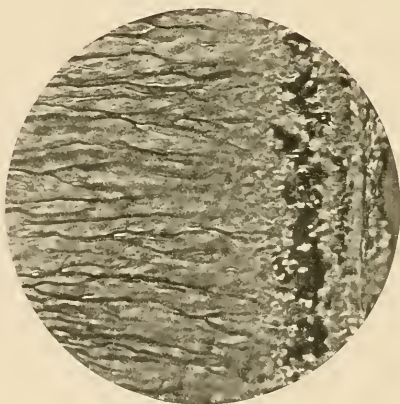


FIG. 272.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION THROUGH ROOT OF HUMAN MOLAR. BRANCHING OF THE DENTINAL TUBULES.  $\times 200$ .

*The Dentinal Sheaths.*—While the dentinal tubules ramify through the matrix in the form of well-defined channels, the walls of the channels are not formed by the matrix, but by an indestructible substance the exact character of which is not fully understood. The walls of the tubes, or the dentinal sheaths, as they are termed, are believed by some histologists to be calcified, while others, though acknowledging their apparent indestructibility, are doubtful as to the correctness of this theory. Neumann being the first to accurately describe the walls of the tubules, they have become known as "Neumann's sheaths."



The existence of the dentinal sheaths may best be demonstrated by subjecting the tissue to the action of strong acid for a sufficient time to destroy the intervening matrix, which process usually requires several days. The fibrous mass remaining will be found to contain a collection of tubes, which, however, by careful examination, are found not to be the dentinal tubules themselves, but the walls of these canals. Magitot and Sudduth deny the existence of a wall to the dentin tubes. Tomes, while inclined to the belief that the

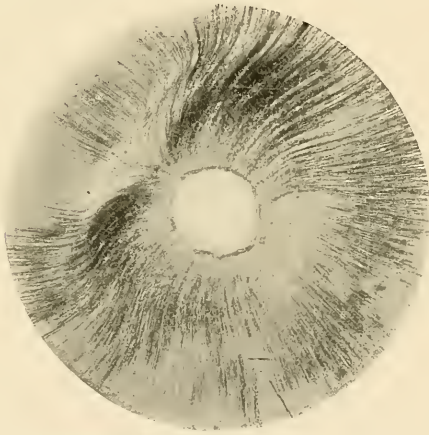


FIG. 273.—TRANSVERSE SECTION THROUGH ROOT OF HUMAN MOLAR, SHOWING THE CURVATURE OF THE DENTIN TUBULES ABOUT THE PULP-CANAL.  $\times 40$ .

tubes are provided with definite walls, suggests that they may have been produced artificially during the preparation of the specimen, and that they are only brought into existence by the action of the agents used for this purpose. In conclusion, the same writer adds that that part of the matrix immediately surrounding the fibril differs in its chemic constituents from the body of the matrix.

*The Dentinal Fibers.*—Occupying the lumen of each dentin tube is a soft, elastic fiber, which is continuous with and has its origin from the odontoblastic cells upon the periphery of the

pulp. The existence of these elongated processes of the odontoblasts having first been demonstrated by Tomes, they are otherwise known as Tomes' fibers. By means of these fibers, which not only fill the lumen of the larger tubes, but the minute branches as well, the substance of the dentin is both nourished and rendered slightly sensitive. There is still some doubt as to the real nature of the fibrils, but, if they are processes from the odontoblasts, it would appear that the substance would be identical with that of the cell-protoplasm. Bodecker claims that they are not round but inclined to



FIG. 274.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION THROUGH ROOT OF HUMAN TOOTH, SHOWING PRIMARY CURVATURE OF DENTIN TUBULES.  $\times 40$ .

angularity, but Tomes infers that this form has been produced by the action of some reagent. Klein advances the theory that the odontoblasts are active in the generation of the matrix for the dentin only, and that the dentinal fibrils are not processes from them, but originate from cells intervening between the odontoblasts and connecting with the dentin tubes. It has never been fully demonstrated that true nerve-fibers enter the dentin along with or in the substance of the dentinal fibril, but, while the evidence is not at present forthcoming, there is but little doubt that the sensitive-

ness of the dentin is produced by the presence of organized tissue in the tubuli. Some contend that the contents of the tubules are made up of, first, a creative portion, that given off directly from the odontoblasts ; second, a circulatory portion, a minute vessel traversing each tubule, entering either by the side of the cell-bodies or passing through them, and that the nerve terminals are distributed in the same manner. Others say that minute nerve-filaments from the pulp pass directly through the odontoblasts and are continued in the center of the tubule surrounded by a simple connective tissue, the cell process, and that



FIG. 275.—TRANSVERSE SECTION THROUGH THE ROOT OF A HUMAN INCISOR, SHOWING THE DENTIN SURROUNDED BY THE CEMENTUM.  $\times 30$ .

in this way sensations are conveyed. It is now generally conceded that dentin is a highly organized connective tissue ; that it has a circulatory system and is endowed with sensation to a slight degree ; that these conditions are brought about not by actual entrance into the tubules of separate vessels and nerve-filaments, but more in the way of the tubules being occupied by a general connective-tissue substance resembling in all essential features the pulp itself, being the semi-fluid interfibrillar ground-substance of the pulp ; that dendrites of sensory neurons everywhere present in the pulp, after losing their medullary sheaths

divide into fine varicose fibers and become closely associated with the peripheral cells, pass between these, and enter the cone-shaped openings of the tubules and terminate soon after doing so.

While the microscope reveals in some instances what appear to be prolongations from the dentinal fibers penetrating the enamel, or between its prisms, such a condition is improbable if not impossible. If this arrangement is present at all, it is so slight as to have no influence whatever over the enamel

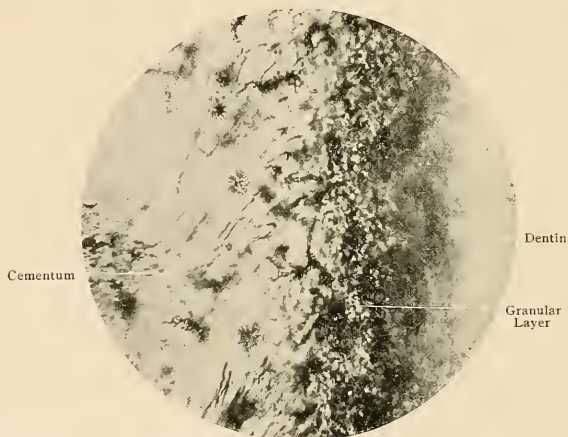


FIG. 276.—TOMES' GRANULAR LAYER.  $\times 40$ .

either as to nourishment or sensation. No conclusions can be drawn with positive certainty from sections, since the slightest deviation from parallelism in the surfaces may easily produce deceptive appearances. It is just as common, and even more so, to find hair-like lines interwoven and running parallel with the surface of the dentin immediately between this tissue and the enamel, as it is to see slight fibers crossing beyond their boundary-line to penetrate the enamel. The most likely place of all to find such a condition would be in the beginning of calcification, and here it is never observed. The peripheral pulp-

cells, usually all classed as odontoblasts, are never found outside their own territory, the dentinal papilla; but their location in the beginning on the very surface of the papilla, almost in direct contact with the inner tunic of the enamel organ, would make it possible for their processes, when appearing, to penetrate between the cells of the enamel organ if they were grown out from the body of the cells from which they spring. This, however, they do not do. They do not grow out from the cell-body, so to speak, but the cell recedes, leaving them behind. By this arrangement the terminals of the future fibers become definitely established, all increase in length taking place in the opposite direction, toward the pulp. While the active enamel-forming cells are present some little time prior to the odontoblasts, calcification of the enamel does not take place until after a definite cap of dentin has been formed, imprisoned in which are the terminal branches of the fibers. Therefore the fact that this cap of dentin is formed first, and this is not a question in dispute, with the fibers or cell processes securely encapsulated within it, would seem to be sufficient evidence to qualify the statement that the dentinal fibers do not penetrate the enamel. The examination of very many sections of young growing teeth exhibits the fact that the early formed dentin and enamel will separate bodily, leaving a positive clear line of separation and a surface absolutely devoid of anything resembling the prolongation of the fibers extending from the surface of the dentin.

*Interglobular Spaces.*—In that part of the dentin which immediately underlies the cementum numerous intercommunicating, irregularly branched spaces are found. These are known as the interglobular spaces (Fig. 276). On account of the granular appearance which this portion of the dentin exhibits under low magnifying power, Tomes has designated it as the "granular layer." The granular layer is also found upon that portion of the dentin which underlies the enamel, but in this region it is far less marked. Many of the dentin tubes have their endings in these spaces. While the interglobular spaces are most numerous near the peripheral portion of the dentin, they are by no means confined to these parts. They are present

in all parts of the dentin, but not so closely associated, and may be observed, when a dried section of dentin is examined, as spaces with irregular outlines and sharp-pointed processes extending in various directions (Fig. 277). The term "interglobular spaces" becomes partly a misnomer when the so-called "spaces" are more carefully examined. In normal dentin the "spaces" are filled with a soft, living plasma, having a structural arrangement similar to the general matrix of the dentin, and it is only in a dried specimen that a true space is found by the shrinking or shriveling of the organic contents. The interglobular spaces forming the granular layer, which are

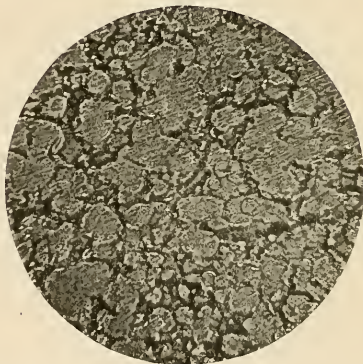


FIG. 277.—SO-CALLED INTERGLOBULAR SPACES IN DRIED SECTION OF DENTIN.  $\times 100$ .

much more numerous, but of smaller size, than those found in the body of the dentin, are also filled with a soft living plasma, and they communicate, on one hand, with the dentinal fibers, and, on the other, with the lacunæ and canaliculi of the cementum. According to Sudduth, the interglobular spaces (so called) are occupied by masses of calcoglobulin which have not become fully calcified.

*Dentinification.*—The dentin bulb, or papilla from which the dentin is formed, having already been described in part I, the process of calcification will at once be taken up. It will be recalled that calcification of the dentin does not begin



until the dentin papilla has developed to the form and size of the dentin of the future tooth-crown. When this has taken place, there is generated upon the surface of the papilla a modified form of connective-tissue cells called odontoblasts (Fig. 278). These cells, which are arranged in a single row upon the exterior of the papilla, vary in form according to their activity. When most active, they are broadest at the extremity directed toward the interior of the papilla. Proceeding from a single odontoblast there may be one or more processes, which are supposed to eventually occupy the tubes of the dentin, as the dentinal fibers. These cells each contain an oblong nucleus, which occupies

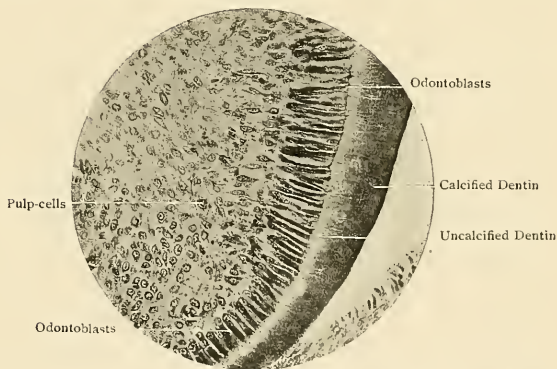


FIG. 278.—PULP AND FORMING DENTIN FROM AN INCISOR TOOTH.—(After Gysi.)

the extremity of the cell most distant from the dentin, but during the period of greatest activity becomes elongated or pointed in the direction of the process. The odontoblastic cells, while actively engaged in the calcifying process, are closely associated or crowded together, but previous to this time there is more or less space between them, which is filled with an indifferent tissue. The first layer of dentin being formed upon the surface of the papilla, it will be observed that all additions to its bulk take place from within (the reverse being true of enamel).

As stated elsewhere, calcification of the dentin begins upon the coronal extremities of the crowns, the cutting-edges of

the incisors and cuspids, and the summits of the cusps in the cuspidate teeth first receiving their lime-salts. While the odontoblasts undoubtedly superintend the calcifying process, the part taken by these cells appears to be somewhat indefinitely determined. It is generally supposed that the lime-salts are secreted under the superintendency of the odontoblasts. The secretion, however, does not take place around the cells, and in

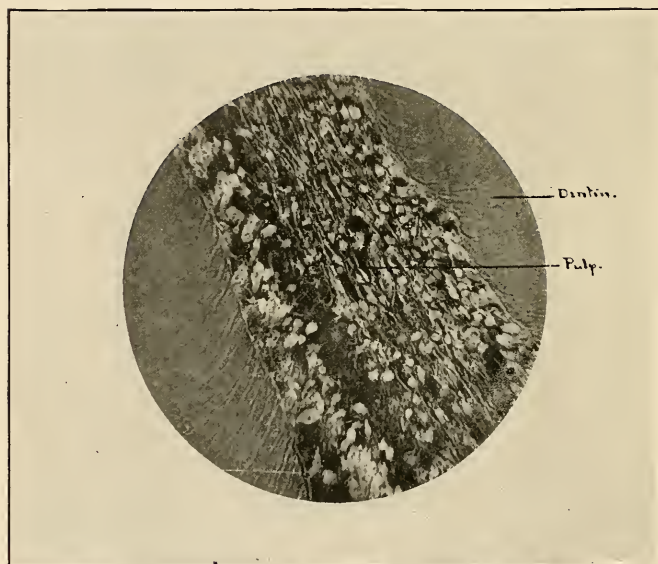


FIG. 279.—SECTION THROUGH PULP AND FORMING DENTIN.

that way completely encapsule them, but around their fibrils. While this is taking place the odontoblasts remain free upon the surface of the pulp, and the fibrils assume their places as the organic dentinal fibrils. As the body of dentin becomes thicker, the odontoblasts are forced to recede, and in so doing the fibers lengthen. The dentinal tubules are, of course, formed in a like manner, the walls of the tube being first calcified from the secretion of lime-salts by the fibrils; and as the fibrils lengthen by

the increasing thickness of dentin and the receding of the odontoblasts, the tubes also lengthen.

The general character of the pulp cells at a time immediately prior to the appearance of the ameloblasts is vastly different from the same cells at maturity or after calcification of the dentin has taken place. The reason for this is obvious, considering that the connective-tissue mass does not assume its principal function until the odontoblasts are generated about its periphery. While at a later period the cells of the pulp are oblong in shape, with slender tail-like processes given off from each end, we find the same cells in the early embryo (sixteenth to twentieth week) spheroidal in outline and distributed, as they continue to be, at irregular intervals about the semi-gelatinous matrix. (See Fig. 279.)

When the periphery of the pulp is reached, a definite layer of cells is present, corresponding in every particular to those of the interior, and it is from these spheric bodies that the dentin-forming cells are derived. While the odontoblasts are usually characterized as spindle- or flask-shaped cells, this can only apply to the cells of later life, as those active at the beginning of calcification do not partake of either of these forms. Figure 280 (twentieth to twenty-fourth week) shows the first formed odontoblasts actively engaged in their function of dentinification. It will be observed that the cells, instead of being individualized as they appear at a later period, now present a racemose arrangement, such a cluster appearing about the entrance to each dentinal tubuli, which at this period are widely separated and apparently without anastomosing branches. The nearer the summit of the crown is approached, the less apparent is this grape-like association of the cells, showing conclusively that it is a primary condition.

After a definite thickness of calcified dentin appears about the surface of the tooth-pulp, the character of the odontoblastic cells becomes materially changed (twenty-fourth week), but even yet they do not answer to the description accorded them. The elongated, spindle-shaped or club-shaped odontoblasts are without question found in connection with the tissue only after calcification has progressed to a considerable extent; and while

it does not appear possible to detect the minute processes which penetrate the calcifying structure before this stage of the phenomena has been reached, they have nevertheless existed from the earliest inception of this specialized layer of cells.

In this connection the query presents itself in regard to the manner in which the intercommunication between the dentinal fibers is established, and the probable cause for the so-called in-

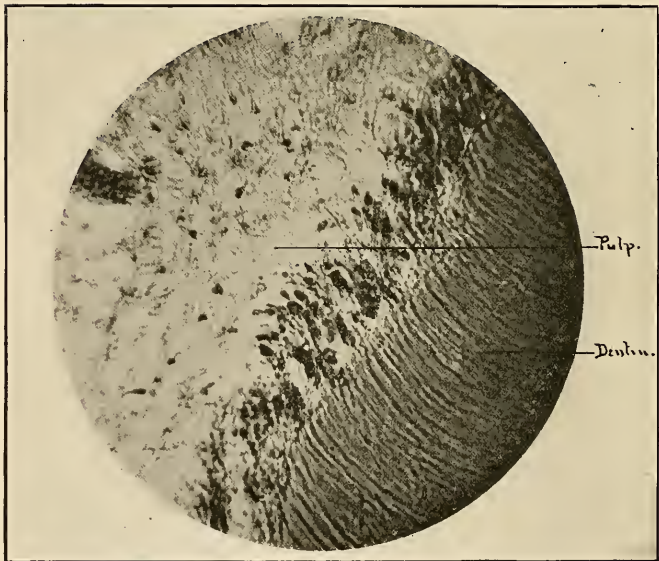


FIG. 280.—YOUNG ODONTOBLASTS ATTACHED TO FORMING DENTIN.

terglobular spaces about the periphery of the dentin. The former can probably be explained by an examination of the peripheral cells of the pulp at a time immediately prior to the beginning of calcification, when it will be found that these primitive odontoblasts communicate with one another in a manner quite similar to the canaliculi between the lacunæ of the true bone, the connecting processes being encapsuled within the substance of the calcifying tissue.

Figure 281 is taken from a very thin section of a growing tooth at a time in which we would most naturally look for the appearance of the interglobular spaces, and many such imperfections, if they may be so classified, are observed within the substance of the newly formed tissue.

Exceptions might be taken to the statement concerning the

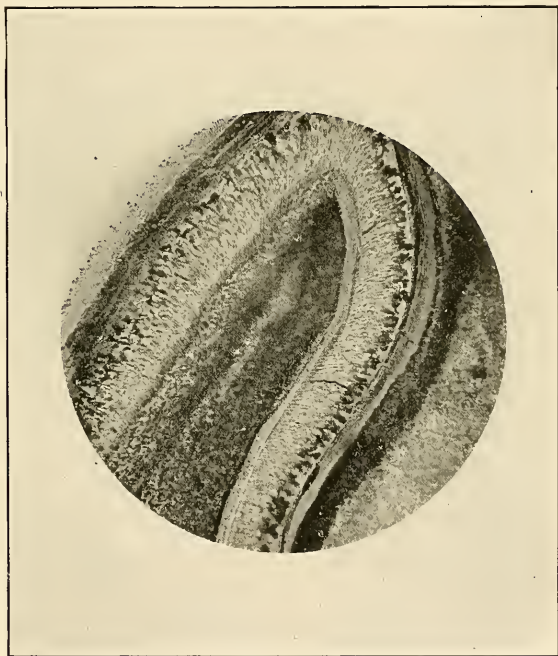


FIG. 281.—SECTION THROUGH CROWN OF GROWING TOOTH OF LAMB.

racemose appearance of the early odontoblasts previously referred to, by claiming the section to be one not directly through the long axis of the cells, or perhaps transversely through them. The examination of a number of sections, one of which is shown in figure 282, shows the cells cut transversely; the forming dentin at *a* appears with the tubuli squarely cut off, showing the



dentinal fibers confined, or rather appearing as though projecting from the lumen of the tubes. It will also be noted that the odontoblasts are irregular in outline, some of them being almost hexagonal, and as the calcified tissue is approached, they gradually become reduced in size and much modified in contour.

After a dentin cap or matrix of considerable thickness has made its appearance and the enamel cells are about to assume

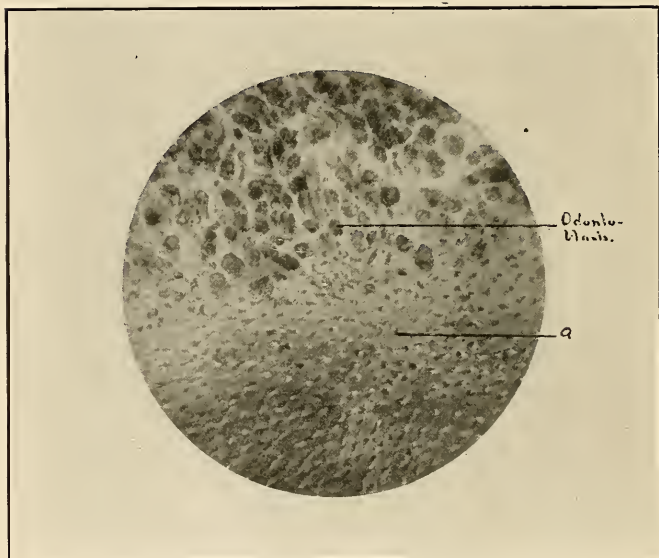


FIG. 282.—ODONTOBLASTS IN TRANSVERSE SECTION.

their functional activity, the odontoblasts for the first time begin to resolve themselves into the elongated flask-shaped cells, thus answering the description usually accorded them, as illustrated in figure 278. In fact it would appear that they assume this shape only when the actual lime deposit begins. If we examine the line of union between the dentin and enamel during the early growth of these tissues, it will be ascertained that, notwithstanding the dissimilarity of the two structures at maturity,



there appears at this line of junction a matrix which may be differentiated only by the free extremities of the ameloblasts, as shown in figure 283. When the enamel matrix begins to form, a faint line of demarcation between the two may be observed, the difference in the appearance of the groundwork of the two

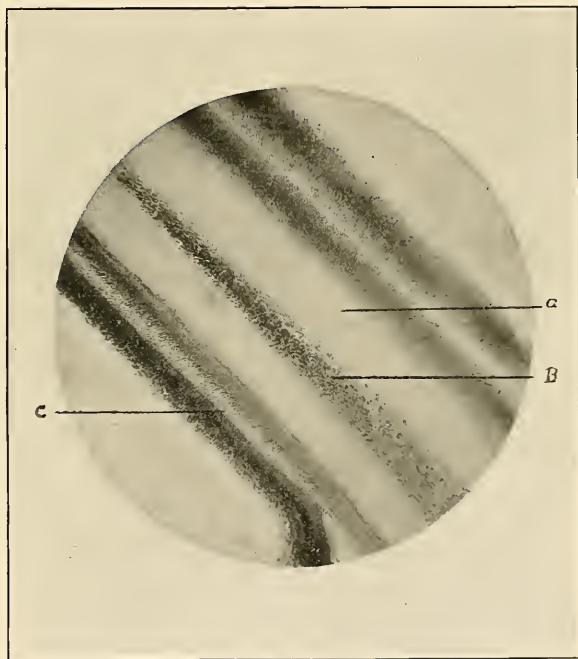


FIG. 283.—SECTION THROUGH PULP, DENTIN, AND FORMING ENAMEL. *A.* Calcified dentin. *B.* Pulp. *C.* Ameloblasts.

structures being one brought out by differential staining, that of the enamel taking the darkest stain.

It will be observed, therefore, that after the dentin germ has assumed the exact size of the dentin of the future tooth, certain cells appear upon its periphery, and under their superintendence a definite layer of dentin soon results. This first formed layer

of dentin is definite and unchangeable in location, and it has within its substance the minute processes from the dentin-forming cells which are destined to become and really are the terminals of the dentinal tubules. All who have given the subject of dentin calcification careful consideration are practically agreed as to the part which the peripheral pulp-cells play in the process. This is to the effect that not about the body of the cells themselves, but around their processes the lime salts are deposited. After a distinct layer of specialized cells has become fully established upon the very periphery of the papilla, the first change which takes place is a slight withdrawal of these cells from this point, leaving behind slender hair-like processes which occupy a portion of the space previously taken up by them, and about the extremities of the cells and their processes which are directed toward the enamel organ calcified material is generated. Zone upon zone of calcified dentin appears in this way, the body of the cell receding, leaving in its wake its processes encapsuled within the calcified structure as the dentinal fibers.

In connection with the primitive layer of dentin-forming cells, there are usually described lateral processes passing from cell to cell, apparently serving the purpose of communication between the cells. But these have recently been shown to be simply a network of connective tissue fibers supporting the body of the cells. The theory of Andrews, brought out some years ago in regard to the specialized layer of pear-shaped cells—dentin corpuscles, as he termed them—may be accepted, and these should be considered as having something to do with the process of dentinification. The presence of these pear-shaped cells at the beginning of calcification and during the continuance of this process can be easily demonstrated, and if we accept them as being concerned in the process of dentin formation, they might in a measure modify the function now accorded the elongated club-shaped cells, the odontoblasts. It is questionable whether the odontoblasts alone are responsible for the growth of dentin; they undoubtedly control the actual process of lime deposit, but the additional cells, no doubt, contribute to the structural make-up of the tissue. It may be that by modifying certain parts of the matrix, the result in the general structure

is the dentinal sheaths; this part of the tissue being so markedly different from the bulk of the intercellular substance would lead us to believe that it was developed from specialized cells. Further, it is said that while the dentinal tubules are filled with a living substance, this substance is not solely the product of the processes of the odontoblasts. That there is a special distribution of non-medullated nerve terminals as well as a rich plexus of blood-vessels about the periphery of the pulp is unquestionable, and this supply is just as plentiful, or perhaps more so, at maturity as it is at the beginning of calcification when the dentin cells are most active. From this we might be led to believe that this special blood and nerve supply to the periphery of the pulp is not solely for the upbuilding of the dentin and therefore distributed to the peripheral cells, but also for the permanent welfare of the resultant tissue, this being brought about by some circulatory system throughout the tubules of the dentin.

**Cementum** (Fig. 284).—Investing the roots of the teeth is a substance which, both chemically and physically, is closely allied to bone. This external covering is known as the *cementum*, and while generally regarded as being confined to the roots of the teeth, by some it is considered to extend to and completely invest the crowns during the early part of their existence, in this latter location being known as the enamel cuticle, or membrane of Nasmyth.

Generally speaking, the cementum begins by a thin margin at the neck of the tooth or cervical line. It may commence at the free enamel margin of the crown, or it may slightly overlap this structure. It is thinnest at the neck of the tooth, and gradually increases in thickness as the apex of the root is approached. In teeth with closely associated roots the cementum frequently extends from one root to the other, resulting in a firm, osseous union. Histologically considered, the structure of cementum, like ordinary bone, consists of a gelatinous, basal substance, combined with the salts of lime, and of numerous little hollow spaces—*lacunæ*. Branching in every direction from the lacunæ are many minute processes—*canaliculi*.

*The Matrix*.—The matrix is so nearly identical with that of

bone that it is with difficulty that they can be distinguished. By decalcification it retains its form and structure, and by the intimate blending of organic and inorganic substances it is provided with hardness, solidity, and elasticity. Calcium salts and collagenous fibrils, united by a small amount of cement-substance, in finer or coarser bundles, compose the ground-substance, or matrix, of cementum.

Let us first take up the study of this tissue at different periods

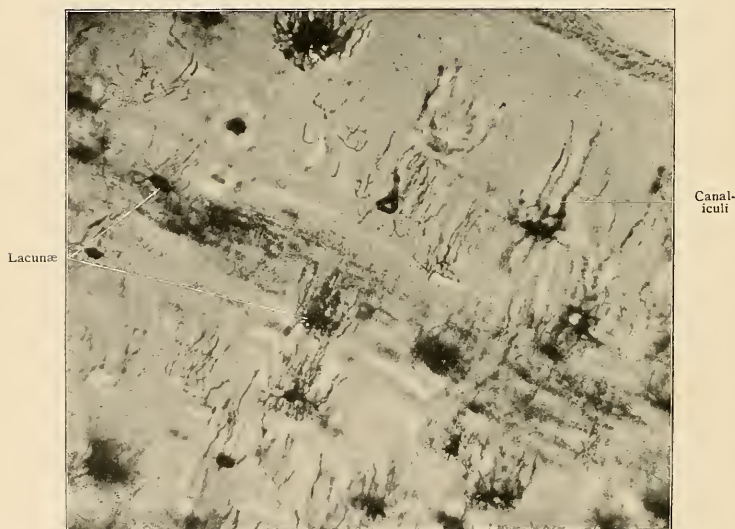


FIG. 284.—CEMENTUM FROM ROOT OF MOLAR.  $\times 200$ .

of its existence, and in this manner learn of its character, its mode of development, and the changes which take place as its growth proceeds. The striated markings of the tissue have led to the belief that there are, during the process of cementification, periods of activity and periods of rest or little activity. An examination of the structure under low power (Fig. 285) shows the incremental lines placed, with more or less regularity, one

beyond the other, and when thus studied adds much to the strength of the theory of interrupted development.

Figure 286 is prepared from a developing deciduous incisor three months after birth. At this period the developing organ is made up of enamel and dentin alone, the process of cementification not yet being under way. The establishment of the dentinal periphery, which surface is unchangeable, provides a basis for the first layer of cementum generated by the cementoblasts, which at this period are forming about the inner wall of

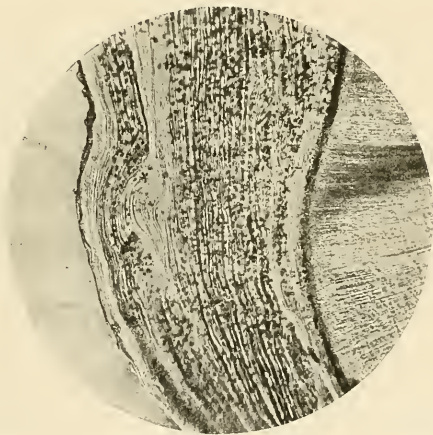


FIG. 285.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION THROUGH ROOT OF HUMAN MOLAR.  
INCREMENTAL LINES OF CEMENTUM.  $\times 30$ .

the tooth-follicle. In close proximity to the surface the interglobular spaces are observed somewhat widely distributed, and proportionately large in size, resulting in a surface poorly calcified and forming a ready attachment for the cemental tissue. Figure 287 shows the process of cementification under way, the section being prepared from a six-month-old tooth. In an examination of the ground-substance of this developing tissue there is an unbroken granular appearance, possessing neither striations, fibers, nor cement-corpuscles. This appearance is one which persists in the oldest or first-formed stratum, and is again

noticeable in the outermost or youngest stratum. While the oldest stratum or strata retain this primary character, this can not be said of those subsequently laid upon it, for they successively develop in their matrix the partially calcified cells and fibers from the formative tissue.

Figure 288, taken from a one-year-old tooth, shows a further advance in the process of cementification. Many of the transverse fibers of the alveolodental membrane are observed penetrating the developing tissue, and will, at a later period, by their

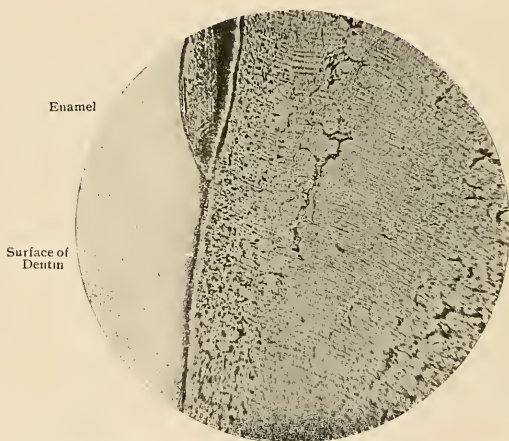


FIG. 286.—SECTION THROUGH DEVELOPING INCISOR, THREE MONTHS AFTER BIRTH.  
× 30.

partial calcification, become a part of its substance. Already there has been established an intimate blending of the cemental tissues with the dentinal tissues through the medium of the granular layer, and by the further calcification of the latter this union gradually becomes more thorough. Figure 289 illustrates three distinct zones of developing cementum: the older unbroken granular zone at A, now beautifully cemented to the granular layer; a second or intermediate zone, B, having encapsuled within its ground-substance many of its formative cells; and an outer zone, C, but recently laid down, showing



numerous, longitudinal, wave-like striations, emblematic of the cementoblastic activity. In this outer zone the minute laminations disappear as the tissue becomes more thoroughly calcified and the matrix gradually partakes of the nature of the older tissue.

The position occupied by the cementum on the root has much to do with its character. In the region of the cervix the cement-corpuscles are few in number, and when present possess extremely short and irregular processes. In the region of the apex the structure is much more complex in character, longitudinal

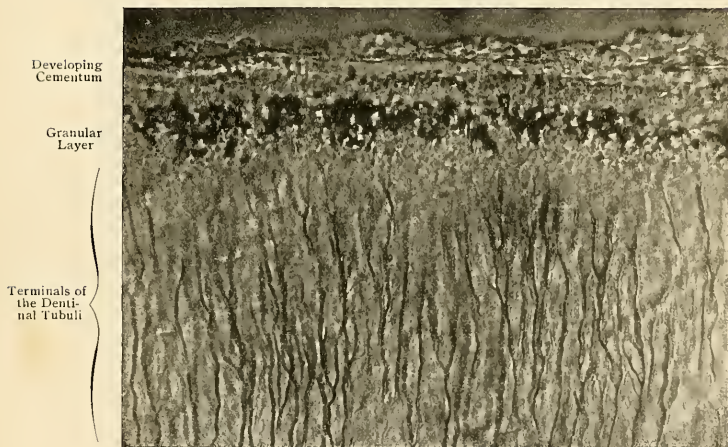


FIG. 287.—DEVELOPING CEMENTUM, FROM SIX-MONTH-OLD TOOTH.  $\times 200$ .

striæ, transverse fibers, cement-corpuscles, and zones of apparently unbroken granular matrix all serving to this end.

To continue the study of this tissue let us examine in detail the lamellæ, the cement-corpuscles, and the cement-fibers.

*The Lamellæ.*—We are told that the lamellæ are about the same in number over all parts of the tooth-root, but that they are much thinner at the neck than at the apex. In addition to this they are usually considered as running parallel, or nearly parallel, to the surface of the dentin. While these statements might, and probably do, describe the disposition of the lamellæ

in young cementum, they do not apply with so much certainty to the conditions after the adult period. The lamellæ in the

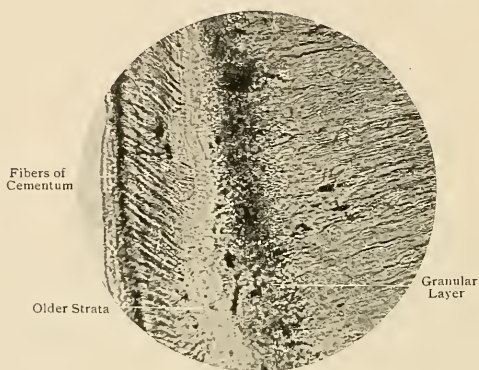


FIG. 288.—SECTION THROUGH ONE-YEAR-OLD TOOTH.  $\times 60$ .

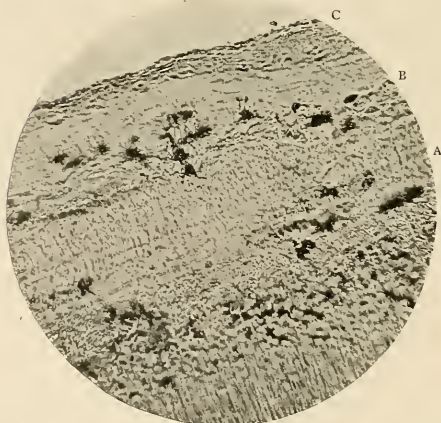


FIG. 289.—DEVELOPING CEMENTUM, FROM TRANSVERSE SECTION OF BICUSPID.  $\times 100$ .

region of the apex are not only of greater width, but are usually greater in number than those occupying the cervix of the same root.

Figure 290 is prepared from a transverse section of an adult bicuspid in the region of the apex, and shows how the disposition of the lamellæ may vary in thin, normal cementum. At A, which represents the granular union of the cementum with the dentin, the incremental lines are observed to follow the surface of the dentin. As the center of the area is approached this regularity is much interfered with, some of the lamellæ being discontinued, others greatly thickened, while the field, taken in its entirety, exhibits anything but regularity in the



FIG. 290.—TRANSVERSE SECTION FROM ROOT OF BICUSPID, SHOWING VARIATION IN THE DISPOSITION OF THE LAMELLÆ.  $\times 40$ .

laying down of the different strata. This same condition may be observed in longitudinal section. While the lamellæ are usually characteristic of the cemental tissue in general, they are seldom found in interdental cementum, or that growth which takes place between roots, resulting in their fusion (Fig. 291). This, of course, refers to the tissue as formed between closely associated roots of an individual tooth, and not to that union which sometimes takes place between the roots of different teeth. The interdental tissue previously referred to appears to

have many characteristics common to itself; thus, the cement-corpuscles are peculiar in form, fibers are few in number, and, as before stated, the lamellæ are not decided.

*Cement-corpuscles.*—Many of the cementoblasts of the peridental membrane, like the osteoblasts of the periosteum, become encapsuled within the developing tissue, and persist as irregularly shaped spaces, filled with a protoplasmic mass, and are known as cement-corpuscles. These correspond to the lacunæ of bone, but, unlike these, are very variable in size, in form, and



FIG. 291.—TRANSVERSE SECTION THROUGH FUSED ROOTS OF MOLAR TOOTH, SHOWING INTERDENTINAL CEMENTUM.  $\times 30$ .

in the number and direction of their processes. Figure 284 shows a number of cemental lacunæ and canaliculi. In the majority of instances the body of the corpuscle will be found to be oval or slightly oblong, with its long axis parallel to the surface; but it is by no means uncommon to find them very irregular in outline, with the greatest diameter in the opposite direction. The processes are quite variable in length and irregular in their course, and, while there is a general disposition for them to extend toward the surface, they in many instances radiate in various directions. All of these features are in contradistinction

to the lacunæ and canaliculi of bone, which are placed with much more regularity in the osseous matrix, the corpuscles being oblong or cylindric in outline, with their processes about equally distributed in every direction, and uniting directly and positively with the canaliculi of neighboring lacunæ. As previously stated, the cement-corpuscles are very variable in outline, this difference in form appearing to be much influenced by the part of the tooth examined. The younger corpuscles (Fig. 292), or those associated with the outer strata, are usually distinctly outlined and

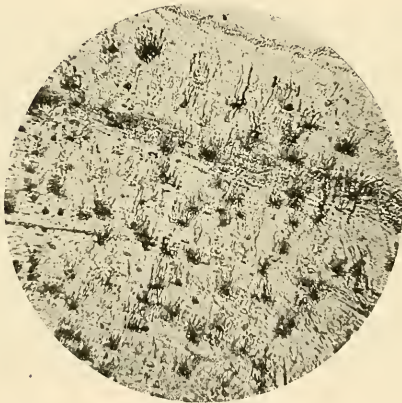


FIG. 292.—CEMENT-CORPUSCLES OF OUTER OR YOUNGER STRATA.  $\times 40$ .

provided with delicate processes, the majority of which are directed toward the surface. In the older strata the outlines of the corpuscles are much more irregular, the processes short and extremely clumsy.

The proportionate distribution of the corpuscles to the various parts of the tooth-root is as follows: The innermost or oldest zone and the outermost or youngest zones contain but few; in the intervening strata they are most abundant, especially in the region of the apex, becoming less numerous in passing crownward. In interdental cementum the corpuscles are somewhat



regularly distributed throughout the ground-substance adjacent to the granular layer, but near the center of this confused mass of imperfectly calcified tissue they are seldom present. When the interdental space is slight, peculiarly formed corpuscles are often observed (Fig. 293), provided with a long, rod-like, central portion or trunk, from which are given off numerous tree-like branches, the terminals of which are frequently lost in the granular layer upon either side.

*Cement-fibers.*—In a manner similar to that in which the cementoblasts become encapsuled within the developing ce-

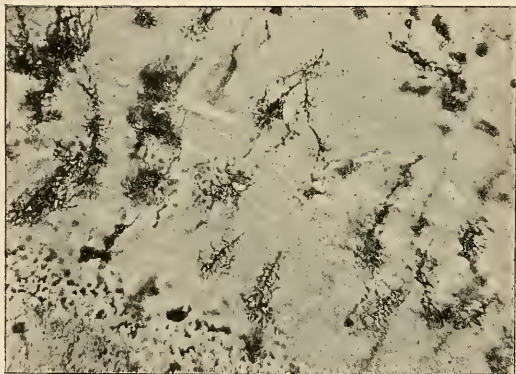


FIG. 293.—CEMENT-CORPUSCLES COMMON TO INTERDENTAL CEMENT.  $\times 100$ .

mental tissue forming the cement-corpuscles, many of the fibers of the periodontal membrane undergo a like transformation, and are found in the tissue as more or less imperfectly calcified fibers transversely disposed. By many writers these filamentary, thread-like structures have been compared to the delicate, net-like processes which pass through the concentric lamellæ of bone, serving to hold them together and designated as Sharpey's fibers; but, according to Black, these are the principal fibers of the alveolodental periosteum, and, as already stated, become a part of the cemental tissue during its evolution. In figure 294 the fibers are shown under high power; A represents the



primary or older stratum of the tissue, and it is from the outer margin of this zone that the fibers first make their appearance, passing more or less directly in the direction of the surface until the next incremental line is reached, at which point they gradually disappear, but recur in the succeeding lamellæ. There is a marked disposition for the fibers of each concentric lamella to keep within its borders, or, in other words, to become individualized; but in many instances they pass through from one lamella to another, and occasionally extend unbroken through the entire thickness of the tissue. It occasionally happens that

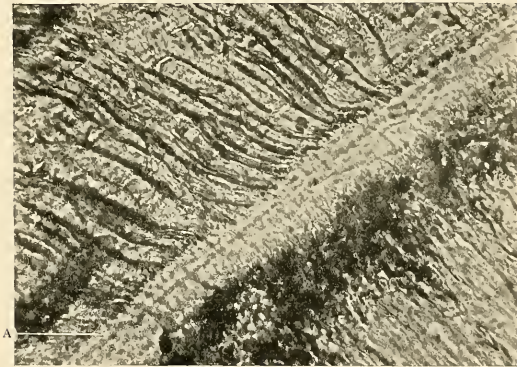


FIG. 294.—TRANSVERSE SECTION THROUGH ROOT OF MOLAR, SHOWING CEMENTAL FIBERS.  $\times 300$ .

the fibers are plentifully distributed to a region comprising three or four lamellæ, followed by a zone of similar proportions in which they are entirely absent. The cement-fibers considered, as the partially calcified residue of the principal fibers of the periodontal membrane, would naturally assume a general direction relative to their manner of distribution before this change had taken place, and in most instances they are thus disposed. In figure 295, taken from the center of a long axis of a growing bicuspid, the disposition of the fibers, which are alone observed in the second lamella, is slightly crownward. The inclination

for the fibers to be thus disposed is most pronounced in young cementum, but after middle life, or at a period when the tissue has greatly increased in thickness, the course of the fibers, even in the same locality, is greatly at variance.

In figure 288, also from a young tooth, the fibers are shown springing directly from the peridental membrane, with their free extremities penetrating this tissue. This illustration is prepared from a transverse section in the cervical region, and the inclination of the fibers is such as to warrant the belief that they were some of those whose function it has been to return



FIG. 295.

the tooth to its normal position when slightly rotated upon itself. Another class of fibers common to the cement-tissue are those which appear to be grouped in bundles, springing more or less regularly, at intervals, from the granular layer and penetrating the basement layer of the cementum as though serving to tie this tissue to the periphery of the dentin. In figure 296 a number of these bundles are shown at A, B, and C. While the field is but a small proportion of the circumference of the root, they are observed, under low power, to be distributed in a like manner to all parts. These circumferential fibers, as they

may be called, are also observed in longitudinal section, being distributed with considerable regularity throughout the whole extent of the root. They are also present in the tissue at the earliest period at which its character may be studied, the individual bundles at this time being proportionately larger. These might be, and probably are, considered as prolongations from the dentinal fibers, but it is doubtful if the true fibers of the dentin are ever found penetrating the cementum.

*Cementification.*—We have seen in the study of the develop-

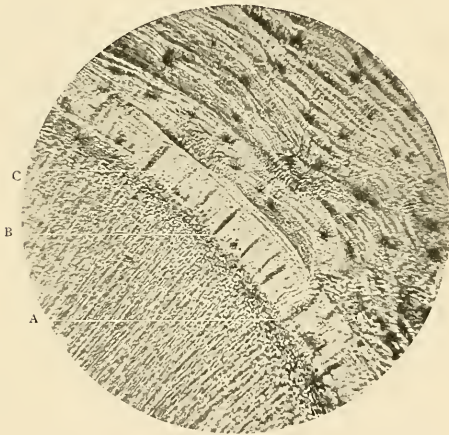


FIG. 296.

ment of the teeth, that the tooth-generating organs were confined in a closed sac or follicle, and while the walls of this sac were not directly interested in the calcification of the dentin or enamel, this can not be said of the cementum. Attention has also been directed to the fact that at the time of the eruption of the crown of the tooth a portion of the root only is calcified. As the growth of the root continues, the follicular wall becomes closely adherent to it. Upon the inner face of this vascular membrane a layer of osteoblastic cells (cementoblasts) is generated, and as a result of the calcification of these cells the cementum is formed. It

will thus be seen that the process of cementification is but a slightly modified form of subperiosteal bone development. At the beginning of cementum calcification the diameter of the dentin of the root is as great as it will ever be, all additions to its bulk taking place from within. But while the diameter of the dentin is thus fixed, the diameter of the root is increased by the additional layers of cementum as they are deposited upon its surface. As previously stated, a single layer of cementoblasts is first formed in the membrane surrounding the root, these soon becoming inclosed in a spherule of lime. By the time this has taken place another layer makes its appearance, assuming all the characteristics of the first formed layer. Other layers are formed in turn until the cementum assumes its mature thickness.

**The Dental Pulp** (Fig. 297).—The tooth-pulp, or formative organ of the dentin, occupies the central or pulp-cavity, and in the fully developed tooth assumes a general outline closely corresponding to the exterior of the organ.\* Along with its primary function of generating the dentin, it becomes the medium through which this structure receives its vascular and nervous supply.

Histologically considered, the pulp may be described as a mucus-like, protoplasmic matrix, containing delicate connective-tissue fibers not formed into bundles and numerous nucleated cells, the latter being especially numerous on the periphery of the pulp, or that portion which comes in contact with the dentin. The cells are not closely enough associated to form a complete tissue in themselves, but are found embedded in a mucoid matrix, with always a definite space between them. In general the cells are elongated or spindle-shaped, with a delicate, hair-like process attached to either extremity. In the pulp-chamber the cells vary somewhat in outline, in some instances being spheroid, in others appearing as slender filaments, so that the cell proper can scarcely be distinguished from its processes. A third class of cells may be met with, from which three or more fila-

---

\* The pulp not only occupies the central cavity in the tooth-crown, but the canals of the roots as well; therefore the form of the pulp corresponds to the outline of the pulp-cavity, already described.

ments are given off. As stated, the distribution of cells varies considerably in different parts of the pulp, this being true not only as regards numbers, but also as to the relations existing between the cells. In the coronal portion of the pulp the position assumed by each individual cell appears to be without regard to the position of neighboring cells, while in that portion of the pulp occupying the root-canals the cells are arranged parallel with the length of the root. The cells are least in



FIG. 297.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION THROUGH HUMAN CUSPID, SHOWING TOOTH-PULP.—  
(After Gysi.)  $\times 10$

number in the interior of the pulp, but gradually become more plentiful as the periphery is approached. (See Cells of Dentin Papilla, page 305.)

*The Odontoblasts* (Fig. 298).—The most active cells of the pulp are those directly on its periphery, in contact with the dentin, and known as the odontoblasts. The odontoblastic layer, otherwise known as the *membrana eboris*, is composed of a single row of cells, each of which contains, near the extremity most distant from the dentin, a well-defined nucleus. They are



large, elongated cells, each furnished with three sets of fibers or processes—the dentinal process, the pulpal process, and the lateral process. The dentinal process or processes—there may be more than one present—communicate with the deeper-lying cells of the pulp, while by means of the lateral processes the cells are brought into communication with neighboring cells. The processes given off in the direction of the dentin, or the



FIG. 298.—TRANSVERSE SECTION THROUGH PULP. BLOOD-VESSELS AND NERVES CROSS-CUT.

dentinal processes, may be one for each cell, in which case they are of considerable size, and are inclined to taper as they enter the substance of the dentin. Again, a single cell may give off a number of smaller processes in this direction. The odontoblasts vary much in form according to their functional activity. Before the period of dentinification they are spheroid or pyriform, during the period of calcification the dentin extremity becomes somewhat flattened and square, while in advanced years



they again return to their primitive, rounded form. Covering the entire surface of the pulp like an epithelium, the odontoblasts are especially closely associated at the end nearest the dentin, forming an unbroken layer, while the pulpal extremities are inclined to assert their individuality by disassociation.

*Blood-vessels of the Pulp.*—The pulp is richly supplied with blood-vessels, forming networks extending principally in a

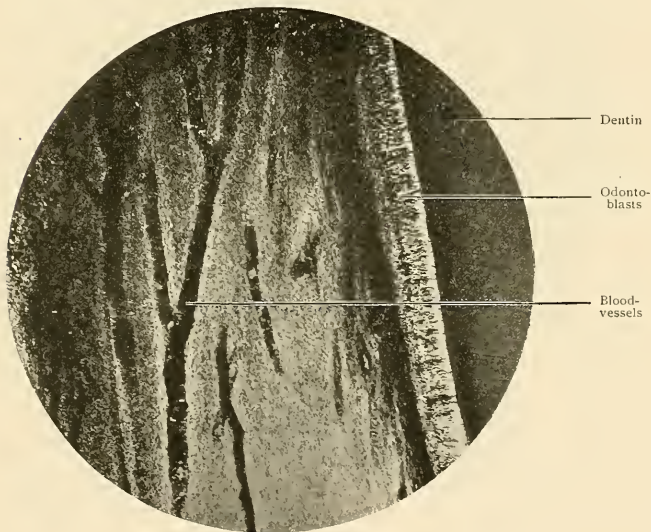


FIG. 299.—PULP AND DENTIN IN LONGITUDINAL SECTION.

direction parallel to the long axis of the tooth, and finally terminate in a capillary plexus closely associated with the odontoblastic layer. The veins of the pulp are ordinarily somewhat larger than the arteries, and form numerous anastomoses. This organ appears to be destitute of lymphatics—at least, none are known to occur in its substance. The blood-vessels of the pulp are provided with a longitudinal layer of thinly distributed

muscular fiber, but otherwise the walls of the vessels are noted for their delicacy.

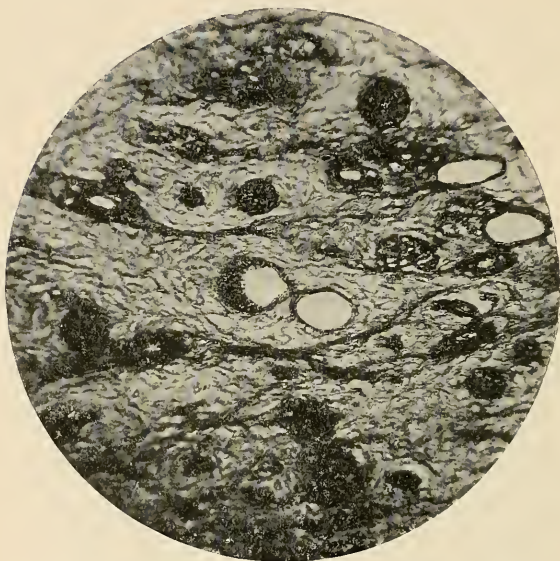


FIG. 300.—SECTION THROUGH PULP. FIG. 299 IN TRANSVERSE SECTION.

*Nerves of the Pulp.*—After entering the apical foramen either by one large trunk or by two or more minute ones, the fibers pursue a parallel course, breaking up but little or giving off but few fibers in that portion of the pulp confined to the canal. When the expanded or coronal portion of the pulp is reached, numerous subdivisions occur which are distributed in every direction, and ending in a rich plexus beneath the odontoblastic layer, or *membrana eboris*. In the body of the pulp the fibers are medullated, but those occupying the periphery are non-medullated and supposed to pass into the dentinal tubes. While this latter hypothesis is in all probability correct, such a distribution of the germinal fibers has never been definitely demonstrated. Two investigators (Ball and Magitot) claim to have

partially satisfied themselves in regard to the final distribution of the non-medullated fibers. The former states that he has traced these fibers into continuity with the larger medullated fibers in the deeper pulp-tissue, and claims to have found them passing through the membrana eboris, beyond which point they assumed a direction parallel to the dentinal tubules. This theory is controverted by Magitot, who claims that the dentinal fibers are, in a measure, themselves prolongations of the nerves, being so constituted through the medium of the branched stellate cells

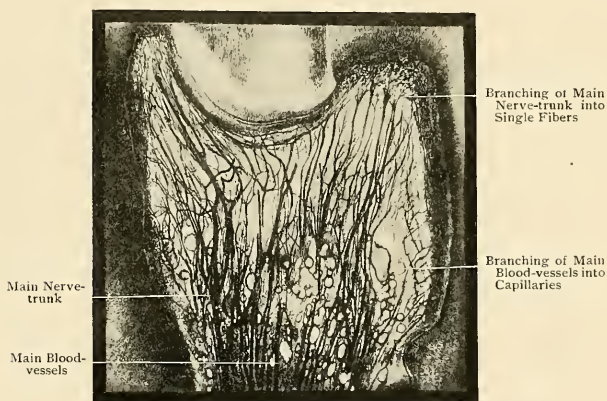


FIG. 301.—DISTRIBUTION OF BLOOD-VESSELS AND NERVES TO THE PULP OF HUMAN MOLAR.—(After Gysi.)  $\times 20$ .

which lie immediately beneath the membrana eboris, and by which the nerves are made continuous.

**Nasmyth's Membrane.**—Nasmyth's membrane, otherwise known as the enamel cuticle or persistent dentinal capsule, is an exceedingly thin and peculiarly indestructible structure, entirely covering the enamel. As to the presence of this membrane, which can be demonstrated only by chemic detachment, there appears no doubt, but in regard to its origin and definite structure much difference of opinion has been expressed. By some writers (Tomes and Magitot) it is main-

tained that it is continuous with, and similar in structure to, the cementum covering the root, being an extension of the outermost layer in the region of the neck of the tooth; and, in view of the fact that lacunæ are found in its substance, this theory would appear to be correct. On the other hand, it is considered to be a product of the epithelium (Huxley and Kölliker) and in no manner connected with the cementum. In the opinion of the author, it would be difficult to understand how the theory advanced by Tomes could be accepted. During the entire period of saccular development the crown of the tooth is in close relationship to the enamel organ, this structure intervening between the forming enamel and the wall of the tooth-sac, from which the cementum is developed. It would, therefore, appear that this membrane is generated from the external epithelial layer of the enamel organ by a change in the character and form of these cells. Sudduth attributes its formation to a metamorphosis of the ameloblastic layer, the prismatic cells assuming a horizontal direction. The ameloblasts are observed to be prismatic in form up to the point at which the enamel prisms are yet unfinished, but as the surface is approached they are observed to shorten and widen, and near the gum-margin they assume a longitudinal direction instead of being at right angles to the body of the crown. Mrs. Emily Whitman has devoted much time to the study of the development of mammalian teeth, and appears to be of the opinion that the cuticula dentis is the result of a change in the form and character of the enamel cells, this metamorphosis taking place either before or after calcification of the underlying tooth-tissues. Nasmyth's membrane shows many characteristics which differ from those of the body of enamel subjacent to it, serving as an indestructible, highly polished surface-capping to the enamel prisms. The indestructible nature of this membrane by reagents would appear to indicate that in structure it is closely akin to the structure lining the dentinal tubules, the lacunæ, etc.

**Alveolodental Membrane** (Fig. 300).—As a general description of this membrane has already been given in part I, it alone remains to treat of its histologic character, which may best be accomplished by first referring to the duties

which it has to perform. These may be divided into three classes—functional, physical, and sensory. The functional office is accomplished through its cellular elements—the osteoblasts and cementoblasts; the physical office is performed by the fibrous elements, through which the tooth is fixed in its position; and the sensory office through the abundance of nerves, which are richly distributed to all parts of the membrane. We, therefore, find in this structure, besides connective tissue, cells, fibers, nerves, and blood-vessels. The principal cells, as already stated,

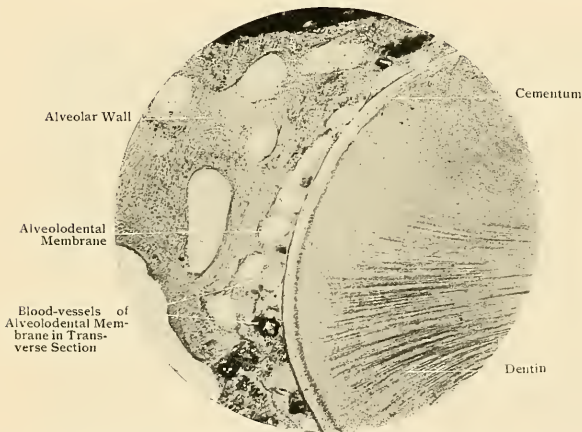


FIG. 302.—TRANSVERSE SECTION THROUGH ROOT OF HUMAN INCISOR AND SURROUNDING ALVEOLAR WALL, WITH ALVEOLODENTAL MEMBRANE INTERVENING.  $\times 40$ .

are the osteoblasts and cementoblasts, but there are also present fibroblasts and osteoclasts.

*The osteoblasts*, which are instrumental in the upbuilding of a portion of the alveolar walls, are found lying against the bone, between the principal fibers. These cells do not appear to be evenly distributed, being numerous and crowded together in some parts, while others will appear to be almost destitute of them. They are most plentiful in the young subject, and seldom present at all in old age. In youth the alveolodental membrane is thickest, and, as the building of bone occurs on the inner wall



of the alveolus, it can only progress as the membrane becomes reduced in thickness. The osteoblasts are polygonal cells, inclining to the oval form, and vary greatly in size, with their longest diameter at right angles with the surface of the forming bone. During the period of the development of the young alveolar wall they are inclined to be crowded together, and are frequently much distorted from pressure upon one another. As age advances this condition becomes less pronounced, and the cells separate into groups.

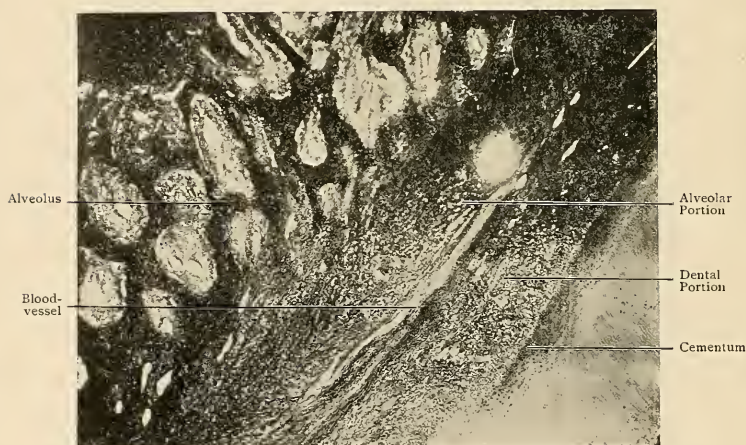


FIG. 323.—SECTION THROUGH ROOT OF TOOTH, ALVEOLODENTAL MEMBRANE, AND ALVEOLUS.

*The Cementoblasts.*—Stationed upon the opposite side of the membrane, or that in contact with the root of the tooth, are another class of cells—the cementoblasts—or those cells which are concerned in the formation of the cementum. Like the osteoblasts, these cells are found lying between the principal fibers of the root-membrane. They differ in form from the osteoblasts, notwithstanding that they have a similar function. Instead of the polygonal form common to the osteoblasts, we



find these cells to be more or less flattened, with outlines somewhat irregular. Extending from the body of the cell, which contains a well-defined nucleus, are a number of irregular processes, which penetrate the neighboring fibers or the interfibrous substance. Unlike the osteoblasts, the cementoblasts appear at all times to be evenly distributed over the surface of the cementum, occupying all the space except that taken up by the fibers as they leave the cementum. As to the development of

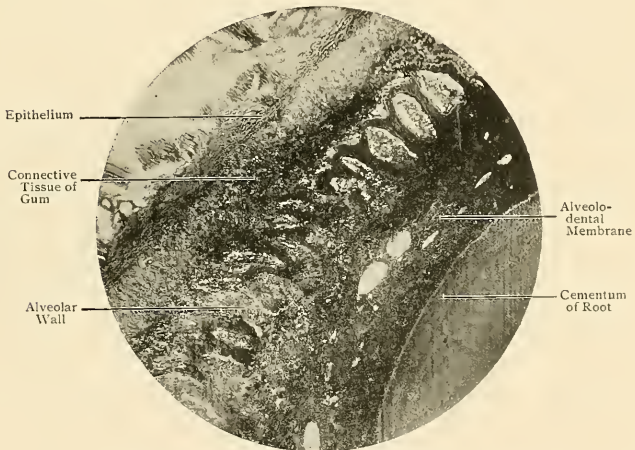


FIG. 304.—TRANSVERSE SECTION THROUGH ROOT OF TOOTH, ALVEOLODENTAL MEMBRANE, THIN WALL OF ALVEOLUS, AND GINGIVAL TISSUE.

the osteoblasts and cementoblasts, they appear to be carried to the fibrous meshes of the membrane by the blood as leukocytes or ameboid cells, after which, by differentiation, they become fitted for the development of bone or cementum, assuming their respective places against the surface of one or the other of these structures.

*Fibroblasts and Osteoclasts.*—Fibroblasts and osteoclasts are also present in the alveolodental membrane, the former for the purpose of the increase or renewal of the fibrous tissue, the

latter being functionally concerned in the removal of a part of the alveolar walls to accommodate the ever-varying position of the teeth, or acting in a similar manner upon the cementum of the root. The osteoclasts, or giant-cells, are generally inclined to the round or oblong form, and usually contain a number of nucleoli. They vary much in size, and are seldom branched or provided with processes. In addition to the four classes of cells already mentioned as being present within the meshes of the fibrous tissue of the root-membrane, there is another

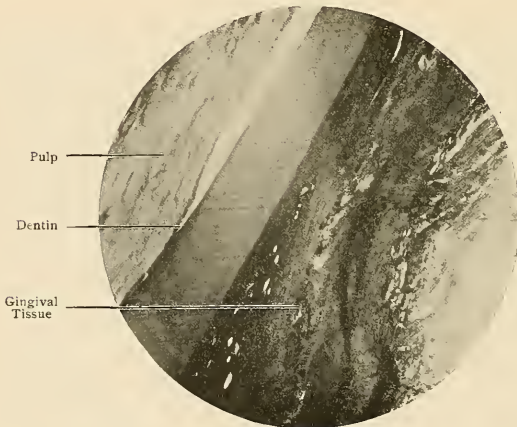


FIG. 305.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION THROUGH ROOT OF GROWING TOOTH NEAR THE CERVIX.

class, present, however, during youth only, which appears to be in course of development, and, therefore, without apparent function.

*The Fibers of the Alveolodental Membrane.*—The principal fibers of the alveolodental membrane are those which extend from the cementum on one side to the alveolar wall on the other, and become firmly fixed at either extremity by penetrating the calcified structures. The fibers are all of the white, or inelastic, connective-tissue variety. It is by means of the connective-tissue fibers that the actual attachment of the membrane both to the

bone and to the cementum takes place, the fibers passing directly into the hard tissues, which they traverse for some distance, being here known as Sharpey's fibers.

The arrangement of the fibers is somewhat different over the various parts of the root. In the region of the gingival margin they pass out from the substance of the cementum, retaining their solid form or dividing into fasciculi of finer fibers. In general the fibers lie parallel with one another, deviating only to give place to blood-vessels and nerves. There

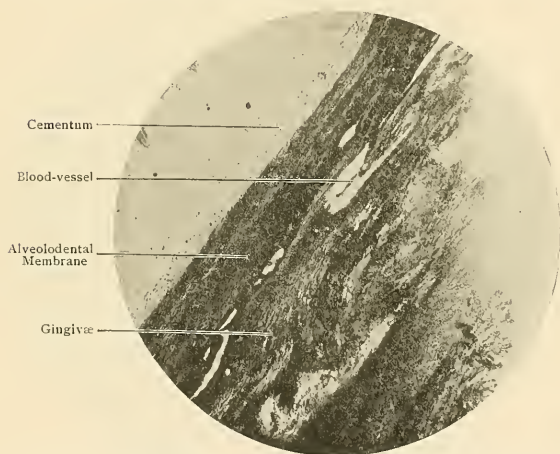


FIG. 306.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION THROUGH ALVEOLODENTAL MEMBRANE, GINGIVAL TISSUE, AND ROOT OF TOOTH. CERVICAL DISTRICT.

is some variation in the distribution of the fibers about the different gingival surfaces. Upon the labial and lingual surfaces they pass out directly into the fibrous tissue of the gum, and soon become lost in this tissue. On the mesial and distal surfaces the fibers passing the lower margin of the alveolar wall join the fibers of the neighboring tooth. This disposition for the fibers to bend toward the adjacent tooth is first observed at the various angles of the gingival margin. All about the free border of the gum the fibers from the alveolodental

membrane assist in forming this tissue, which is covered by a dense epithelial coating of moderate thickness, surrounded or surmounted by the peridental fibers. As the border of the alveolar wall is approached, the fibers are observed to pass under the proper tissues of the gum, and unite with the outer periosteal layer overlying the outer alveolar wall. The fibers immediately within the alveolus are slightly inclined in an apical

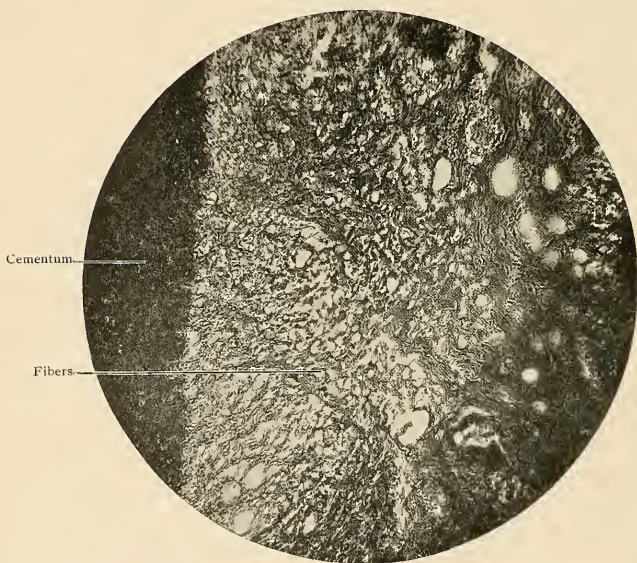


FIG. 307.—SECTION SHOWING FIBERS OF ALVEOLODENTAL MEMBRANE, ATTACHED TO AND PASSING OUT FROM THE CEMENTUM.

direction, while those occupying the central portion of the membrane, or that midway between the apex and the gingiva, pass nearly straight across from the cementum to the bone. It is in this locality that the largest and strongest fibers are found. As the apex of the root is approached the inclination of the fibers is crownward from the cementum to the alveolar wall. In this situation the single fibers are inclined to break up the fasciculi.



tissue, which is thus seen to be ordinary fibrous connective tissue, appears to pervade the entire membrane wherever sufficient space is found to permit of its presence. In some parts of the membrane this tissue appears to be more plentiful than the principal fibers themselves. The interfibrous tissue also forms an investment for the blood-vessels and nerves in addition to the tissues properly belonging to their walls.



## CHAPTER VI.

### EMBRYOLOGY OF THE MOUTH AND TEETH.

In the consideration of this subject it will be appropriate to briefly refer to general embryology, which includes an investigation into the mode of formation and the gradual development of the animal fetus. The history of the subject is replete with well-defined epochs, each of which represents for a period the theories or discoveries of some well-known investigator. While not a few of the older histologists were well informed in regard to very many important embryologic facts, their opinions varied greatly, and they were all for a time inclined to misinterpret certain vital points, and it was principally this latter fact which stimulated and encouraged further research.

Aristotle held views which were for a long time accepted as correct, his hypothesis being that all living creatures were generated in one of three ways: *i. e.*, the egg was deposited, incubated, and hatched (oviparous), or a fully formed and independent offspring was brought forth alive (viviparous), or a third, in which the being was accorded a spontaneous birth, this latter class including the lower order of animals, parasites, insects, etc. Little or no exception was taken to the first and second modes mentioned, but by persistent investigation it was gradually determined that the number of occurrences in which generation took place spontaneously was much less frequent than had at first been supposed. In fact it was for a time acknowledged that spontaneous generation was never responsible for the development of insects or animalcules. More recently the subject has again been taken up, and it is conceded at the present time that certain forms of uncertain infusoria are reproduced by a spontaneous subdivision of unicellular organisms (fission, fissipara).

Up to the time of Harvey (1631) there existed a misunder-

standing in regard to the similarity existing in the generation of species, be they of oviparous or viviparous origin. Previous to this there was supposed to be a distinct difference in the two modes of development, but Harvey's bold assertion that "all animals whatsoever, even the viviparous and man himself not excepted, are generated from ova," revolutionized the study of embryology, and established a fundamental principle (the magnitude and value of which was never known to him) through which all subsequent investigations were made blessed.

It is found, therefore, that the origin and a considerable portion of the early development of the embryo take place in a similar manner in all animals, from the impregnated egg of the female, and this being the case we are particularly favored in our early investigations by using the egg of a fowl. Therefore attention will be briefly directed to the history of the development of the chick.

Upon examining a longitudinal section of a hen's egg, in passing from the periphery toward the center the following structures are found: First, that part commonly known as the shell, which is made up of variable proportions of organic and inorganic substances. To provide for the early process of respiration this structure is amply porous to permit the free passage of gases from without inward, and vice versâ. The shell is made up of two distinct layers, but these, of course, are not directly or indirectly interested in the development of the embryo. Immediately within the shell is the shell membrane, which is likewise composed of two layers. These two layers are closely associated throughout their entire extent except in the district represented by the broad end of the egg; here they exhibit a marked tendency to separate, the outer layer remaining in close contact with the inner wall of the shell, while the inner layer remains as a direct covering to the white of the egg proper. In this manner an air chamber is formed which usually increases with the age of the egg.

Immediately within this is what is commonly known as the white of the egg, which upon careful examination exhibits a sort of laminated appearance.

The next layer is known as the yolk, or that part which is

essential to the production of the embryo, inclosed by a thin layer known as the vitelline membrane.

To simplify our study, let us banish from mind all other parts of the egg and continue by describing the early changes which take place in the yolk. In fact, it will be well at this time to consider that we have under discussion the development of an embryo, not particularly of the fowl, but of the mammalia as well. This spherical body may be compared to a single cell, that part which is known as the vitelline membrane, or *zona pellucida*, corresponding to the cell wall; the body of the yolk, or vitellus, representing the cell protoplasm, within this the germinal vesicle, for the cell nucleus, while the individualized central area of the vesicle is given up to the nucleolus or germinal spot. Without further considering this primitive cell, let us pass on to a description of the germinal membrane known as the *blastoderm*. The time at which this membrane makes its appearance is so variable in the different species that no allusion will be made to this part of the subject. Primarily the blastoderm which lies upon the internal surface of the vitelline membrane is composed of two layers, and from these two layers the embryo is generated. In a very short time a third layer makes its appearance, not, as might be supposed, upon one side or the other of those already present, but between them, constituting the three primary layers of the germinal membrane—the *epiblast*, *mesoblast*, and *hypoblast*. These three layers are found in connection with the early embryo of all vertebrates, if not in all invertebrates.

Following carefully the development of the embryo from this time, we find that the outer layer of cells (epiblast) is productive of the following tissues of the mouth: the epithelial lining of the cavity, and the enamel. From the middle layer (mesoblast) arises the dentin, all the connective tissue, blood-vessels, and lymphatics, together with the bones which form the framework of the mouth, while the inner layer (hypoblast) gives origin to the epithelial lining of the alimentary canal other than the oral cavity.

**The Buccal Cavity.**—The early appearance of the entrance to the alimentary canal is found in the formation of an open

cavity bounded by the primitive maxillary processes above and mandibular arch below.

The cavity thus formed is the common buccal space, the upper portion being the respiratory or nasal section, while below is the true mouth. The cavity of the mouth, as such, does not exist until these two are completely separated by the palatal plates forming the future roof of the mouth.

Figure 309 shows a vertical transverse section through this common buccal cavity. At this early period the lateral walls

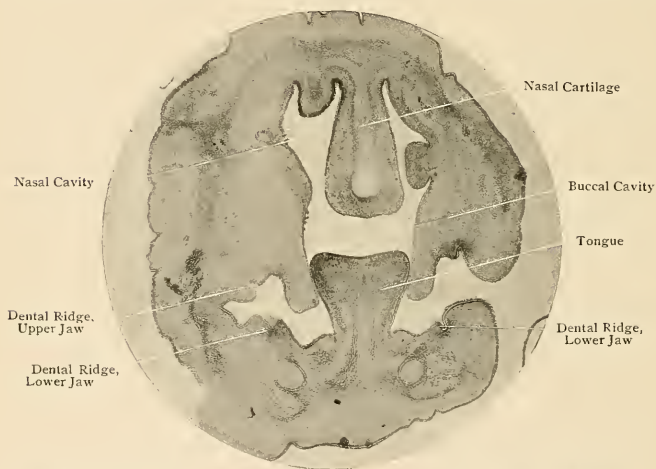


FIG. 309.—VERTICAL TRANSVERSE SECTION THROUGH HEAD OF HUMAN EMBRYO, ABOUT THE TENTH WEEK.  $\times 30$ .

and floor of the mouth are manifest by certain cellular elements, but the roof of the cavity, as already stated, is not complete until the palatal plates, now separated by the tongue, grow inward and unite at the median line.

**The Oral Cavity.—The Roof of the Mouth.**—When these two processes which arise from the mesoblast unite at the median line, they establish a permanent horizontal septum, dividing this part of the stomodeum into a respiratory or nasal section and an oral section, the mouth. The cells entering into

this part of the fetal head at this time (eighth to tenth week) are of three varieties, being connective-tissue cells, cartilage cells, and epithelial cells, the latter being distributed in a layer of varying thickness over those parts destined to become a part of the lining membrane of the mouth.

In figure 310 (twelfth week) the superior maxillary processes are shown united and the permanent separation between the mouth and nasal cavity established. This embryonal bridge is for

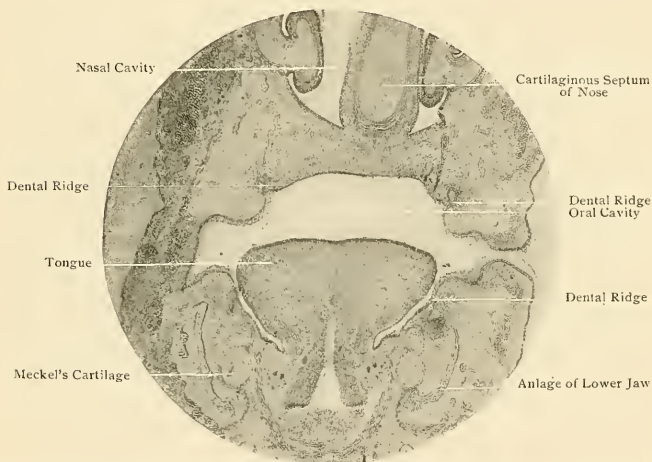


FIG. 310.—VERTICAL TRANSVERSE SECTION THROUGH HEAD OF HUMAN EMBRYO, ABOUT THE TWELFTH WEEK, SHOWING THE SINGLE BUCCAL CAVITY TRANSFORMED INTO THE ORAL AND NASAL CAVITIES.  $\times 30$ .

the most part made up of connective-tissue cells, about isolated bundles of which osteoblasts arrange themselves, resulting in the production of two intermembranous bony plates.

By the fourteenth week a further advance in the generation of the hard palate is noted, the septum now being largely composed of calcified tissue. The disposition for these primitive bony plates to exist as separate and distinct processes is exemplified at the median line by a definite separation formed by the connective-tissue sheath from which they are derived.

Covering the surface of the hard palate there now appears a thin layer of mucous membrane.

**The Floor of the Mouth.**—Having thus briefly noted the evolution of the roof of the mouth, let us next consider the floor of the cavity, the tongue and its attached muscles, together with considerable glandular tissue making up the bulk of this

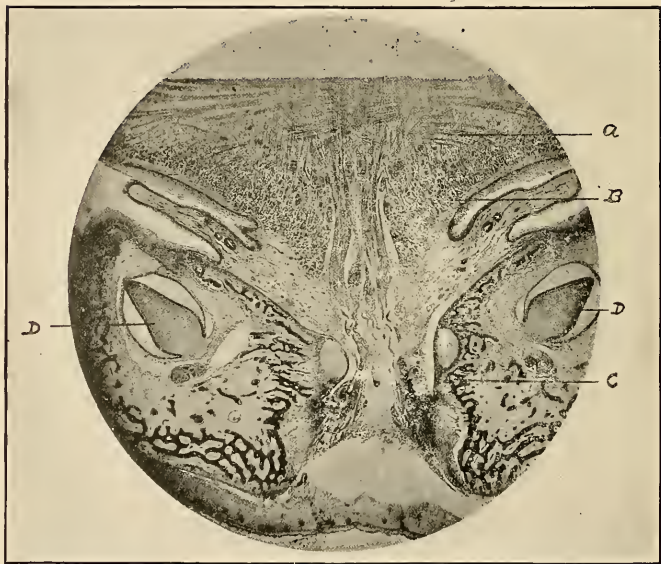


FIG. 311.—SECTION THROUGH BASE OF TONGUE AND LOWER JAW.  $\times 40$ .

district. Figure 311 is a vertical transverse section through the floor of the mouth about the tenth week in the human fetus, or at a period somewhat later than that shown in the previous illustration. An examination of the parts in general at a time prior to this is of little value, save the early preparation for the development of the teeth, which will be referred to later. The tissues and organs here shown will be recognized as the tongue (*A*), the glandular tissues (*B*), the forming jaw (*C*), with developing tooth-germs at *D D*.



The tongue appears on the floor of the mouth between the thirtieth and thirty-sixth days as a bud from the mesoblast covered by a layer of cells of epiblastic origin. The muscle-fibers, be they intrinsic or extrinsic, are all of the striated variety. In a very short time, and at a comparatively early period, the tongue becomes an independent organ, presenting most of the characteristics common to it after birth. Not a small portion of the floor of the mouth is made up of another class of tissue which,

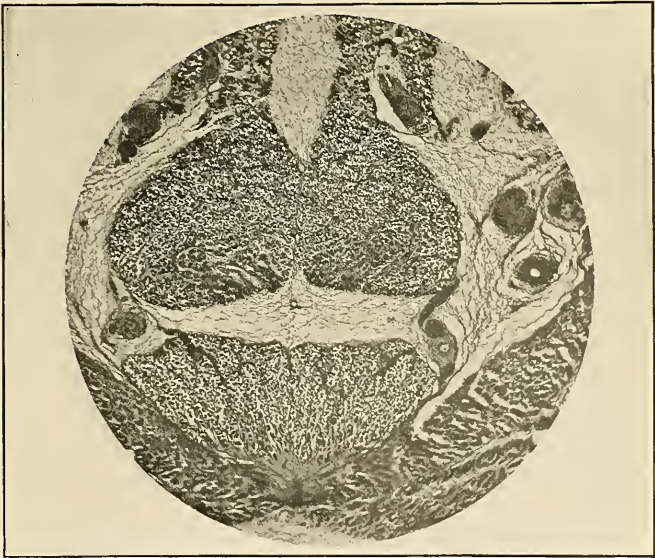


FIG. 312.—SECTION OF SUBLINGUAL DISTRICT.  $\times 100$ .

although eventually a distinct organism, is composed almost entirely of epithelium. These cells, together with the connective-tissue cells, and eventually blood-vessels, unite in the production of a true salivary gland, the sublingual. Figure 312 shows the early character of the tissue, together with its relation to surrounding parts. The section is one from the region of the premolars, and is bounded above by the tongue, laterally

by the borders of the jaw, and below by fibers of the mylohyoid and digastric muscles. Three distinct lobes or sections of the gland are observed, the two largest being separated by a reticular network of connective tissue.

The general character of these developing glands even at this early period (about the twelfth week) appears to be very similar to the matured organ, being composed of a number of small tubes emptying into a single duct, constituting a gland of the compound tubular variety.

Let us next give some consideration to the embryology of the mouth in its entirety; and to do this, it is necessary to make sections of the parts in various directions.

The growth of the cavity is usually studied, and probably to the best advantage, by vertical transverse sections, and attention will first be called to a number of sections made in this way, beginning at the lips and passing backward through the incisor region, and finally through the districts occupied respectively by the cuspids and molars. The period at which such an investigation is made has much to do with the character of the tissue involved, but the time best suited to the purpose is included between the fortieth and sixtieth days. At this time nearly all the tissues making up the organs and parts which enter into the construction of the cavity have advanced to such a degree of perfection that the investigation may proceed with considerable satisfaction.

Figure 313 shows a cross-section through one of the primitive labial folds about the period named. Little is to be observed in this district at this early period except the simple cells of three varieties which serve to make up the parts, but attention is at once attracted to the abundant thickness of the epithelium given to the lip.

If a section be made somewhat to the distal of that previously shown, a marked change in the relationship existing between the various cell layers is observed in a body of cells of another character, those which are destined to become the cartilage of Meckel, and about which the younger layer of cells of mucous membrane are observed outlining a new district.

If a section be made through this same location, say about the

forty-eighth day, a vast change in the appearance of the parts is noticed (Fig. 314). The buccal walls of the mouth have in a measure become complete by a union of the upper and lower sections, the union at this time being accomplished through the agency of the embryonal epithelium. A cartilaginous nasal septum has made its appearance, and active preparation for the ossification of the maxillæ is apparent. In the center of the sec-

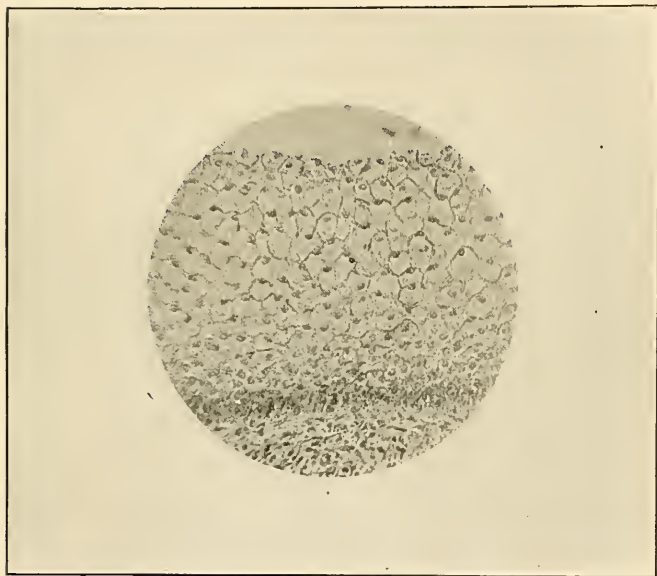


FIG. 313.—EMBRYONAL LABIAL MUCOUS MEMBRANE.

tion is a distinct body of cells forming Meckel's cartilage, and early preparations for the growth of the teeth may be seen at *a* by a dipping down of the surface epithelium.

A transverse section through the same district about the sixtieth day (Fig. 315) shows all the parts strongly differentiated. Calcification has taken place to a considerable extent in the lower jaw, the two halves being at this period, and for some months

afterward, separate and distinct. Many muscle bundles are observed beneath the jaw, and beyond these the integument with its numerous blood-vessels and nerves, most of which are seen in transverse section. A cross-section upon the same subject about the sixtieth day in the region of the cuspids finds the tissues and organs advanced to a certain degree of perfection. (See Fig. 311.) The tooth-germs of the cuspid teeth have their crowns out-



FIG. 314.—SECTION THROUGH BASE OF JAW.

lined by the cells composing them ; the tongue with its complex muscular arrangement has become a specialized and independent organ, while beneath it we see that product of the epiblast, the glandular structure, so plentifully supplied to the floor of the mouth in this locality.

Passing further back into the region of the molars, the appearance of the parts does not differ to any marked degree

from that in the cuspid district, except in the general distribution of the muscular fibers of the tongue, and the appearance of the submaxillary gland, here appearing in three distinct lobes or parts.

It has been previously stated that sections made in the direction of those already considered are usually employed to study these parts, but much is to be gained by supplementing these with sections made in other directions.



FIG. 315.—SECTION THROUGH THE WALL OF THE MOUTH OF AN EMBRYO, SIXTIETH DAY.

Figure 316 shows a longitudinal section, or one made from mesial to distal through the lower jaw at or near the median line, the parts included within the field being the labial folds at *A*, the mandible at *C*, the tongue at *D*, and a tooth-germ at *E*. An examination of the lips shows them to be covered with a varying thickness of embryonal epithelial cells which are con-



tinued backward over the future alveolar ridge and thence to the hard palate above, or over the floor of the mouth and the surface of the tongue below.

**Meckel's Cartilage.**—One of the earliest products of the mesoblast is that which results in the production of Meckel's cartilage, which is closely associated with the growth and early

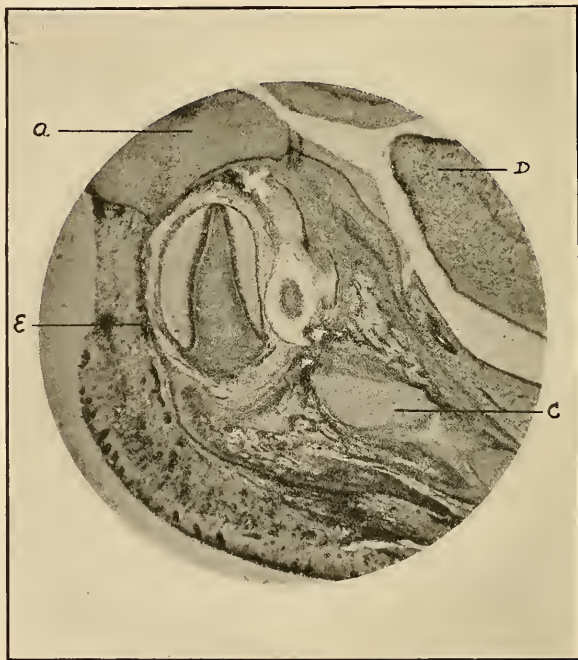


FIG. 316.—LONGITUDINAL SECTION THROUGH CHIN OF EMBRYO LAMB.

support of the lower jaw. In the beginning, as already pointed out, the mandibular and hyoid arches resemble one another, but soon after they become fully established they take on different functions, and with this become dissimilar. The first appearance of this cartilage as a distinct body of cells is found about



the middle of the second month, and when a transverse section of the jaw is made for the purpose of studying its location and environments (see Fig 317), it is found near the base of the fetal head, considerably below and to the outside of the base of the tongue. At mid-jaw it appears as a circular body of cells separated from the surrounding parts by a distinct layer of elongated

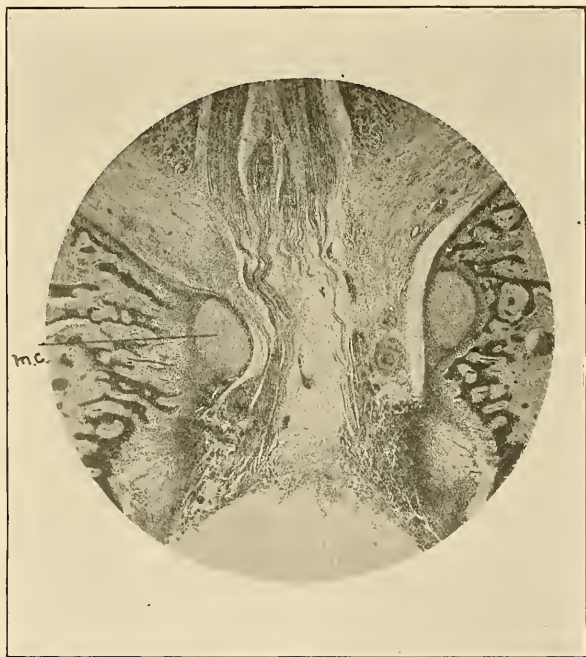


FIG. 317.—SECTION THROUGH BASE OF LOWER JAW, SHOWING MECKEL'S CARTILAGE.

cells. Even at this early period a portion of the bony structure of the jaw is outlined by an aggregation of connective-tissue cells, and the forming cartilage appears to subserve the purpose of controlling the outline of the future jaw. The bow-shape of the cartilage is manifest as we pass toward the symphysis by

the lateral halves approaching each other (Fig. 318), but the circular character of the cartilage in cross-section is still retained.

Figure 319 represents a section through the symphysis about the eighteenth week, and shows the two halves of the cartilage closely associated, but not united, the separation being by a layer of connective-tissue cells passing between the two. It will be noted also that the cartilage, instead of being near the



FIG. 318.—SECTION THROUGH LOWER JAW. *M. C.* Meckel's cartilage.

base of the jaw as in figure 318, now appears near the floor of the mouth.

Figure 320 shows the relations existing between the two halves of Meckel's cartilage and the growing mandible at the median line (*a*). It also illustrates how little the development of the bone is dependent upon the cartilage, the growth of the former being in this district far below and apparently dis-

tinct from the latter. Here, as in the upper jaw, the periosteal cells from either side are observed to unite at the symphysis and pass as a somewhat thickened layer between the two bones, the only difference in the final change which takes place between the two being that in the upper jaw a suture results, while in the lower jaw a layer of solid bone is formed. The character of this cartilaginous framework as well as the cells which



FIG. 319.—MECKEL'S CARTILAGE (*M. C.*) AT THE SYMPHYSIS.

divide the two halves is shown in figure 321, the cartilage cells being oblong or cylindrical, with a bountiful supply of intercellular substance, while the connective-tissue cells are oblong or spindle-shaped.

As soon as ossification in the jaw takes place to any extent, the cartilage begins to atrophy, that portion lying next to the jaw degenerating first, so that by the tenth or twelfth week it

has entirely disappeared, but before this takes place we find it surrounded by the periosteum, and finally completely inclosed within the bone.

Figure 322 shows the character of the cartilage cells about the time that they are beginning to atrophy. It will be observed that the cells are inclined to a change in form, and that they are

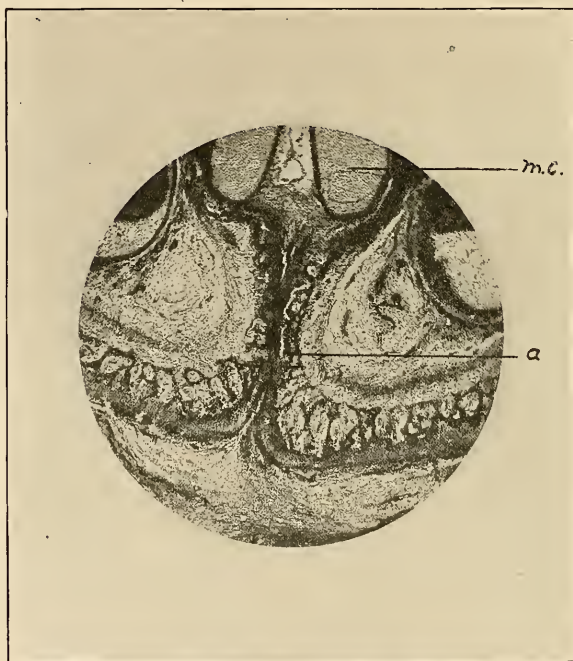


FIG. 320.—OSSIFICATION OF THE MANDIBLE AT THE MEDIAN LINE.

proportionately larger with large nuclei and nucleoli. *A* represents the district nearest the jaw, and the cells in this region have already lost their characteristic outline.

**Further Consideration on the Subject of Tooth Development.**—One phase of the subject to which special attention will be given in this chapter is that which denotes the period at

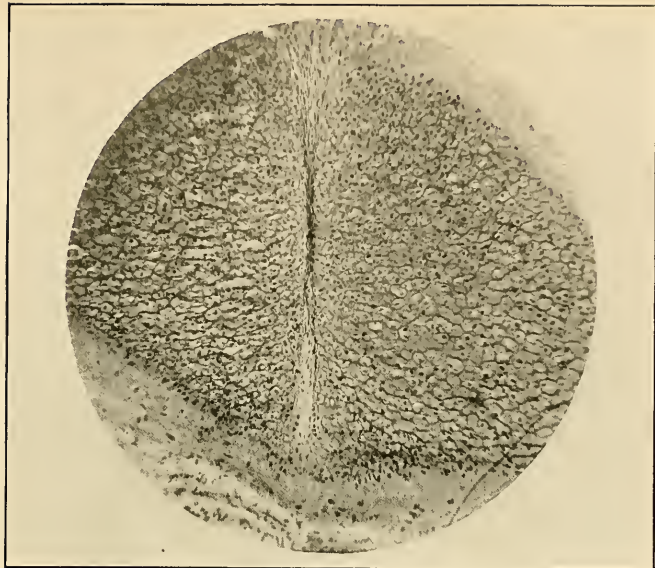


FIG. 321.—SECTION OF MECKEL'S CARTILAGE AT MEDIAN LINE.

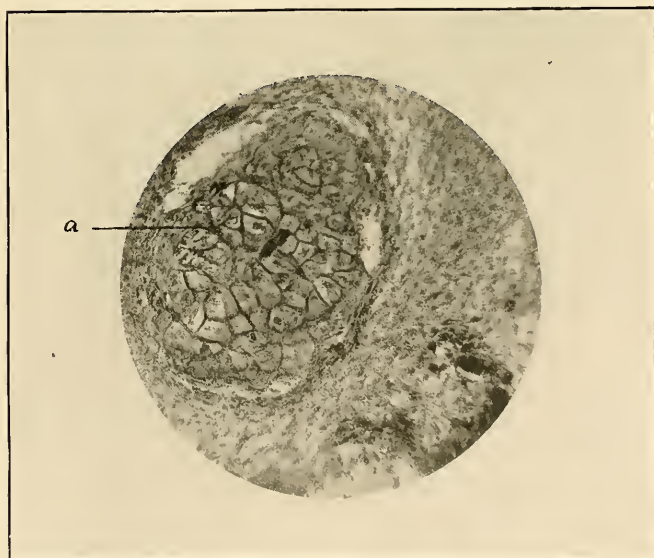


FIG. 322.



which the various events take place. This is a part of the study which is very difficult to determine, and it would appear, for this reason, if for no other, that investigators of recent years have been perfectly satisfied to accept the results arrived at by their predecessors without any apparent effort to qualify the deduc-

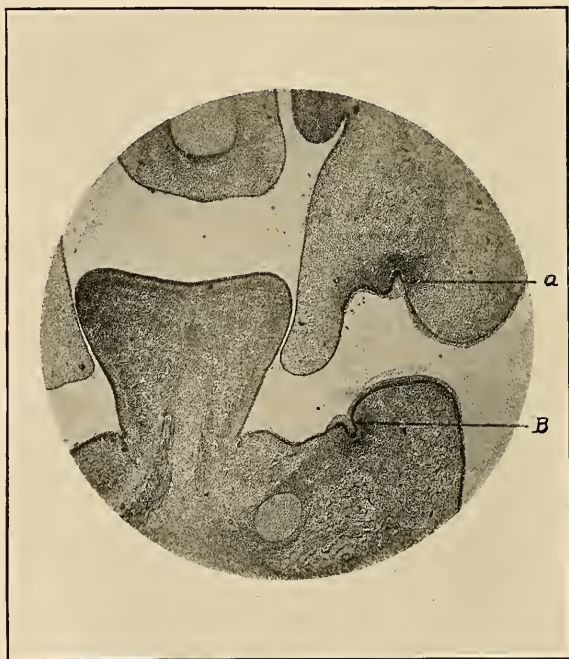


FIG. 323.—TRANSVERSE SECTION THROUGH PRIMITIVE JAWS OF HUMAN FETUS.

tions. It has for a long time been conceded that the primitive changes which ultimately result in the formation of a tooth-germ are first noted in a heaping up of the epithelial cells over the district representing the surface of the future jaw. While in many instances this is true, there are reasons why it cannot be considered an essential feature. In the first place, such a con-



dition is not always present, as shown in figure 323, a transverse section through the primitive jaw of a human fetus about the fortieth day. The tooth bands at *A* and *B* have penetrated the submucous tissue for a considerable depth, but the surface epithelium does not show a greater thickness at these points than it does over the general surface of the cavity.

Figure 324 shows a section made in the same direction upon

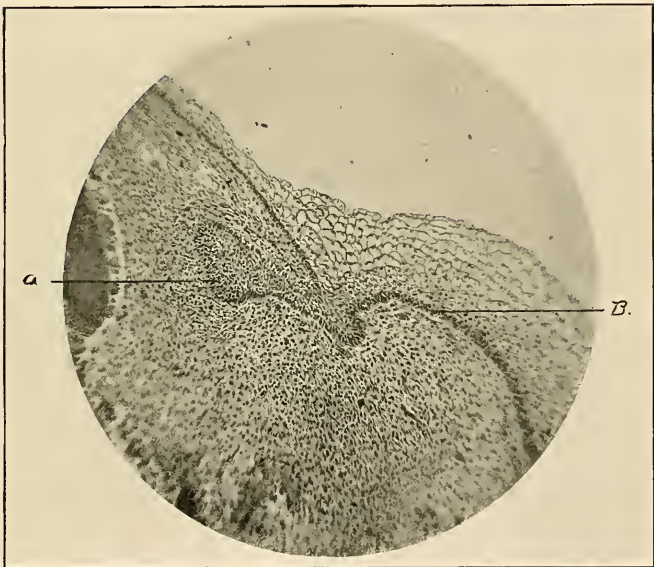


FIG. 324.—TRANSVERSE SECTION THROUGH LOWER JAW, HUMAN EMBRYO, SIXTIETH DAY.

a human embryo about the sixtieth day, and while the tooth band (*A*) has penetrated the embryonal connective tissue to a greater depth, there is yet no increase in the thickness of the epithelium, but rather a disposition for the parts to become depressed. Another reason why the heaping up of the superficial layer of cells forming the embryonal mucous membrane

should not be considered the first sign of the preparation for tooth development lies in the fact that these cells are not directly interested in the process, but that the inflection of cells which results in the formation of the tooth band results from the deep or infant layer of cells known as Malpighi's layer, as shown at *B* (Fig. 324).

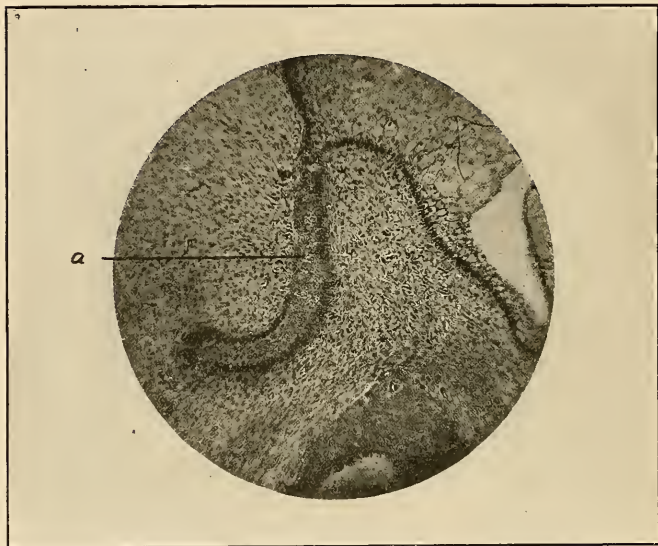


FIG. 325.—SECTION THROUGH TOOTH BAND OF HUMAN EMBRYO.

There is no question but that the location from which the section is taken has much to do with the character and thickness of the older layer of epithelial cells, and that they do at certain points constitute an epithelium exceeding in thickness that of other parts of the cavity, but this condition most frequently occurs after the enamel organ has assumed definite proportions.

After the formation of the tooth band, which, it must be remembered, encircles the entire jaw in the form of a well-defined body of oval epithelial cells from the infant layer (shown

at *A* in cross-section, Fig. 325), the next step in the process is one which concerns the location for the individual buds for the enamel organs of the various teeth, and the approximate time at which these appear.

In the human subject we find ten such spots appearing upon the lamina given off from the lingual face of the tooth band. These do not appear, however, at the free extremity of the band,

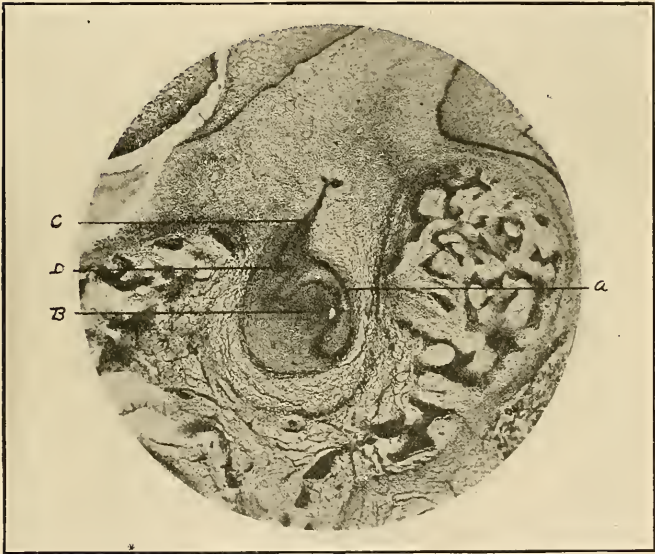


FIG. 326.—TOOTH-GERM, EMBRYO LAMB, CORRESPONDING TO SIXTIETH DAY (HUMAN).  
x 40.

but at some little distance toward the surface from this point, as shown in figure 326. In this section the tooth-germ is severed from the surface epithelium, but this is not a true condition at this period, as it still retains its connection with the surface by a narrow band of cells, the neck of the enamel organ. Two distinct classes of cells are now (sixtieth day) concerned in the process of tooth development, those at *A* being of epithelial

origin and forming the future enamel organ, while at *B* an aggregation of cells from the mesoblast provides for the generation of the pulp and dentin. At *C* the narrow band of cells which should continue to the surface is shown, while the free extremity of the same body of cells at *D* will persist and eventually become the germ for the succeeding tooth. In regard to the time at which the buds for the various teeth appear, it might be expected that the same variation which follows the development and eruption of the teeth throughout would obtain, but such is not the case, the buds for the deciduous incisors appearing about the sixtieth day, while the germs for their permanent successors are but little later in forming.

By referring to figure 316, which shows a longitudinal section through the lower jaw about the twelfth week, the deciduous incisor is seen well outlined by its formative cells, while immediately to the lingual appears a section of the germ for the permanent cuspid. Notwithstanding this, there elapses a period of several years between the eruption of these teeth. The same relative progress will be noted between the first and second teeth, be the subject human or otherwise; requiring many years to complete dentition, in the former, while in most of the lower animals the same process occupies but a comparatively short time.

The next stage in the development of a tooth to which attention will be called is that in which the entire tooth-crown is outlined by the dentin papilla and surrounded by its epithelial cap, the enamel organ. Such an advance in the process is shown in figure 327, together with the surrounding structure. When this stage is reached, the individual cells of the tooth-germ are strongly differentiated, and the odontoblasts are making their appearance about the summits of the cusps.

Up to this time the cells present are those which result in the formation of but two of the calcified tooth tissues, but now there is a marked disposition upon the part of the periosteum of the jaw to pass down by the side of the enamel organ (*A*), this being the first indication of the formation of the tooth follicle, the alveolodental membrane, and cementum. At this period it will be observed that there appears in this, the molar region, a "heap-

ing up" not only of the surface epithelium, but also of the connective tissue as well.

Figure 328 shows a section through the growing mandible taken from a portion of the tissue not occupied by a tooth-germ. This is of interest, first, as giving a view of the detached tooth band in cross-section, at *A*; second, by showing the distribution of the periosteum to the interior of the jaw to serve the double

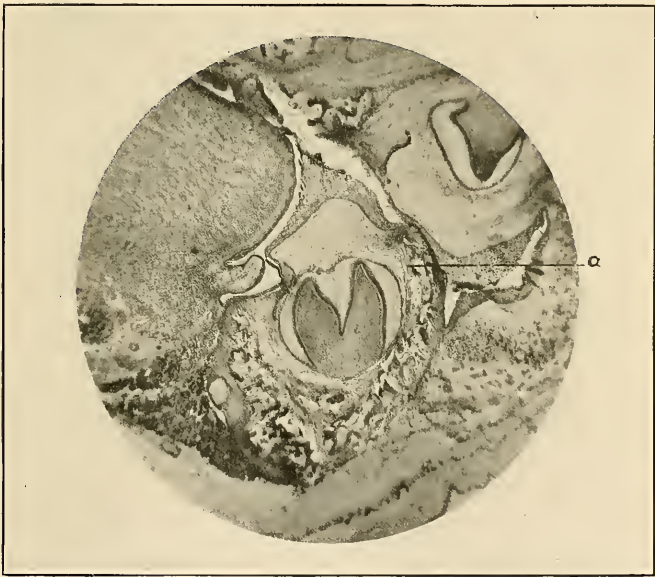


FIG. 327.—TOOTH-GERM, PREMOLAR, EMBRYO LAMB.  $\times 40$ .

function of the future tooth sac and alveolodental membrane; and, third, the thickened epithelium with the underlying tissue pushing into it.

Although the germ for the second tooth may be observed at a period somewhat prior to this, a study of some of its characteristics is best made at this time. The fact has already been referred to that this interesting phenomenon occurs soon after or



even simultaneously with that for the first tooth, a portion of the primitive cord for the latter persisting as the germ for the former.

In figure 329 the cells forming the primitive germ for the enamel organ of one of the permanent teeth are shown highly magnified. It will be observed that they are of the sim-



FIG. 328.—SECTION THROUGH JAW OF EMBRYO LAMB, IN A DISTRICT NOT OCCUPIED BY A TOOTH-GERM.  $\times 40$ .

plest epithelial character, and that they are derived directly from the enamel organ of the pre-existing tooth, on the one hand, while, on the other, they communicate with the surface by a narrow band of cells. In this way it is for a time dependent upon both of these parts for continuance and growth, but after



a time it, too, like its predecessor, severs its connection with the surface, but remains intact with the epithelial cells of the former enamel organ until these cells begin to atrophy.

The cells which make up this primitive germ are of three varieties: the inner layer, or those derived from the epithelium of the enamel organ of the first tooth, being small and spheroidal; those of the outer layer, which spring from the surface epithe-

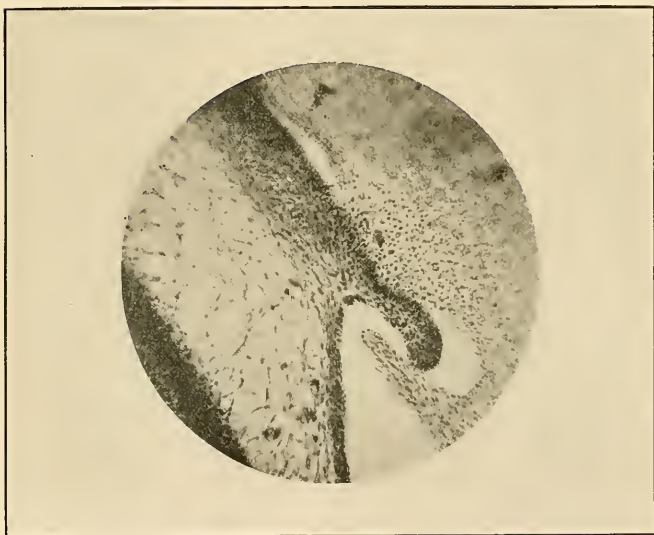


FIG. 329.—PRIMITIVE BUD FOR ENAMEL ORGAN OF PERMANENT TOOTH, HUMAN EMBRYO.  $\times 300$ .

lium, being proportionately larger and cylindrical or oblong; while those which intervene are markedly irregular in outline. In this respect—that is, in the character of the early cell layers—the tooth-germs for the permanent teeth differ from those of the deciduous.

The question of the origin of those teeth which have no predecessors is one upon which there has always been more or less discussion, some writers contending that they are derived

directly from the oral epithelium by a special generation of cells for each tooth, while others are of the opinion that as the jaw grows backward certain changes take place which result in the establishment of an epithelial fold or lamina, in every particular corresponding to the tooth band of the deciduous teeth. With these two conflicting opinions in mind, a number of sections were made through the extreme distal end of the jaw. The result favored the latter theory, for here the tooth band is seen similar in form and location to that observed in the jaw in those locations from which succedaneous teeth result.

## CHAPTER VII.

### ANOMALIES OF THE TEETH.

It has always been conceded that the dental organs of man are susceptible of much variation in form and structural arrangement, and that frequently this variation is so positive that the organ is pronounced anomalous in character. Just where the line of distinction between the normal and abnormal should be drawn is a subject worthy of some consideration. Some authorities define the word anomaly as a marked deviation from the normal, while, in the opinion of others, a much broader meaning is accorded it; and we find all those conditions which



FIG. 330.—ANOMALOUS TEETH.

are in themselves an irregularity from the typical structure or occurrence included in this category. Under the first definition a given structure or organ is accorded a wide field for its normal existence, while under the latter but slight deviation is necessary to classify it among the abnormal.

Upon first thought it would appear that the ability or inability of a tissue or an organ to perform its special function should, in a measure, decide the question of the nature of its being, and no doubt to a certain extent this is true; but while the action of an organ or a part of the body may, by observation, appear entirely satisfactory, it is only so at the expense of other organs

or tissues, and these in the course of time, by this extra exertion, become hypertrophied or in other ways pathologic.

While this is especially applicable to those organs or tissues which have a wide range of function, it may with a good deal of force be applied to the dental organs and their immediate environments. Anomalous conditions in the teeth may originate in, or be confined to, one or more of the tooth tissues, in any of which the structural disarrangement may eventually result in the death or degeneracy of the part. Enamel malformation is of such a character that it may be observed upon the surface either in the form of a multiplication of cusps, or by an extra development of the various ridges formed by pronounced folds of this tissue. But probably the most disastrous anomaly of the enamel, and one frequently responsible for the downfall of this tissue, is found in some defect of its structural arrangement other than those just referred to. In some instances the enamel rods of a given district, instead of being normally distributed by assuming a direction principally at right angles to the long axis of the tooth crown, are arranged without regard to the base or periphery of the tissue, and we have as a result an anomaly of structure. The question of normal and abnormal rod distribution now presents itself, because in certain locations—*i. e.*, the summits of the cusps—an arrangement of the rods similar to that referred to is so common that it may be considered a normal condition, while, if a like distribution was found in other locations, the tissues should properly be considered abnormal.

Malformed teeth, in respect to the number and forms of the cusps present, are not alone confined to the enamel, but also to the dentin which first records the tooth form on its periphery.

Anomalies in the general contour of the tooth crown are usually confined to the incisors and third molars, both the dentin and the enamel contributing to the deformity. Here the defect is usually so pronounced that but little difficulty is experienced in properly classifying the organ. One of the most frequent variations in form met with in these locations is found in the peg-shaped or cone-shaped crown. If it were possible it would be interesting to trace the development of such a malformation; but

with our present knowledge of this process in general, there is little doubt as to its origin, the enamel organ failing to fulfil its early and primary function of molding the tooth crown in the dentin papilla, the responsibility for this resting in the special cells composing it, as well as the so-called stellate reticulum, which, it is believed, exerts a controlling influence over the form of the enamel cap.

While the organic defects of tooth crowns are numerous and varied, those which are confined to the roots are most frequent, in many instances interfering to some extent with the function of the organ. When a given peculiarity is confined to this portion of the tooth, it is frequently difficult to discriminate between the normal and the abnormal. Certain teeth are recognized as normal when either a single root or two roots are present, and the acceptance of this fact increases the difficulty of a proper classification of its peculiarities.

In very rare instances do we find the roots of the cuspidate teeth more or less crooked; yet, at the same time, many decidedly crooked roots are considered within the natural law; while, on the other hand, roots with but little more deflection are classed as anomalous.

Marked flexions of roots or crowns, cases of fusion or concrescence, are usually so positive in character that an anomalous condition is at once acknowledged. While tooth anomalies are usually referred to as external, or as belonging to the hard tissues of the organ, they are not infrequently found in the pulp or pulp cavity. This cavity, normally following the external contour of the tooth, is subject to much variation in outline and capacity, regardless of those changes which are incident to the continuous process of dentinification.

Among these are a complete division of the pulp chamber; horn-like processes penetrating the dentin in the direction of the occlusal surface in locations where they would be least expected; an unusual number, or a peculiar distribution of the canals, etc.

**Lack of Dentition.**—Cases in which there is a total absence of teeth have been reported. Guilford reports the case of a man fifty years of age who never had teeth, the jaws not differing in appearance or form from those of a person whose teeth have

been extracted. The mother of the subject had the usual number of teeth, but the grandmother and an uncle were both edentulous and hairless from birth. J. Tomes mentions two cases having been reported to him, and Linderer mentions one.

On the other hand, instances of a third dentition have been reported, but there is great possibility of such observation being erroneous. Teeth belonging to the permanent set which may have remained unerupted for years could readily be mistaken as predecessors of a third set, when in after years they make their appearance.

**Supernumerary Teeth.**—All teeth appearing in the mouth in addition to the normal number are designated as supernumerary teeth. These are divided into two classes, those normal in size and form and those abnormal in size and form. The first-named are most likely to be of the simple class, incisors and cuspids, and they may occupy a regular position in the arch or may be found inside the arch closely associated with teeth of the same type. Supernumerary bicuspid and molars are sometimes present either in regular position in the arch or inside of it. When the jaws are long enough to accommodate them, an additional molar may appear back of the third molar, making four molars instead of three, and cases in which two extra molars were thus placed have occasionally been met with.

Supernumerary teeth of the second class or those which are abnormal in size and form are usually inclined to be cone-shaped and small in size, this in respect to the root as well as the crown. Supernumerary teeth of this character are usually found in the incisor region, but it occasionally happens that they are found in the molar district, but here, instead of having a single cone for the crown, they are mostly made up of a number of smaller cones resembling many small cusps on the occlusal surface. The number of supernumerary teeth may vary from one to eight or ten. In the latter instance they are usually scattered through the entire alveolar border of the hard palate. As many as ten or twelve teeth thus located have been reported.

Again, certain teeth are frequently missing from the arch. This may be occasioned by delayed eruption, or it may be the result of improper activity within the tooth-germ itself,



so that the tooth may have failed to develop. The teeth most frequently missing are the upper lateral incisors. The probable reason for this lies in the fact that the germs for these teeth are located very near the surface of the bone, and in some instances they are not even protected by a thin layer of bone over the follicle. Being thus situated, they are more or less exposed to violence sufficient to destroy the germs and thus render development of the teeth impossible. Lack of certain teeth in the mouth appears to be to some extent an hereditary feature, the condition being transmitted from parent to child. Anomalies as to the size of individual teeth are frequently noticed. When this is the case, it does not usually include the entire set, but is confined to one or two, usually to the same teeth on each side. Teeth that are above the usual size are generally found in persons of large build, but if all the teeth are proportionate in size they can not be included within the abnormal class. The upper incisors are most frequently affected in this way. Cases have been reported in which the central incisors in the upper jaw have been fully twice the size which they should normally have been, and all the remaining teeth in the mouth perfect as to shape and size. Accompanying the abnormal condition it is usual to find the teeth thus affected more or less abnormal in outline, but, notwithstanding this, retaining their form sufficiently well to permit their proper classification.

There are likewise teeth that are deficient in size. This does not refer to teeth all relatively small, as frequently found in persons of small frame and stature. This anomalous condition is often present in the upper lateral incisors and in the third molars. Teeth that are deficient in size generally possess their normal shape.

While the crowns of the teeth are susceptible to the above variations, the roots appear to be anomalous much more frequently and to a more marked extent than are the crowns. Most important among these may be mentioned flexions of the roots. Curvatures in the roots may be found either in single-rooted teeth or in multirooted teeth, and the point of flexion may be located either at the center of the root or

near its apex, or both of these points may be affected. Flexions in the roots of the teeth present a great variety in form. A single curve in one direction may be present or a number of curvatures in different directions. In multi-rooted teeth the roots may be so flexed that they will entwine about each other, and the overlapping portions may be or may not be fused. Probably the most important cause for the flexions of the roots of the teeth is delayed eruption, this being particularly true if some positive force prevents the progress of the organ. The roots of the teeth are frequently anomalous in regard to number. These may have the same general form and the same approximate length as the normal root or



FIG. 331.—ANOMOLOUS ROOTS.

roots would be, but they are proportionately smaller in diameter. Cases are on record in which the incisor teeth have had two distinct roots, but probably the most frequent location for the multiplicity of roots is found in connection with the third molar. While this tooth when normally developed as to crown is usually supported by three roots, it sometimes possesses five or six smaller roots.

It not infrequently happens that the roots of the teeth are less in number than they should normally be. This is usually brought about by the blending of the roots, which occurs during the developmental stage. This may be of two distinct kinds. In the first place, it may be the result of the conversion of two or more pulp canals into one, or the individual roots

may be united by a body of cementum being interposed between them. In the former instance a single pulp canal is mostly found within the blended roots, while in the latter the number of canals is usually normal. With this blending there is generally a line of demarcation between the individual roots as they should normally exist, in the way of longitudinal depressions extending through the entire root from cervical



FIG. 332.—FUSION OF MOLARS.



FIG. 333.—FUSION AND CONCRESCEENCE.

line to apex. This anomaly, like that of the multiplicity of roots, is principally confined to the third molars, and is more frequent in the upper jaw than in the lower.

**Fusion and Concrecence.**—The union of two or more teeth is known as fusion or concrecence, and may occur either during the development of the organ or after this process has been completed. When union takes place during development,

it is characterized as *fusion*; when it takes place after the completion of this process, it is known as *concrecence*. There seems to be but little doubt that fusion of the teeth occurs through some irregularity in the tooth-germ or germs, the beginning of the developmental process taking place generally between two germs and continuing together until the complete calcification of the organs. Teeth thus united may have an internal anatomy corresponding in nearly every respect to two separate teeth, and, on the other hand, they may possess but a single pulp chamber and canal. Fusion may take place in the



FIG. 334.—FUSION AND CONCRESCENCE.

roots of the teeth alone, when it is called *partial fusion*; but when it is confined to the roots and crowns alike, it is classified as *complete fusion*. The teeth most likely to be affected in this way are the upper incisors and the second and third molars. Some distinction must be made between those teeth which are united by a layer of cementum, and those of true fusion, the latter existing only when there has been a union between dentin and dentin.

*Concrecence*.—In concrecence, the roots of the teeth only can be affected, as the union takes place after the complete development of the organ. The roots of one tooth become united to the roots of another through an additional growth of

cementum, this growth being sufficiently extensive to cause absorption of the alveolar septa by pressure. Following this there is a resorption of the pericementum. The cemental tissues of the teeth are then brought in contact, and coalescence gradually takes place. Concrescence may take place not only between the roots of two teeth, but between the various roots of an individual tooth, this resulting in the same manner as above described by the destruction of the septa within the tooth socket. When concrescence takes place, the process is usually confined to the apices of the roots, although they may become coalesced throughout their entire length.\* The teeth most commonly affected by concrescence are the molars and bicuspid,



FIG. 335.—GEMINOUS TOOTH.

from the fact that the alveolar walls, particularly the septa about these teeth are especially thin, owing to the form and relative location of the roots.

**Geminous Teeth** (Fig. 335).—It occasionally happens that two separate germs are confined within a single sacculus, and from this results two teeth, either similar or dissimilar in size and form. One of the pair may be normal as to form and size, while the other may be much below the normal size, but more or less perfect in outline. Geminous or twin teeth may be united or entirely separate. This condition is most frequently found in the molar teeth, although cases in which the bicuspid and incisors have been thus affected are recorded. Teeth thus formed must not be confounded with those in which fusion is the anomaly.

In geminous teeth a single sac contains two tooth-germs from which result two similarly formed teeth; in fusion two follicles coalesce, each of which contains its own germ.

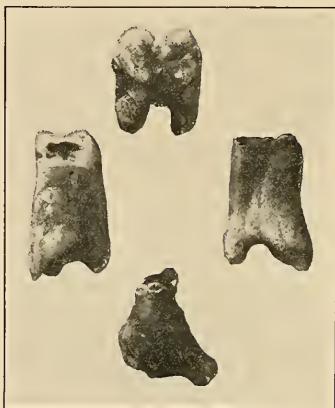


FIG. 336.



FIG. 337.

Besides the foregoing, the roots of the teeth are subject to anomalies in size, in some instances being abnormally small, in others abnormally large. In the former they may nearly



always be characterized as anomalous, but this is not always true of the latter. When the roots are abnormally large, it is somewhat difficult to discriminate between an anomalous and a pathologic condition, the latter usually being the case when the roots of individual teeth are affected. Roots, to be considered anomalous in size, should in a measure retain their normal form, cases of hypertrophy (hypercementosis) usually resulting in the destruction of the normal contours (Figs. 336 and 337).



# INDEX.

## A.

- ACCESSORY palatal foramina, 34
- Adipose tissue, 349
- Alveolar process, 60-74
  - development of, 64
- Alveoli, 61
- Alveolodental membrane, 128-446
  - blood supply to, 130
  - cells of, 448
  - fibers of, 450
  - histology of, 446
  - interfibrous elements of, 453
  - nerve supply to, 130
- Amelification, 401
- Ameloblasts, 289, 400, 402, 403
- Anatomic element, 344
- Angular artery, 29
- Anomalies of the teeth, 481
- Anterior palatal foramen, 34
  - nerve, 35
  - superior dental nerve, 121
- Antrum of Highmore, 65
- Apical foramina, description of, 238
- Areolar tissue, 348
- Artery, deep facial, 34, 49
  - inferior dental, 119
  - internal maxillary, 34, 115
  - lingual, 49
  - ranine, 50
  - sublingual, 50
- Azygos uvulae, 39

## B.

- BICUSPID, lower first, 217
  - second, 221
- upper first, 163
  - second, 175
- Blastoderm, 457
  - cells of, 457
  - layers of, 457
- Blood, course of, from heart to cheeks, 30
  - from heart to hard palate, 35
  - from heart to lips, 24
  - from heart to soft palate, 39
  - from heart to tongue, 50
- Blood supply to the teeth, 115
- Bone, 351
  - canaliculi of, 352
  - cells of, 352
  - Haversian canals of, 352
  - histologic examination of, 353
  - hyoid, 42, 80
  - inferior maxillary, 71
  - lacunæ of, 352

- Bone, marrow of, 354
  - matrix of, 351
  - osteoblasts of, 354
  - palate, 67
  - periosteum of, 354
  - Sharpey's fibers of, 354
  - superior maxillary, 51
- Bones, of the mouth, 51
  - superior maxillary, 51
- Brown striae of Retzius, 396
- Buccal cavity, 457
  - embryology of, 457
  - glands, 131, 378
  - orifice, 18
- Buccinator muscle, 25

## C.

- CALCIFICATION, beginning of, 318
  - of cementum, 333, 439
  - of dentin, 318, 418
  - on enamel, 401
- Calciform papillae, 43
- Canal, inferior dental, 76
  - infra-orbital, 52
  - posterior palatal, 55
- Canaliculi, 352
- Canals, Haversian, 352
  - pulp, 238
- Canine eminence, 53
  - fossa, 53
- Capsular ligament, 85
- Cartilage, 349
  - cells of, 349
  - elastic, 350
  - fibro-, 350
  - hyaline, 350
  - matrix of, 349
  - Meckel's, 79
  - permanent, 351
  - temporary, 351
  - varieties of, 350
- Cell, essential parts of, 345
  - general description of, 345
  - nucleolus of, 346
  - nucleus of, 345
  - protoplasm of, 345
- Cells, ciliated, 347
  - columnar, 346
  - epithelial, 347
  - fat, 349
  - gland, 349
  - pigment, 349
  - plasma, 349
  - squamous, 347

- Cement corpuscles, 434  
 fibers, 436  
 Cementification, 333, 439  
 Cementoblasts, 333, 448  
 Cementum, 427  
   calcification of, 333, 439  
   canaliculi of, 427  
   fibers of, 436  
   histology of, 412  
   lacunæ of, 427  
   lamellæ, 431  
   matrix of, 427  
 Central incisor, lower, 209  
   upper, 136  
 Cervical line, 99  
 Cheeks, 24  
   blood supply to, 29  
   external covering of, 25  
   glands of, 25, 131, 378  
   integument of, 25  
   internal covering of, 25  
   mucous membrane of, 25, 367  
   muscles of, 25  
   muscular tissue of, 385  
   nerves of, 30  
   substance of, 25  
 Circumvallate papillæ, 43  
 Concrescence of teeth, 487  
 Condyle, neck of, 77  
 Condylloid process, 77-83  
   forms of, 83  
 Connective tissue, cells of, 346, 347  
   classification of, 347  
   fibrous, 347, 348  
   intercellular substance of, 347  
   tissues, 347  
 Coronoid process, 77  
 Crowns, anomalous, 485  
 Cuspid, lower, 214  
   upper, 153
- D.**
- DECALCIFICATION, 341  
 Deciduous lower central incisor, 279  
   cuspid, 280  
   first molar, 275, 281  
   lateral incisor, 273, 279  
   second molar, 278, 283  
   teeth, decalcification of, 341  
     detail description of, 271  
     enamel organs for, 395  
     general description of, 268  
     occlusion of, 270  
     pulp chambers and canals of, 284  
   upper central incisor, 271  
   upper cuspid, 274  
 Deep facial artery, 34, 39  
   branches of, 39  
 Dendrites, 360  
 Dental arch, 99  
   arrangement of teeth in, 101  
   curve described by, 104  
   influence of temperament on, 104  
   follicle, 289, 307, 315  
   formula, 97
- Dental furrow, 313  
   pulp, 440  
   sacculus, 307  
 Dentin, 94, 408  
   calcification of, 418  
   cells, 395, 397  
   chemical analyses of, 410  
   exposed by dissection, 315  
   fibers of, 409, 413  
   histology of, 408  
   matrix of, 409  
   organ, 288, 304  
   papillæ, 316, 418  
   tubules of, 409, 410  
 Dentinal fibers, 413  
   sheaths, 409, 412  
   tubules, 409, 410  
   walls of, 412  
 Dentinification, 418  
 Dentition, completion of, 313  
   lack of, 483  
 Depressor anguli oris, 28  
   labii inferioris, 23  
   labii superioris, 22  
 Development of enamel, 397  
   of permanent teeth, 326  
   of teeth, 286, 470  
 Digastric fossa, 74  
 Duct, parotid, 134  
   sublingual, 135  
   submaxillary, 135
- E.**
- ELASTIC cartilage, 350  
 Elementary organism, 345  
 Embryology, general, 455  
   of mouth and teeth, 455  
 Enamel, 94, 389  
   ameloblasts of, 400  
   brown striæ of, 396  
   calcification of, 401  
   cells, 289, 400  
   chemic composition of, 390  
   cuticle of, 445  
   development of, 397  
   histology of, 389  
   organ, 288, 289, 398  
     cells of, 289, 297  
     external epithelium of, 289, 299  
     form of, 289, 292  
     internal epithelium of, 289, 399  
     stratum intermedium of, 289, 399  
     stellate reticulum of, 289, 399  
   prisms of, 390  
   rods, formation of, 404  
 Endomysium, 356  
 Epithelial tissues, 346  
 Eruption of the teeth, 334  
 External maxillary artery, 29  
   oblique line, 72  
   pterygoid, 92
- F.**
- FACIAL angle, 111  
   artery, 29

Facial artery, branches of, 29  
     nerve, 30  
         branches of, 30  
 Fat cells, 349  
 Fauces, anterior pillars of, 36  
     isthmus of, 36  
     pillars of, 36  
     posterior pillars of, 36  
 Fibers, dentinal, 413  
     Sharpey's, 354  
 Fibroblasts, 449  
 Fibro-cartilage, 350  
 Fibrous connective tissue, 347  
     cells of, 348  
 Fifth nerve, 120  
     division of, 120  
 Filiform papillæ, 43  
 Floor of the mouth, boundaries of, 41  
     embryology of, 460  
     framework of, 40  
 Follicle, dental, 289, 307, 315  
 Foramen, anterior palatal, 34  
     apical, description of, 238  
     cæcum, 43  
     incisive, 59  
     infra-orbital, 52, 54  
     mental, 73  
 Foramina, accessory palatal, 34  
     posterior palatal, 34  
 Fossa, glenoid, 83  
 Frenæ of the mouth, 125  
 Fungiform papillæ, 43  
 Fusion of teeth, 487  
     and concrescence, 487  
     complete, 488  
     partial, 488

**G.**

GANGLION, Gasserian, 120  
     Meckel's, 35  
     sphenopalatal, 25  
 Geminous teeth, 489  
 Genial tubercles, 73  
 Geniohyoglossus, 46  
 Germs for permanent molars, 306  
 Gingivæ, 33  
 Gingival border, 33  
     margins, outlines of, 125  
 Gland cells, 349  
     follicles, 376  
     parotid, 133, 382  
     saccular, 376  
     tubular, 376  
     sublingual, 135, 382  
     submaxillary, 134, 382  
 Glands and ducts of the mouth, histology of, 376  
     buccal, 131, 378  
         excretory ducts of, 377  
     labial, 131, 377  
     lingual, 132, 379  
     molar, 378  
     of the cheeks, 378  
     of the hard palate, 379  
     of the mouth, 130, 376

Glands of the soft palate, 132, 379  
     palatal, 132, 379  
     salivary, 132, 381  
 Glenoid fossa, 83  
 Gomphosis, 96  
 Groove, infra-orbital, 52  
 Gubernaculum, 322  
     foramina of, 328  
 Gums, 124  
     epithelium of, 369  
     fibrous tissue of, 369  
     general description of, 124  
     mucous membrane of, 125, 369

**H.**

HARD palate, 31  
     arch of, 33  
     blood supply to, 34  
     bones of, 31  
     covering of, 31  
     formation of, 31  
     glands of, 31, 379  
     mucous membrane of, 31, 370  
     nerves of, 35  
 Haversian canals, 352  
 Highmore, antrum of, 65  
 Histology, 344  
 Hyaline cartilage, 350  
 Hyoglossus, 45  
 Hyoid bone, 40  
 Hypoblast, 457

**I.**

INCISIVE foramen, 59  
     fossa, 53, 72  
 Incisor crest, 59  
     lower central, 209  
         lateral, 213  
     upper central, 136  
         lateral, 146  
 Inferior coronary artery, 23, 29  
     vein, 30  
     dental artery, 119  
         incisive branch of, 119  
         mental branch of, 119  
     canal, 76  
     meatus, 57  
     nerve, 120  
     lingualis, 48  
     maxillary bone, 71  
         body of, 72  
         development of, 78  
         facial surface of, 72  
         internal surface of, 73  
         muscles attached to, 78  
         vertical portion of, 76  
     palatal vein, 35  
     turbinate crest, 54, 58  
 Infra-orbital canal, 52  
     foramen, 52  
     groove, 52  
 Inter-cellular substance, 346  
 Interglobular spaces, 147

- Internal maxillary artery, 34, 115  
     infra-orbital branch of the, 117  
     superior maxillary branch of the, 115  
     oblique line, 73  
     pterygoid, 92  
 Interproximate spaces, 106  
 Involuntary muscular tissue, 355  
 Isthmus of fauces, 36
- L.**
- LABIAL glands, 131, 377  
 Lacrimal canal, 54  
     tubercle, 55  
 Lacunæ, 352  
 Lateral incisor, upper, 146  
     lower, 213  
 Layer, granular,  
     Malpighi's, 474  
 Levator alæque nasi, 21  
     anguli oris, 27  
     labii inferioris, 22  
     labii superioris, 21  
     palati, 38  
 Lines of Schreger, 395  
 Lingual artery, 49  
     glands, 132, 379  
     vein, 50  
 Lips, 18  
     blood supply to, 23  
     external covering of, 19  
     frenæ of, 19, 125  
     glands of, 19, 131, 377  
     integument of, 19  
     internal covering of, 19  
     mucous membrane of, 19, 366  
     muscles of, 20  
     muscular tissue of, 385  
     nerves of, 24  
     substance of, 19  
 Lower bicuspid, first, 217  
     buccal surface of, 219  
     calcification of, 217  
     cusps of, 218  
     distal surface of, 220  
     lingual surface of, 219  
     measurements of, 217  
     mesial surface of, 219  
     neck of, 220  
     occlusal surface of, 218  
     pulp cavity of, 264  
     root of, 220  
     second, 221  
     buccal surface of, 222  
     calcification of, 221  
     distal surface of, 224  
     lingual surface of, 223  
     measurements of, 221  
     mesial surface of, 223  
     neck of, 224  
     occlusal surface of, 221  
     root of, 224  
     bicuspids, general description of the, 217  
     pulp cavities of, 264  
     cuspid, 214  
 Lower cuspid, calcification of, 214  
     cusp of, 216  
     distal surface of, 215  
     labial surface of, 214  
     lingual surface of, 215  
     measurements of, 214  
     mesial surface of, 215  
     neck of, 216  
     root of, 216  
     cuspid, pulp cavities of, 263  
 Incisor, central, 208  
     calcification of, 208  
     cervical margin of, 212  
 Incisor, cutting-edge of, 212  
     distal surface of, 211  
     labial surface of, 209  
     lingual surface of, 210  
     mesial surface of, 210  
     neck of, 212  
     root of, 212  
 Incisors, pulp cavities of, 262  
 Lateral incisor, general description of, 213  
 Molar, first, 224  
     buccal surface of, 228  
     calcification of, 224  
     cusps of, 226  
     distal surface of, 230  
     lingual surface of, 229  
     measurements of, 224  
     mesial surface of, 229  
     neck of, 230  
     occlusal surface of, 225  
     roots of, 230  
     second, 231  
     buccal surface of, 233  
     calcification of, 231  
     distal surface of, 233  
     lingual surface of, 233  
     measurements of, 231  
     mesial surface of, 233  
     occlusal surface of, 231  
     roots of, 234  
     third, calcification of, 235  
     general description of the, 235  
     roots of, 236  
     types of the, 237  
 Molars, pulp cavities of, 265
- M.**
- MALPIGHI'S layer, 474  
 Mandible, 71  
     evolution of, 310  
 Masseter, 26, 89  
 Mastication, muscles of, 89  
     active organs of, 17  
 Maxillary bones, development of, 309  
     sinus, 65  
     superior, 51  
 Meckel's cartilage, 78, 310, 466  
     ganglion, 35  
 Median raphe, 127  
 Membrana eboris, 305  
     præformativa, 403  
     propria, 349



Mental foramen, 73  
 protuberance, 72  
 Mesoblast, 457  
 Middle meatus, 57  
 superior dental nerve, 121  
 Molar glands, 378  
 lower, first, 224  
 second, 231  
 third, 235  
 upper, first, 177  
 second, 191  
 third, 200  
 Mouth, 17  
 angles of, 18  
 bones of, 51  
 boundaries of, 17  
 contents of, 17  
 dissection of, 31  
 divisions of, 31  
 entrance to, 17  
 epithelium of, 364  
 floor of, 31, 40  
 frenæ of, 125  
 general description of, 17  
 glands of, 130  
 inferior portion of, 40  
 interior of, 31  
 lateral walls of, 24  
 mucous membrane of, 126, 364  
 muscular tissues of, 385  
 posterior boundary of, 37  
 roof of, 31  
 situation of, 17  
 submucosa of, 365  
 superior portion of, 31  
 tunica propria of, 365  
 vestibule of, 17  
 walls of, 24  
 Mucous membrane of the cheeks, histology of, 367  
 of gums, histology of, 369  
 of lips, histology of, 366  
 of mouth, 126, 364  
 blood supply to, 365  
 histology of, 364  
 nerve supply to, 365  
 of tongue, histology of, 371  
 Muscle, external pterygoid, 92  
 internal pterygoid, 92  
 masseter, 26, 89  
 temporal, 91  
 Muscles, angular series, 37  
 of mastication, 89  
 of soft palate, 37  
 of tongue, 44  
 Muscular tissue, 355  
 tissues of cheek, 386  
 endomysium of, 356  
 involuntary, 355  
 of lips, 385  
 perimysium of, 356  
 sarcolemma of, 357  
 sarcoplasm of, 357  
 of mouth, histology of, 385  
 non-striated, 355  
 of soft palate, 386

Muscular tissues of soft palate, striated, 356  
 of tongue, 387  
 voluntary, 357  
 Mylohyoid ridge, 73  
 Myrtriform fossa, 53

## N.

NASAL crest, 59  
 spine, 59  
 Nasmyth's membrane, 445  
 Nerve, anterior palatal, 35  
 cell, 359  
 cells, 363  
 corpuscles, 362  
 fiber, axis cylinder of, 362  
 neurilemma of, 362  
 fibers, 362  
 medullated, 362  
 non-medullated, 362  
 inferior dental, 122  
 inferior maxillary, 122  
 middle superior dental, 121  
 posterior superior dental, 121  
 process, 360  
 superior dental, 121  
 superior maxillary, 120  
 Nerves, 362  
 endoneurium of, 362  
 epineurium of, 362  
 funiculi of, 362  
 medullary sheath of, 362  
 perineurium of, 362  
 of tongue, 50  
 system of, 362  
 Nervous tissue, 358  
 Neumann's sheath, 412  
 Neurilemma, 362  
 Neuroblasts, 359  
 Neurocyte, 359  
 Neuron, 359  
 Non-striated muscular tissues, 355

## O.

OCCCLUSION of the teeth, 108  
 of the deciduous teeth, 270  
 Odontoblastic cells, 316  
 Odontoblasts, 305, 306, 419, 441  
 processes of, 442  
 Oral cavity, 458  
 embryology of, 458  
 Orbicularis oris, 20  
 Osteoblasts, 354, 447  
 Osteoclasts, 449  
 Overbite, 111

## P.

PALATAL glands, 132, 379  
 raphe, 32, 127  
 rugæ, 33, 127  
 Palate, bone, articulation of, 70  
 attachment of muscles to, 70  
 blood supply to, 70  
 development of, 70

- Palate, bone, horizontal plate of, 67  
     vertical plate of, 68  
     bones, 67  
     hard, 31  
     soft, 36  
 Palatoglossus, 37  
 Palatomaxillary suture, 34  
 Palatopharyngeus, 37  
 Papillæ of the tongue, 43  
 Parotid duct, 134  
     gland, 133, 382  
 Perichondrium, 350  
 Perimysium, 356  
 Periosteum, 354  
 Permanent incisors, papillæ for, 329  
     molars, germs for, 306  
     teeth, 95  
     preparation for development of, 326  
     advance of, 342  
 Pigment cells, 349  
 Pillars of fauces, 36  
 Plasma cells, 349  
 Posterior foramina, 34  
     palatal canal, 55  
     superior dental nerve, 121  
 Primitive dental furrow, 313  
 Process, alveolar, 60  
     condyloid, 77  
     coronoid, 77  
 Pulp, blood-vessels of, 443  
     canals, 238  
     cavities, description of, 238  
     dissections to show, 238  
     horns of, 239  
     of deciduous teeth, 284  
     of lower teeth, 262  
     of teeth, 238  
     of upper teeth, 240  
     cells of, 440  
     histology of, 440  
     nerves of, 444  
     odontoblasts of, 441
- Q.
- QUADRATUS menti, 23
- R.
- RANINE artery, 50  
 Raphe, 32, 127  
 Retzius, brown striæ of, 396  
 Ridge, mylohyoid, 73  
 Risorius muscle, 28  
 Roots, anomalous, 485  
     formation of, 333  
 Rugæ, 33, 127
- S.
- SACCULUS, dental, 307  
 Salivary glands, 132, 381  
     blood-vessels of, 383  
     nerves of, 383
- Sarcolemma, 351  
 Sarcoplasm, 352  
 Schreger, lines of, 395  
 Schwann, sheath of, 362  
     white substance of, 362  
 Seventh nerve, 30  
 Sharpey's fibers, 354  
 Sheath, medullary, 362  
     of Schwann, 362  
 Simple saccular glands, 376  
     tubular glands, 376  
 Soft palate, 36  
     blood supply to, 39  
     glands of, 379  
     muscles of, 37  
     muscular tissue of, 387  
     nerves of, 39  
     substance of, 36  
 Spaces, interglobular, 417  
     interproximate, 106  
 Sphenomaxillary ligament, 86  
 Sphenopalatal ganglion, 35  
 Stellate reticulum, 399  
 Stenson, foramen of, 59  
 Stratum intermedium, 289, 399  
 Striated muscular tissue, 356  
 Styloglossus, 46  
 Stylomaxillary ligament, 85  
 Sublingual artery, 50  
     duct, 135  
     fossa, 74  
     gland, 135  
 Submaxillary duct, 135  
     fossa, 74  
     gland, 134  
 Submucosa, 365  
 Supernumerary teeth, 484  
 Superior coronary artery, 23, 29  
     vein, 30  
     lingualis, 48  
     maxillary bone, articulation of, 62  
         alveolar process of, 60  
         blood supply to, 63  
         development of, 63  
         facial surface of, 52  
         malar process of, 58  
         muscles attached to, 62  
         nasal process of, 57  
         orbital surface of, 51  
         palatal process of, 54, 58  
         proximal surface of, 54  
         sinus of, 65  
         tuberosity of, 56  
         zygomatic surface of, 56  
     bones, 51  
     nerve, 120  
     meatus, 57  
     palatal vein, 35  
     turbinate crest, 58  
 Suture, palatomaxillary, 34  
 Symphysis, 72
- T.
- TEETH, 94  
     anterior, 99

Teeth, apical extremities of, 99  
 articulation of, 109  
 attachment of, 95  
 blood supply to, 115, 119  
 classification of, 95, 96  
 complex, 95  
 deciduous, 268  
   description in detail of, 136  
 development of, 286, 470  
 dissections of, 238  
 division of, 95  
 eruption of, 334  
 names of, 96  
 nerve supply to, 120  
 occlusion of, 108  
 permanent, 95  
 posterior, 99  
 pulp cavities of, 238  
 roots of, 98  
 simple, 95  
 surfaces of, 97  
 tissues of, 389  
 veins from, 119  
 Temporal muscle, 91  
 Temporomandibular articulation, 82  
   movements of, 88  
 Tensor palati, 38  
 Tissue, adipose, 349  
   areolar, 348  
   muscular, 355  
   nervous, 358  
 Tissues of the body, divisions of, 346  
   connective, 347  
   of the teeth, 389  
 Tongue, 41  
   attachment of, 42  
   base of, 42  
   blood-vessels of, 49  
   circumvallate papillæ of, 373  
   dorsum of, 42  
   embryology of, 46  
   filiform papillæ of, 371  
   frenum of, 43  
   function of, 41  
   fungiform papillæ of, 372  
   glands of, 132, 379  
   median raphe of, 43  
   mucous membrane of, 371  
   muscles of, 44  
   muscular tissue of, 387  
   nerves of, 50  
   papillæ of, 43  
   post-tip, 42  
   prebase of, 43  
   shape of, 42  
   size of, 42  
   substance of, 42  
 Tonsil, 36  
 Tonsillar recess, 36  
 Tooth band, 287  
   development, cellular stage of, 286,  
     470  
     saccular stage of, 309, 316  
 follicle, walls of, 308  
   fundamental parts of a, 94  
   general description of a, 94

Tooth germs, 288  
 roots, preparations for development of,  
 332  
 sac, 307  
 sacs exposed by dissection, 314  
 sockets, 61  
   tissues of a, 94  
 Transverse facial artery, 29  
   branches of, 30  
   vein, 30  
 Tunica propria, 365

## U.

UPPER bicuspid, first, 163  
   angles of, 169  
   buccal surface of, 166  
   calcification of, 163  
   crown of, 164  
   cusps of, 165  
   distal surface of, 169  
   measurements of, 163  
   mesial surface of, 168  
   neck of, 169  
   lingual surface of, 167  
   pulp cavity of, 248  
   roots of, 170  
   types of, 171  
   second, calcification of, 174  
   general description of, 175  
   measurements of, 174  
   pulp cavities of, 251  
 cuspid, 153  
   calcification of, 153  
   cusp of, 159  
   cutting-edge of, 158  
   distal surface of, 157  
   labial surface of, 154  
   measurement of, 153  
   mesial surface of, 157  
   neck of, 159  
   lingual surface of, 155  
   pulp cavity of, 245  
   root of, 160  
   types of, 160  
 incisor, central, 136  
   calcification of, 136  
   crown of, 137  
   cutting-edge of, 141  
   distal surface of, 140  
   labial surface of, 137  
   measurements of, 136  
   mesial surface of, 139  
   neck of, 142  
   lingual surface of, 138  
   pulp cavity of, 240  
   root of, 143  
   types of, 143  
 lateral, 146  
   calcification of, 146  
   crown of, 147  
   cutting-edge of, 149  
   distal surface of, 149  
   labial surface of, 147  
   measurements of, 146  
   mesial surface of, 149

- Upper incisor, lateral, neck of, 156  
     lingual surface of, 148  
     pulp cavity of, 243  
     root of, 150  
     types of, 151
- molar, first, 177  
     buccal surface of, 184  
     calcification of, 177  
     cusps of, 180  
     distal surface of, 187  
     fossæ and grooves of, 183  
     lingual surface of, 185  
     marginal ridges of, 179  
     measurements of, 177  
     mesial surface of, 186  
     neck of, 187  
     occlusal surface of, 178  
     pulp cavity of, 255  
     roots of, 188  
     types of, 189
- second, 191  
     angles of, 198  
     buccal surface of, 196  
     calcification of, 191  
     cusps of, 194  
     distal surface of, 198  
     fossæ and grooves of, 195  
     lingual surface of, 196  
     marginal ridges of, 193  
     measurement of, 191  
     mesial surface of, 197

- Upper molar, second, neck of, 198  
     occlusal surface of, 192  
     pulp cavity of, 258  
     roots of, 198
- third, 200  
     buccal surface of, 202  
     calcification of, 200  
     cusps of, 205  
     distal surface of, 202  
     fossæ and grooves of, 206  
     lingual surface of, 203  
     measurements of, 200  
     mesial surface of, 201  
     occlusal surface of, 204  
     pulp cavity of, 259  
     types of, 207
- Uvula, 36

## V.

- VEIN, inferior palatal, 35  
     lingual, 50  
     superior palatal, 35
- Voluntary muscular tissue, 356

## Z.

- ZYGOMATICUS major, 27  
     minor, 23







COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY LIBRARIES (hsl.stx)  
**RK 280 B79 1902 C.1**  
Anatomy and histology of the mouth and t



2002354101

RK280

B79

1902

Broomell

Anatomy and histology of the mouth

